



# Deployment Guide

---

SUSE OpenStack Cloud 7





# Deployment Guide

## SUSE OpenStack Cloud 7

by Frank Sundermeyer and Tanja Roth

Publication Date: February 21, 2017

SUSE LLC

10 Canal Park Drive

Suite 200

Cambridge MA 02141

USA

<https://www.suse.com/documentation> ↗

Copyright © 2006– 2017 SUSE LLC and contributors. All rights reserved.

Except where otherwise noted, this document is licensed under **Creative Commons Attribution 3.0 License** : <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/3.0/legalcode> ↗

For SUSE trademarks, see <http://www.suse.com/company/legal/> ↗. All other third-party trademarks are the property of their respective owners. Trademark symbols (®, ™ etc.) denote trademarks of SUSE and its affiliates. Asterisks (\*) denote third-party trademarks.

All information found in this book has been compiled with utmost attention to detail. However, this does not guarantee complete accuracy. Neither SUSE LLC, its affiliates, the authors nor the translators shall be held liable for possible errors or the consequences thereof.



# Contents

## About This Guide **xii**

### **I ARCHITECTURE AND REQUIREMENTS 1**

## **1 The SUSE OpenStack Cloud Architecture 2**

### 1.1 The Administration Server 3

### 1.2 The Control Node(s) 4

### 1.3 The Compute Nodes 6

### 1.4 The Storage Nodes 6

### 1.5 HA Setup 6

## **2 Considerations and Requirements 8**

### 2.1 Network 8

Network Address Allocation 12 • Network Modes 15 • Accessing the Administration Server via a Bastion Network 20 • DNS and Host Names 20

### 2.2 Persistent Storage 21

Cloud Storage Services 21 • Storage Hardware Requirements 22

### 2.3 SSL Encryption 25

### 2.4 Hardware Requirements 26

Administration Server 27 • Control Node 27 • Compute Node 28 • Storage Node 28

### 2.5 Software Requirements 28

Optional Component: SUSE Enterprise Storage 29 • Product and Update Repositories 30



2.6	High Availability	33
	High Availability of the Administration Server	33 • High Availability of the Control Node(s) 34 • High Availability of the Compute Node(s) 36 • High Availability of the Storage Node(s) 37 • Cluster Requirements and Recommendations 38 • For More Information 40
2.7	Summary: Considerations and Requirements	41
2.8	Overview of the SUSE OpenStack Cloud Installation	43
II	SETTING UP THE ADMINISTRATION SERVER	44
3	Installing the Administration Server	45
3.1	Starting the Operating System Installation	45
3.2	Registration and Online Updates	45
3.3	Installing the SUSE OpenStack Cloud Extension	46
3.4	Partitioning	46
3.5	Installation Settings	47
	Software Selection	47 • Firewall Settings 47
4	Installing and Setting Up an SMT Server on the Administration Server (Optional)	48
4.1	SMT Installation	48
4.2	SMT Configuration	48
4.3	Setting up Repository Mirroring on the SMT Server	50
	Adding Mandatory Repositories	50 • Adding Optional Repositories 51 • Mirroring the Repositories 51
4.4	For More Information	52
5	Software Repository Setup	53
5.1	Copying the Product Media Repositories	53



- 5.2 Update and Pool Repositories 56
  - Repositories Hosted on an SMT Server Installed on the Administration Server 57 • Repositories Hosted on a Remote SMT Server 57 • Repositories Hosted on a SUSE Manager Server 57 • Alternative Ways to Make the Repositories Available 59

- 5.3 Software Repository Sources for the Administration Server Operating System 59

## 6 Service Configuration: Administration Server Network Configuration 60

## 7 Crowbar Setup 62

- 7.1 *User Settings* 62
- 7.2 *Networks* 62
  - Separating the Admin and the BMC Network 64
- 7.3 *Network Mode* 65
  - Setting Up a Bastion Network 67
- 7.4 *Repositories* 69
- 7.5 Custom Network Configuration 70
  - Providing Access to External Networks 71 • Split Public and Floating Networks on Different VLANs 72 • Adjusting the Maximum Transmission Unit for the Admin and Storage Network 72
- 7.6 Starting the SUSE OpenStack Cloud Crowbar installation 73

## III SETTING UP OPENSTACK NODES AND SERVICES 78

## 8 The Crowbar Web Interface 79

- 8.1 Logging In 79
- 8.2 Overview: Main Elements 80
  - Nodes 81 • Barclamps 82 • Utilities 83 • Help 85



- 8.3 Deploying Barclamp Proposals 85
  - Creating, Editing and Deploying Barclamp Proposals 86 • Barclamp Deployment Failure 87 • Deleting a Proposal That Already Has Been Deployed 88 • Queuing/Dequeuing Proposals 89

## 9 Installing the OpenStack Nodes 90

- 9.1 Preparations 90
- 9.2 Node Installation 91
- 9.3 Converting Existing SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 12 SP2 Machines Into SUSE OpenStack Cloud Nodes 97
- 9.4 Post-Installation Configuration 98
  - Deploying Node Updates with the Updater Barclamp 98 • Configuring Node Updates with the *SUSE Manager Client* Barclamp 102 • Mounting NFS Shares on a Node 104 • Using an Externally Managed Ceph Cluster 106 • Accessing the Nodes 110 • Enabling SSL 111
- 9.5 Editing Allocated Nodes 111

## 10 Deploying the OpenStack Services 115

- 10.1 Deploying Pacemaker (Optional, HA Setup Only) 116
- 10.2 Deploying the Database 124
  - HA Setup for the Database 125
- 10.3 Deploying RabbitMQ 127
  - HA Setup for RabbitMQ 128
- 10.4 Deploying Keystone 129
  - LDAP Authentication with Keystone 132 • HA Setup for Keystone 134
- 10.5 Deploying Ceph (optional) 134
  - HA Setup for Ceph 138
- 10.6 Deploying Swift (optional) 138
  - HA Setup for Swift 144



10.7	Deploying Glance	144
	HA Setup for Glance	147
10.8	Deploying Cinder	147
	HA Setup for Cinder	154
10.9	Deploying Neutron	154
	Using Infoblox IPAM Plug-in	159 • HA Setup for Neutron 160
10.10	Deploying Nova	161
	HA Setup for Nova	167
10.11	Deploying Horizon (OpenStack Dashboard)	168
	HA Setup for Horizon	169
10.12	Deploying Heat (Optional)	170
	Enabling Identity Trusts Authorization (Optional)	171 • HA Setup for Heat 173
10.13	Deploying Ceilometer (Optional)	173
	HA Setup for Ceilometer	176
10.14	Deploying Manila	176
	HA Setup for Manila	180
10.15	Deploying Trove (Optional)	180
	HA Setup for Trove	182
10.16	Deploying Tempest (Optional)	183
	HA Setup for Tempest	185
10.17	Deploying Magnum (Optional)	185
	HA Setup for Magnum	186
10.18	Deploying Barbican (Optional)	187
	HA Setup for Barbican	188
10.19	Deploying Sahara	188
	HA Setup for Sahara	188
10.20	How to Proceed	189



IV	MAINTENANCE AND SUPPORT	190
11	SUSE OpenStack Cloud Maintenance	191
11.1	Keeping the Nodes Up-to-date	191
11.2	Service Order on SUSE OpenStack Cloud Start-up or Shutdown	192
11.3	Upgrading from SUSE OpenStack Cloud 6 to SUSE OpenStack Cloud 7	194
	Requirements	194
	Upgrading from the Web Interface	195
	Upgrading from the Command line	195
11.4	Upgrading to an HA Setup	202
11.5	Backing Up and Restoring the Administration Server	205
	Backup and Restore via the Crowbar Web interface	205
	Backup and Restore via the Command Line	206
12	Troubleshooting and Support	208
12.1	FAQ	208
12.2	Support	218
	Applying PTFs (Program Temporary Fixes) Provided by the SUSE L3 Support	218
A	Log Files	220
A.1	On the Administration Server	220
A.2	On All Other Crowbar Nodes	221
A.3	On the Control Node(s)	221
A.4	On Compute Nodes	222
A.5	On Nodes with Ceph Barclamp	222
B	Repository Locations	223
C	Roles and Services in SUSE OpenStack Cloud	227
D	The Network Barclamp Template File	230
D.1	Editing network.json	230



D.2 Global Attributes 231

D.3 Interface Map 233

Interface Map Example 234

D.4 Network Conduits 236

Network Conduit Examples 240

D.5 Network Definitions 244

## E Configuring Role Based Access Control (RBAC) 248

E.1 Editing `policy.json` 248

E.2 Editing `keystone_policy.json` 250

E.3 Adjusting the *Keystone* Barclamp Proposal 251

E.4 Adjusting the *Horizon* Barclamp Proposal 251

## F Configuration Files for OpenStack Services 253

F.1 Default Configuration Files 253

F.2 Custom Configuration Files 253

F.3 Naming Conventions for Custom Configuration Files 254

F.4 Processing Order of Configuration Files 254

F.5 For More Information 254

## G VMware vSphere Installation Instructions 255

G.1 Requirements 255

G.2 Preparing the VMware vCenter Server 255

G.3 Finishing the Nova Compute VMware Node Installation 256

G.4 Making the Nova Compute VMware Node Highly Available 257



## **H Using Cisco Nexus Switches with Neutron 259**

- H.1 Requirements 259
- H.2 Deploying Neutron with the Cisco Plugin 261

## **I Crowbar Batch 263**

- I.1 Description 263
- I.2 YAML file format 263
  - Top-level proposal attributes 264 • Node Alias Substitutions 265
- I.3 Options 265

## **J Recovering Clusters to a Healthy State 267**

- J.1 Symptoms of a Degraded Control Node Cluster 267
- J.2 Re-adding the Node to the Cluster 268
- J.3 Recovering Crowbar and Chef 268
- J.4 Cleaning Up Resources 269
- J.5 Removing the Maintenance Mode Flag from a Node 269
- J.6 Recovering From an Unresolvable DRBD Split Brain Situation 270

## **K SUSE OpenStack Cloud Proof of Concept Deployment Guide 272**

- K.1 Document Scope 272
- K.2 SUSE OpenStack Cloud Key Features 272
- K.3 Main Components 273
- K.4 Proof of Concept Deployment Objectives and Preparations 275
- K.5 Hardware and Software Matrix 276
- K.6 Network Topology 279
  - The network.json Network Control File 279 • The Network Mode 280 • Default Layout 281



- K.7 Network Overall Architecture 282
  - Network Architecture: Pre-Defined VLANs 283
- K.8 Services Architecture 286
- K.9 Proof of Concept Test Cases 287
  - Basic Test Cases 287 • Advanced Test Cases 288

## L Documentation Updates 289

- L.1 February 2017 (Initial Release SUSE OpenStack Cloud 7) 289
- L.2 February 2017 (Maintenance Release SUSE OpenStack Cloud 6) 291
- L.3 March, 2016 (Initial Release SUSE OpenStack Cloud 6) 294
- L.4 February, 2015 (Initial Release SUSE Cloud 5) 299
- L.5 August, 2014 (Initial Release SUSE Cloud 4) 303
- L.6 April 21, 2014 (Maintenance Release SUSE Cloud 3) 304
- L.7 February 17, 2014 (Initial Release SUSE Cloud 3) 305
- L.8 September 25, 2013 (Maintenance Release SUSE Cloud 2.0) 307
- L.9 September 11, 2013 (Initial Release SUSE Cloud 2.0) 307

## Terminology 310



# About This Guide

SUSE® OpenStack Cloud is an open source software solution that provides the fundamental capabilities to deploy and manage a cloud infrastructure based on SUSE Linux Enterprise. SUSE OpenStack Cloud is powered by OpenStack, the leading community-driven, open source cloud infrastructure project. It seamlessly manages and provisions workloads across a heterogeneous cloud environment in a secure, compliant, and fully-supported manner. The product tightly integrates with other SUSE technologies and with the SUSE maintenance and support infrastructure.

In SUSE OpenStack Cloud, there are several high-level user roles (or viewpoints) that we need to discriminate:

## SUSE OpenStack Cloud Operator

Installs and deploys SUSE OpenStack Cloud, starting with bare-metal, then installing the operating system and the OpenStack components. For detailed information about the operator's tasks and how to solve them, refer to SUSE OpenStack Cloud *Deployment Guide*.

## SUSE OpenStack Cloud Administrator

Manages projects, users, images, flavors, and quotas within SUSE OpenStack Cloud. For detailed information about the administrator's tasks and how to solve them, refer to the OpenStack *Administrator Guide* and the SUSE OpenStack Cloud *Supplement to Administrator Guide and End User Guide*.

## SUSE OpenStack Cloud User

End user who launches and manages instances, can create snapshots, and use volumes for persistent storage within SUSE OpenStack Cloud. For detailed information about the user's tasks and how to solve them, refer to OpenStack *End User Guide* and the SUSE OpenStack Cloud *Supplement to Administrator Guide and End User Guide*.

This guide provides cloud operators with the information needed to deploy and maintain SUSE OpenStack Cloud administrative units, the Administration Server, the Control Nodes, and the Compute and Storage Nodes. The Administration Server provides all services needed to manage and deploy all other nodes in the cloud. The Control Node hosts all OpenStack components needed to operate virtual machines deployed on the Compute Nodes in the SUSE OpenStack Cloud. Each virtual machine (instance) started in the cloud will be hosted on one of the Compute Nodes. Object storage is managed by the Storage Nodes.



Many chapters in this manual contain links to additional documentation resources. These include additional documentation that is available on the system and documentation available on the Internet.

For an overview of the documentation available for your product and the latest documentation updates, refer to <http://www.suse.com/documentation>.

# 1 Available Documentation

Documentation for our products is available at <http://www.suse.com/documentation/>, where you can also find the latest updates. There, you can browse or download the documentation in various formats.

In addition, the product documentation is usually available in your installed system under `/usr/share/doc/manual`. You can also access the product-specific manuals and the upstream documentation from the *Help* links in the graphical Web interfaces.

The following documentation is available for this product:

## ***Deployment Guide***

Gives an introduction to the SUSE® OpenStack Cloud architecture, lists the requirements, and describes how to set up, deploy, and maintain the individual components. Also contains information about troubleshooting, support, and a glossary listing the most important terms and concepts for SUSE OpenStack Cloud.

## ***Administrator Guide***

Introduces the OpenStack services and which components they consist of.

Also guides you through tasks like managing images, roles, instances, flavors, volumes, shares, quotas, host aggregates and viewing cloud resources. To complete these tasks, either use the graphical Web interface (OpenStack Dashboard, code name Horizon) or the OpenStack command line clients.

## ***End User Guide***

Describes how to manage images, instances, networks, object containers, volumes, shares, stacks, and databases. To complete these tasks, either use the graphical Web interface (OpenStack Dashboard, code name Horizon) or the OpenStack command line clients.




## *Supplement to Administrator Guide and End User Guide*

A supplement to the SUSE OpenStack Cloud *Administrator Guide* and SUSE OpenStack Cloud *End User Guide*. It contains additional information for admins and end users hat is specific to SUSE OpenStack Cloud.


## 2 Feedback


Several feedback channels are available:

### Services and Support Options

For services and support options available for your product, refer to <http://www.suse.com/support/> .

### User Comments/Bug Reports

We want to hear your comments about and suggestions for this manual and the other documentation included with this product. If you are reading the HTML version of this guide, use the Comments feature at the bottom of each page in the online documentation at <http://www.suse.com/documentation/> .

If you are reading the single-page HTML version of this guide, you can use the *Report Bug* link next to each section to open a bug report at <https://bugzilla.suse.com/> . A user account is needed for this.

### Mail

For feedback on the documentation of this product, you can also send a mail to [doc-team@suse.com](mailto:doc-team@suse.com). Make sure to include the document title, the product version, and the publication date of the documentation. To report errors or suggest enhancements, provide a concise description of the problem and refer to the respective section number and page (or URL).



### 3 Documentation Conventions

The following notices and typographical conventions are used in this documentation:



#### Warning

Vital information you must be aware of before proceeding. Warns you about security issues, potential loss of data, damage to hardware, or physical hazards.



#### Important

Important information you should be aware of before proceeding.



#### Note

Additional information, for example about differences in software versions.



#### Tip

Helpful information, like a guideline or a piece of practical advice.



```
tux > command
```

Commands that can be run by any user, including the root user.









```
root # command
```



Commands that must be run with root privileges. Often you can also prefix these commands with the sudo command to run them.


- /etc/passwd: directory names and file names
- PLACEHOLDER: replace PLACEHOLDER with the actual value
- PATH: the environment variable PATH
- ls, --help: commands, options, and parameters
- user: users or groups



- , : a key to press or a key combination; keys are shown in uppercase as on a keyboard
- *File*, *File* > *Save As*: menu items, buttons
-  This paragraph is only relevant for the AMD64/Intel 64 architecture. The arrows mark the beginning and the end of the text block. 
-  This paragraph is only relevant for the architectures z Systems and POWER. The arrows mark the beginning and the end of the text block. 
- *Dancing Penguins* (Chapter *Penguins*, ↑Another Manual): This is a reference to a chapter in another manual.

## 4 About the Making of This Manual

This documentation is written in SUSEDoc, a subset of DocBook 5 (<http://www.docbook.org>) . The XML source files were validated by jing, processed by xsltproc, and converted into XSL-FO using a customized version of Norman Walsh's stylesheets. The final PDF is formatted through FOP from Apache Software Foundation. The open source tools and the environment used to build this documentation are provided by the DocBook Authoring and Publishing Suite (DAPS). The project's home page can be found at <https://github.com/openSUSE/daps> .

The XML source code of this documentation can be found at <https://github.com/SUSE-Cloud/doc-cloud> .



# I Architecture and Requirements

- 1 The SUSE OpenStack Cloud Architecture 2
- 2 Considerations and Requirements 8



# 1 The SUSE OpenStack Cloud Architecture

SUSE OpenStack Cloud is a cloud infrastructure solution that can easily be deployed and managed. It offers a cloud management solution that helps organizations to centralize virtual machine deployment.

SUSE OpenStack Cloud 7 provides the following features:

- Open source software that is based on the OpenStack Newton release.
- Centralized resource tracking providing insight into activities and capacity of the cloud infrastructure for optimized automated deployment of services.
- A self-service portal enabling end users to configure and deploy services as necessary, also offering the ability to track resource consumption (Horizon).
- An image repository from which standardized, preconfigured virtual machines can be published (Glance).
- Automated installation processes via Crowbar using pre-defined scripts for configuring and deploying the Control Node(s) and Compute and Storage Nodes.
- Multi-tenant, role-based provisioning and access control for multiple departments and users within your organization.
- APIs enabling the integration of third-party software, such as identity management and billing solutions.
- Heterogeneous hypervisor support (Xen and KVM).

SUSE OpenStack Cloud is based on SUSE Linux Enterprise Server, OpenStack, Crowbar, and Chef. SUSE Linux Enterprise Server is used as the underlying operating system for all cloud infrastructure machines (also called nodes). The cloud management layer, OpenStack, works as the “Cloud Operating System”. Crowbar and Chef are used to automatically deploy and manage the OpenStack nodes from a central Administration Server.



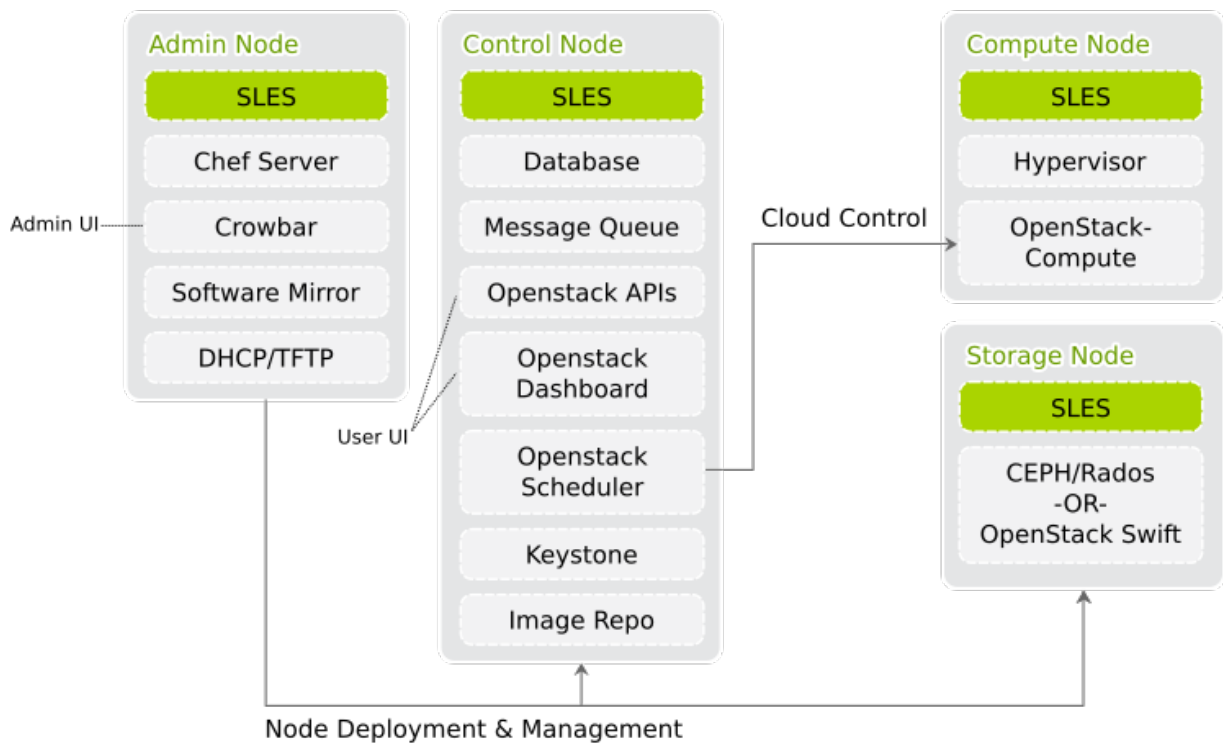


FIGURE 1.1: SUSE OPENSTACK CLOUD INFRASTRUCTURE

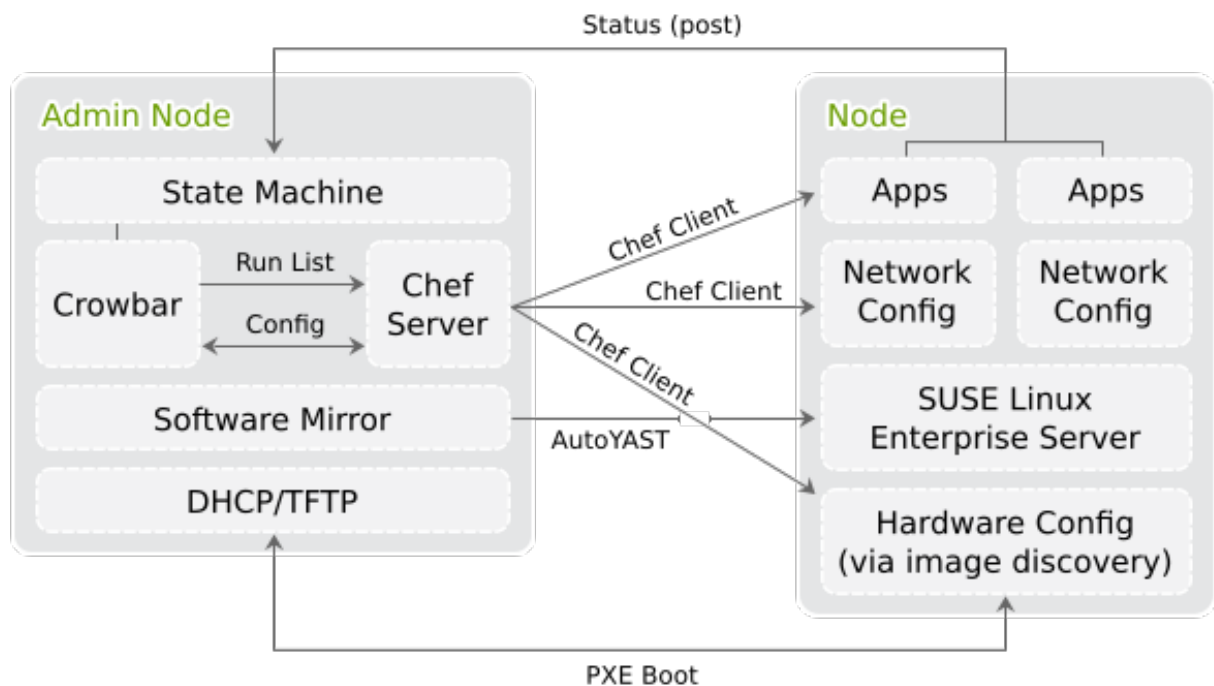
SUSE OpenStack Cloud is deployed to four different types of machines:

- one Administration Server for node deployment and management
- one or more Control Nodes hosting the cloud management services
- several Compute Nodes on which the instances are started
- several Storage Nodes for block and object storage

## 1.1 The Administration Server

The Administration Server provides all services needed to manage and deploy all other nodes in the cloud. Most of these services are provided by the Crowbar tool that—together with Chef—automates all the required installation and configuration tasks. Among the services provided by the server are DHCP, DNS, NTP, PXE, TFTP.





The Administration Server also hosts the software repositories for SUSE Linux Enterprise Server and SUSE OpenStack Cloud. They are needed for node deployment. If no other sources for the software repositories are available, it can also host the Subscription Management Tool (SMT), providing up-to-date repositories with updates and patches for all nodes.

## 1.2 The Control Node(s)

The Control Node(s) hosts all OpenStack components needed to orchestrate virtual machines deployed on the Compute Nodes in the SUSE OpenStack Cloud. OpenStack on SUSE OpenStack Cloud uses a PostgreSQL database, which is also hosted on the Control Node(s). The following OpenStack components—if deployed—run on the Control Node(s):

- PostgreSQL database
- Image (Glance) for managing virtual images
- Identity (Keystone), providing authentication and authorization for all OpenStack components
- Networking (Neutron), providing “networking as a service” between interface devices managed by other OpenStack services



- Block Storage (Cinder), providing block storage
- OpenStack Dashboard (Horizon), providing the Dashboard, a user Web interface for the OpenStack components
- Compute (Nova) management (Nova controller) including API and scheduler
- Message broker (RabbitMQ)
- Swift proxy server plus dispersion tools (health monitor) and Swift ring (index of objects, replicas, and devices). Swift provides object storage.
- Ceph master cluster monitor (Calamari), needs to be deployed on a dedicated node
- Hawk, a monitor for a pacemaker cluster (HA setup)
- Heat, an orchestration engine
- Ceilometer server and agents. Ceilometer collects CPU and networking data for billing purposes.
- Trove, a Database-as-a-Service, needs to be deployed on a dedicated node

Being a central point in the SUSE OpenStack Cloud architecture that runs a lot of services, a single Control Node can quickly become a performance bottleneck. This is especially true for large SUSE OpenStack Cloud deployments. It is possible to distribute the services listed above on more than one Control Node, up to a setup where each service runs on its own node.

Deploying certain parts of Networking (Neutron) on a distinct node is a general recommendation for production clouds. See [Section 10.9, “Deploying Neutron”](#) for details.

Hosting Identity (Keystone) on a distinct node enables you to separate authentication and authorization services from other cloud services for security reasons. Another “good candidate” to be hosted on a separate node is Block Storage (Cinder, particularly the cinder-volume role) when using local disks for storage. Deploying it on one or more separate node enables you to equip the node with storage and network hardware best suiting the service. Trove, the Database-as-a-Service for SUSE OpenStack Cloud and Calamari, the server for Ceph management and monitoring, always need to be deployed on dedicated Control Nodes.





## Note: Moving Services in an Existing Setup

In case you plan to move a service in an already deployed SUSE OpenStack Cloud from one Control Node to another, it is strongly recommended to shut down or save *all* instances before doing so. Restart them after having successfully re-deployed the services. Moving services also requires to stop them manually on the original Control Node.

## 1.3 The Compute Nodes

The Compute Nodes are the pool of machines on which the instances are running. These machines need to be equipped with a sufficient number of CPUs and enough RAM to start several instances. They also need to provide sufficient hard disk space, see [Section 2.2.2.3, “Compute Nodes”](#) for details. The Control Node effectively distributes instances within the pool of Compute Nodes and provides the necessary network resources. The OpenStack component Compute (Nova) runs on the Compute Nodes and provides means for setting up, starting, and stopping virtual machines.

SUSE OpenStack Cloud supports several hypervisors such as KVM, VMware vSphere and Xen. Each image that can be started with an instance is bound to one hypervisor. Each Compute Node can only run one hypervisor at a time. You can choose which hypervisor to run on which Compute Node when deploying the Nova barclamp.

## 1.4 The Storage Nodes

The Storage Nodes are the pool of machines providing object or block storage. Object storage is provided by the OpenStack Swift component, while block storage is provided by Cinder. The latter supports several back-ends, including Ceph, that can be deployed during the installation. Deploying Swift and Ceph is optional.

## 1.5 HA Setup

A failure of components in SUSE OpenStack Cloud can lead to system downtime and/or data loss. To prevent this, SUSE OpenStack Cloud 7 allows you to make all functions provided by the Control Node(s) highly available. During cloud deployment, you can set up a High Availability



(HA) cluster consisting of several nodes. You can assign certain roles to this cluster instead of assigning them to individual nodes. As of SUSE OpenStack Cloud 7, Control Nodes and Compute Nodes can be made highly available.

For all HA-enabled roles, the respective functions are automatically handled by the clustering software SUSE Linux Enterprise High Availability Extension. The High Availability Extension uses the Pacemaker cluster stack with Pacemaker as cluster resource manager and Corosync as messaging/infrastructure layer.

You can view the cluster status and configuration with the cluster management tools HA Web Console (Hawk) or the `crm` shell.



### Important: Do Not Change the Configuration

Use the cluster management tools only for *viewing*. All of the clustering configuration is done automatically via Crowbar and Chef. If you change anything via the cluster management tools you risk breaking the cluster. Changes done there may be reverted by the next run of Chef anyway.

A failure of the OpenStack infrastructure services (running on the Control Nodes) can be critical and can cause downtime within the cloud. For more information on making those services highly-available and avoiding other potential points of failure in your cloud setup, refer to [Section 2.6, "High Availability"](#).



## 2 Considerations and Requirements

Before deploying SUSE OpenStack Cloud, there are a few requirements to be met and considerations to be made. Make sure to thoroughly read this chapter—some decisions need to be made *before* deploying SUSE OpenStack Cloud, since you cannot change them afterward.

### 2.1 Network

SUSE OpenStack Cloud requires a complex network setup consisting of several networks that are configured during installation. These networks are for exclusive cloud usage. To access them from an existing network, a router is needed.

The network configuration on the nodes in the SUSE OpenStack Cloud network is entirely controlled by Crowbar. Any network configuration not done with Crowbar (for example, with YaST) will automatically be overwritten. After the cloud is deployed, network settings cannot be changed anymore!



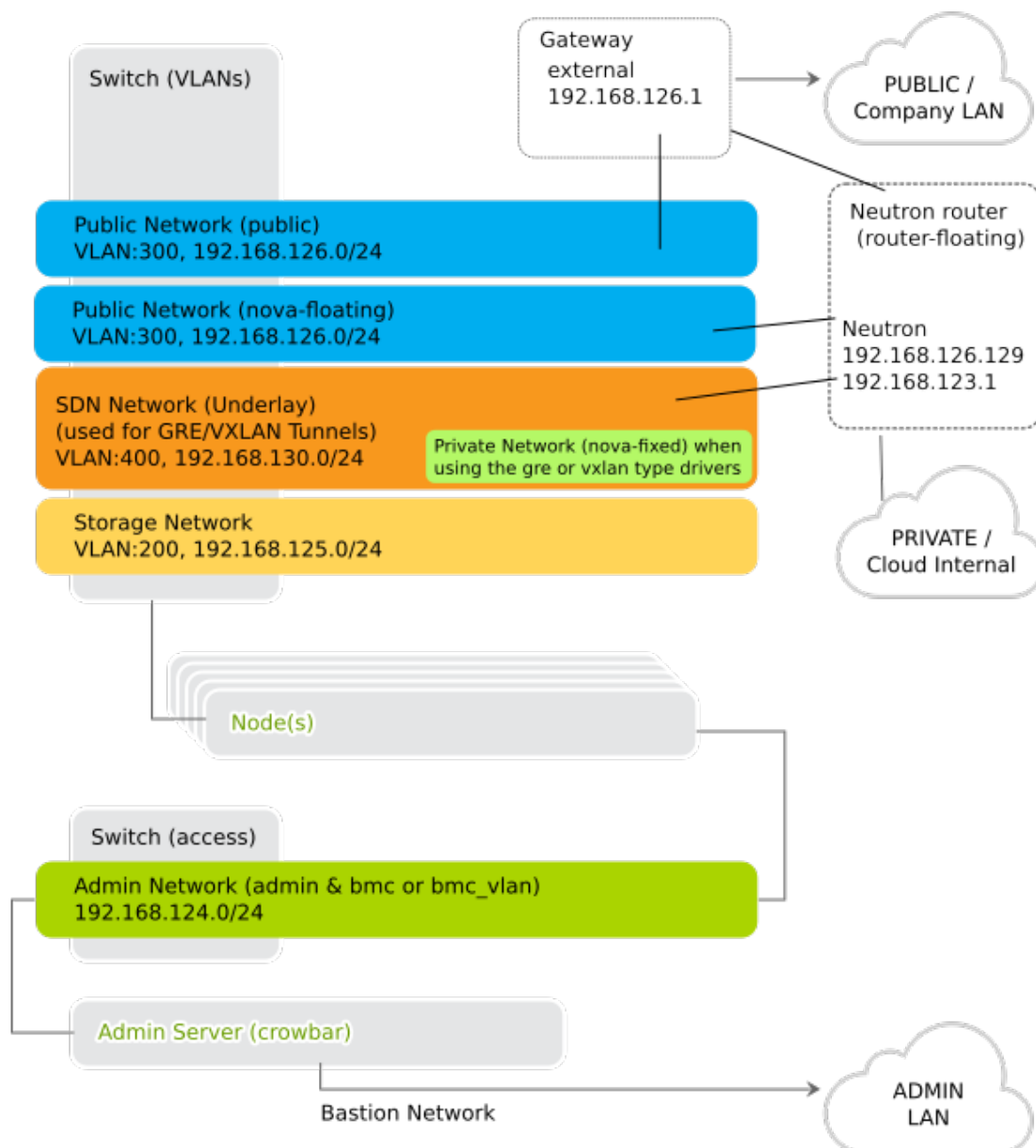


FIGURE 2.1: SUSE OPENSTACK CLOUD NETWORK: OVERVIEW

The following networks are pre-defined when setting up SUSE OpenStack Cloud. The IP addresses listed are the default addresses and can be changed using the YaST Crowbar module (see [Chapter 7, Crowbar Setup](#)). It is also possible to completely customize the network setup. This requires to manually edit the network barclamp template. See [Appendix D, The Network Barclamp Template File](#) for detailed instructions.



### Admin Network (192.168.124/24)

A private network to access the Administration Server and all nodes for administration purposes. The default setup lets you also access the BMC (Baseboard Management Controller) data via IPMI (Intelligent Platform Management Interface) from this network. If required, BMC access can be swapped to a separate network.

You have the following options for controlling access to this network:

- do not allow access from the outside and keep the admin network completely separated
- allow access to the Administration Server from a single network (for example, your company's administration network) via the “bastion network” option configured on an additional network card with a fixed IP address
- allow access from one or more networks via a gateway

### Storage Network (192.168.125/24)

Private, SUSE OpenStack Cloud internal virtual network. This network is used by Ceph and Swift only. It should not be accessed by users.

### Private Network (nova-fixed, 192.168.123/24)

Private, SUSE OpenStack Cloud internal virtual network. This network is used for inter-instance communication and provides access to the outside world for the instances. The gateway required is also automatically provided by SUSE OpenStack Cloud.

### Public Network (nova-floating, public, 192.168.126/24)

The only public network provided by SUSE OpenStack Cloud. You can access the Nova Dashboard and all instances (provided they have been equipped with a floating IP) on this network. This network can only be accessed via a gateway, which needs to be provided externally. All SUSE OpenStack Cloud users and administrators need to be able to access the public network.

### Software Defined Network (os\_sdn, 192.168.130/24)

Private, SUSE OpenStack Cloud internal virtual network. This network is used when Neutron is configured to use openvswitch with GRE tunneling for the virtual networks. It should not be accessed by users.





## Warning: Protect Networks from External Access

For security reasons, protect the following networks from external access:

- *Admin Network (192.168.124/24)*
- *Storage Network (192.168.125/24)*
- *Software Defined Network (os\_sdn, 192.168.130/24)*

Especially traffic from the cloud instances must not be able to pass through these networks.



## Important: VLAN Settings

As of SUSE OpenStack Cloud 7, using a VLAN for the admin network is only supported on a native/untagged VLAN. If you need VLAN support for the admin network, it must be handled at switch level.

When changing the network configuration with YaST or by editing `/etc/crowbar/network.json` you can define VLAN settings for each network. For the networks `nova-fixed` and `nova-floating`, however, special rules apply:

**nova-fixed:** The `USE VLAN` setting will be ignored. However, VLANs will automatically be used if deploying Neutron with VLAN support (using the plugins `linuxbridge`, `openvswitch` plus VLAN or `cisco` plus VLAN). In this case, you need to specify a correct `VLAN ID` for this network.

**nova-floating:** When using a VLAN for `nova-floating` (which is the default), the `USE VLAN` and `VLAN ID` settings for `nova-floating` and `public` need to be the same. When not using a VLAN for `nova-floating`, it needs to use a different physical network interface than the `nova_fixed` network.



## Note: No IPv6 Support

As of SUSE OpenStack Cloud 7, IPv6 is not supported. This applies to the cloud internal networks and to the instances.

The following diagram shows the pre-defined SUSE OpenStack Cloud network in more detail. It demonstrates how the OpenStack nodes and services use the different networks.



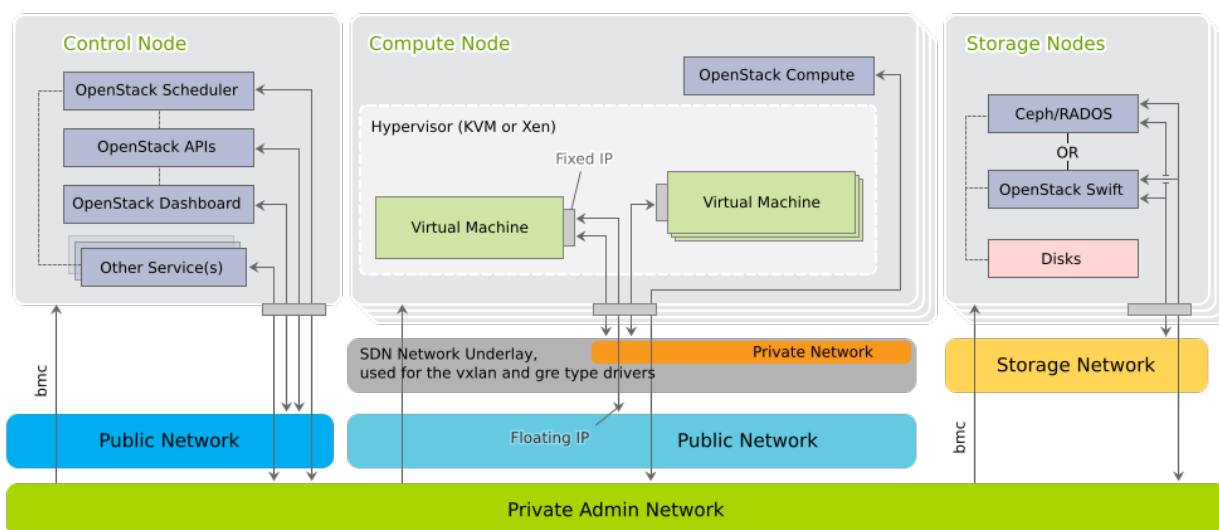


FIGURE 2.2: SUSE OPENSTACK CLOUD NETWORK: DETAILS

## 2.1.1 Network Address Allocation

The default networks set up in SUSE OpenStack Cloud are class C networks with 256 IP addresses each. This limits the maximum number of instances that can be started simultaneously. Addresses within the networks are allocated as outlined in the following table. Use the YaST Crowbar module to customize (see [Chapter 7, Crowbar Setup](#)). The last address in the IP range of each network is always reserved as the broadcast address. This assignment cannot be changed. For an overview of the minimum number of IP addresses needed for each of the ranges in the network settings, see [Table 2.1, “Minimum Number of IP Addresses for Network Ranges”](#).

TABLE 2.1: MINIMUM NUMBER OF IP ADDRESSES FOR NETWORK RANGES

Network	Required Number of IPs
Admin Network	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 1 IP per node (Administration Server, Control Nodes, and Compute Nodes)</li> <li>• 1 VIP for PostgreSQL</li> <li>• 1 VIP for RabbitMQ</li> <li>• 1 VIP per cluster (per Pacemaker barclamp proposal)</li> </ul>



Network	Required Number of IPs
Public Network	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 1 IP per node (Control Nodes and Compute Nodes)</li> <li>• 1 VIP per cluster</li> </ul>
BMC Network	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 1 IP per node (Administration Server, Control Nodes, and Compute Nodes)</li> </ul>
Software Defined Network	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 1 IP per node (Control Nodes and Compute Nodes)</li> </ul>



### Note: Limitations of the Default Network Proposal

The default network proposal as described below limits the maximum number of Compute Nodes to 80, the maximum number of floating IP addresses to 61 and the maximum number of addresses in the nova\_fixed network to 204.

To overcome these limitations you need to reconfigure the network setup by using appropriate address ranges. Do this by either using the YaST Crowbar module as described in [Chapter 7, Crowbar Setup](#) or by manually editing the network template file as described in [Appendix D, The Network Barclamp Template File](#).

**TABLE 2.2: 192.168.124.0/24 (ADMIN/BMC) NETWORK ADDRESS ALLOCATION**

Function	Address	Remark
router	<u>192.168.124.1</u>	Provided externally.
admin	<u>192.168.124.10</u> - <u>192.168.124.11</u>	Fixed addresses reserved for the Administration Server.
DHCP	<u>192.168.124.21</u> - <u>192.168.124.80</u>	Address range reserved for node allocation/installation. Determines the maximum number of parallel allocations/installations.
host	<u>192.168.124.81</u> - <u>192.168.124.160</u>	Fixed addresses for the OpenStack nodes. Determines the maximum number of OpenStack nodes that can be deployed.



Function	Address	Remark
bmc vlan host	<u>192.168.124.161</u>	Fixed address for the BMC VLAN. Used to generate a VLAN tagged interface on the Administration Server that can access the BMC network. The BMC VLAN needs to be in the same ranges as BMC, and BMC needs to have VLAN enabled.
bmc host	<u>192.168.124.162</u> - <u>192.168.124.240</u>	Fixed addresses for the OpenStack nodes. Determines the maximum number of OpenStack nodes that can be deployed.
switch	<u>192.168.124.241</u> - <u>192.168.124.250</u>	This range is not used in current releases and might be removed in the future.

**TABLE 2.3: 192.168.125/24 (STORAGE) NETWORK ADDRESS ALLOCATION**

Function	Address	Remark
host	<u>192.168.125.10</u> - <u>192.168.125.239</u>	Each Storage Node will get an address from this range.

**TABLE 2.4: 192.168.123/24 (PRIVATE NETWORK/NOVA-FIXED) NETWORK ADDRESS ALLOCATION**

Function	Address	Remark
DHCP	<u>192.168.123.1</u> - <u>192.168.123.254</u>	Address range for instances, routers and DHCP/DNS agents.

**TABLE 2.5: 192.168.126/24 (PUBLIC NETWORK NOVA-FLOATING, PUBLIC) NETWORK ADDRESS ALLOCATION**

Function	Address	Remark
router	<u>192.168.126.1</u>	Provided externally.
public host	<u>192.168.126.2</u> - <u>192.168.126.127</u>	Public address range for external SUSE OpenStack Cloud components such as the OpenStack Dashboard or the API.



Function	Address	Remark
floating host	<u>192.168.126.129</u> - <u>192.168.126.254</u>	Floating IP address range. Floating IPs can be manually assigned to a running instance to allow to access the guest from the outside. Determines the maximum number of instances that can concurrently be accessed from the outside.  The nova_floating network is set up with a netmask of 255.255.255.192, allowing a maximum number of 61 IP addresses. This range is pre-allocated by default and managed by Neutron.

**TABLE 2.6: 192.168.130/24 (SOFTWARE DEFINED NETWORK) NETWORK ADDRESS ALLOCATION**

Function	Address	Remark
host	<u>192.168.130.10</u> - <u>192.168.130.254</u>	If Neutron is configured with <u>openvswitch</u> and <u>gre</u> , each network node and all Compute Nodes will get an IP from this range.



### Note: Addresses for Additional Servers


Addresses not used in the ranges mentioned above, can be used to add additional servers with static addresses to SUSE OpenStack Cloud. Such servers can be used to provide additional services. A SUSE Manager server inside SUSE OpenStack Cloud, for example, needs to be configured using one of these addresses.

## 2.1.2 Network Modes

SUSE OpenStack Cloud supports different network modes defined in Crowbar: By default, they are named single, dual, and teaming. As of SUSE OpenStack Cloud 7, the networking mode is applied to all nodes and the Administration Server. That means that all machines need to meet



the hardware requirements for the chosen mode. The network mode can be configured using the YaST Crowbar module (*Chapter 7, Crowbar Setup*). The network mode cannot be changed after the cloud is deployed.

Other, more flexible network mode setups can be configured by manually editing the Crowbar network configuration files. See *Appendix D, The Network Barclamp Template File* for more information. SUSE or a partner can assist you in creating a custom setup within the scope of a consulting services agreement (see <http://www.suse.com/consulting/>  for more information on SUSE consulting).



### **Important: Network Device Bonding is Required for HA**

Network device bonding is required for an HA setup of SUSE OpenStack Cloud. If you are planning to move your cloud to an HA setup at a later point in time, make sure to use a network mode in the YaST Crowbar that supports network device bonding.

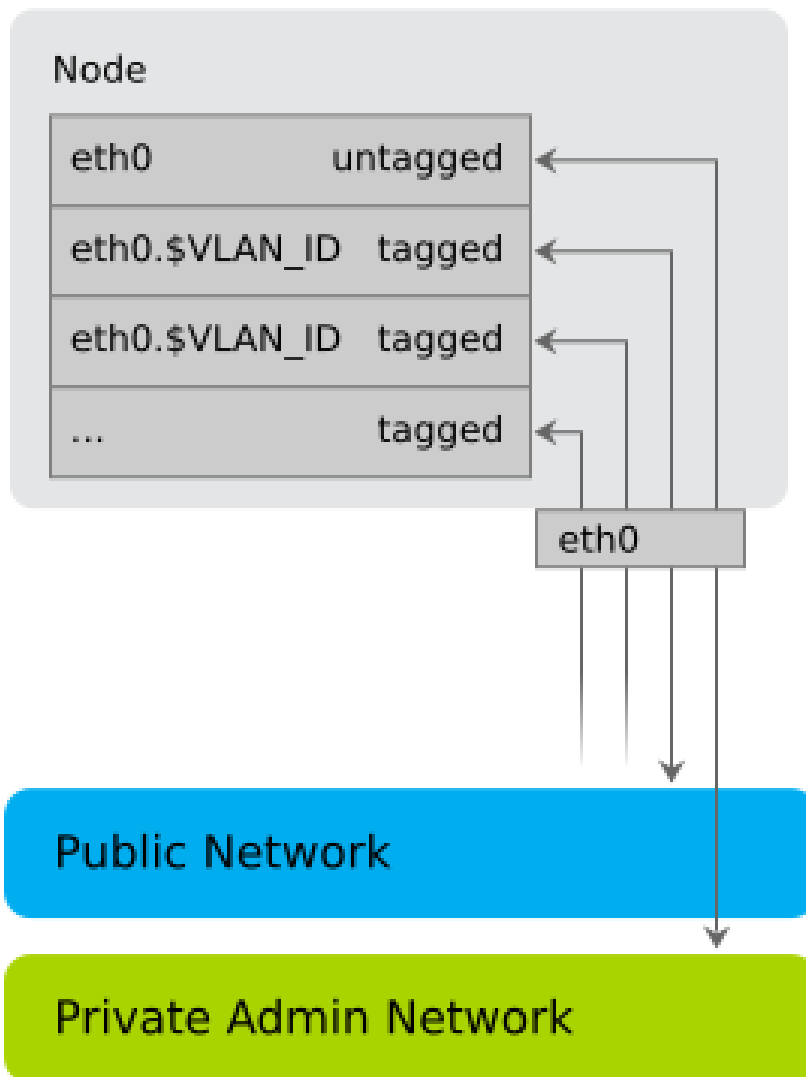
Otherwise a migration to an HA setup is not supported.



### 2.1.2.1 Single Network Mode

In single mode you just use one Ethernet card for all the traffic:

#### Single Mode

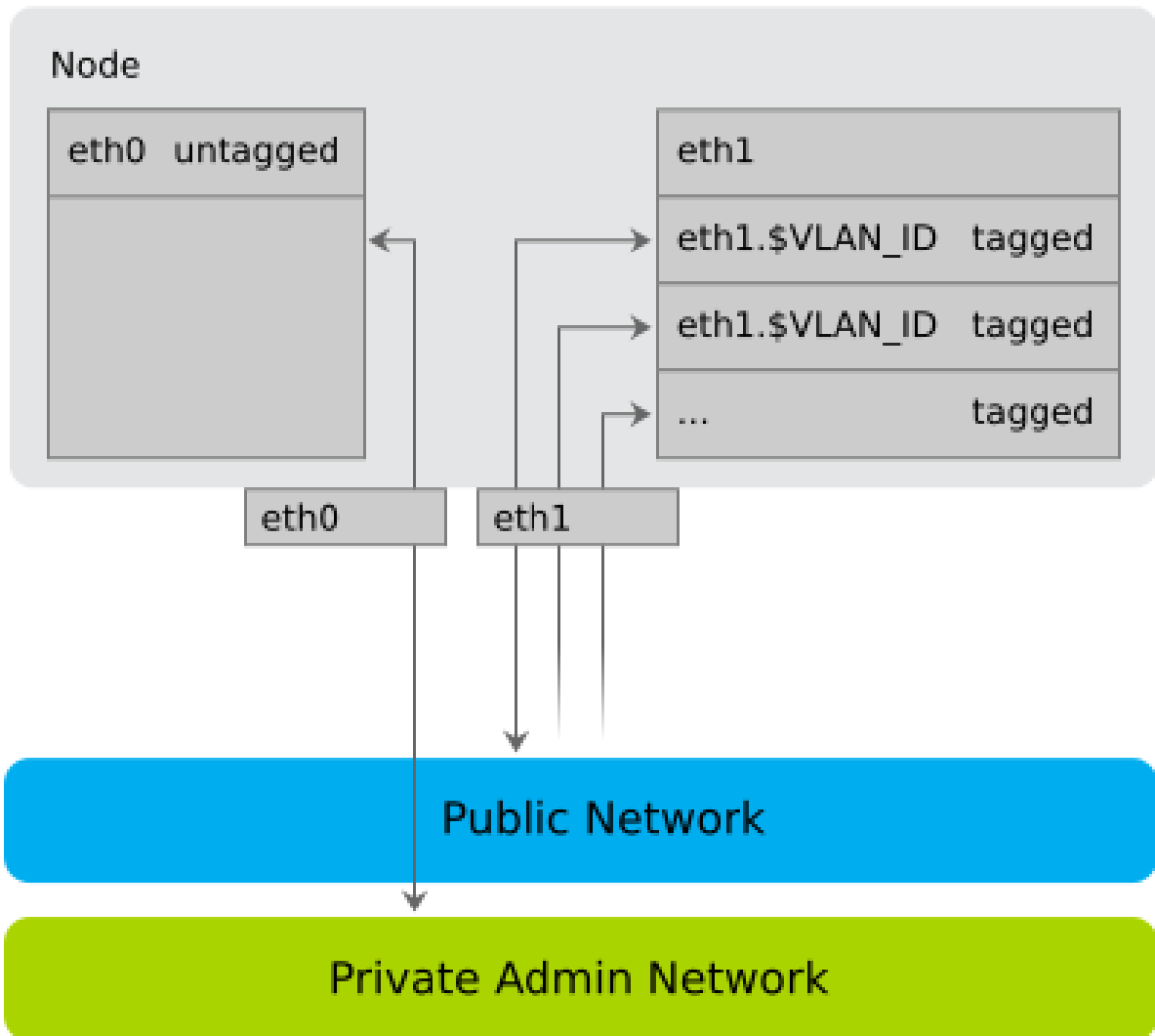




### 2.1.2.2 Dual Network Mode

Dual mode needs two Ethernet cards (on all nodes but Administration Server). It allows you to completely separate traffic to/from the Admin Network and to/from the public network:

#### Dual Mode

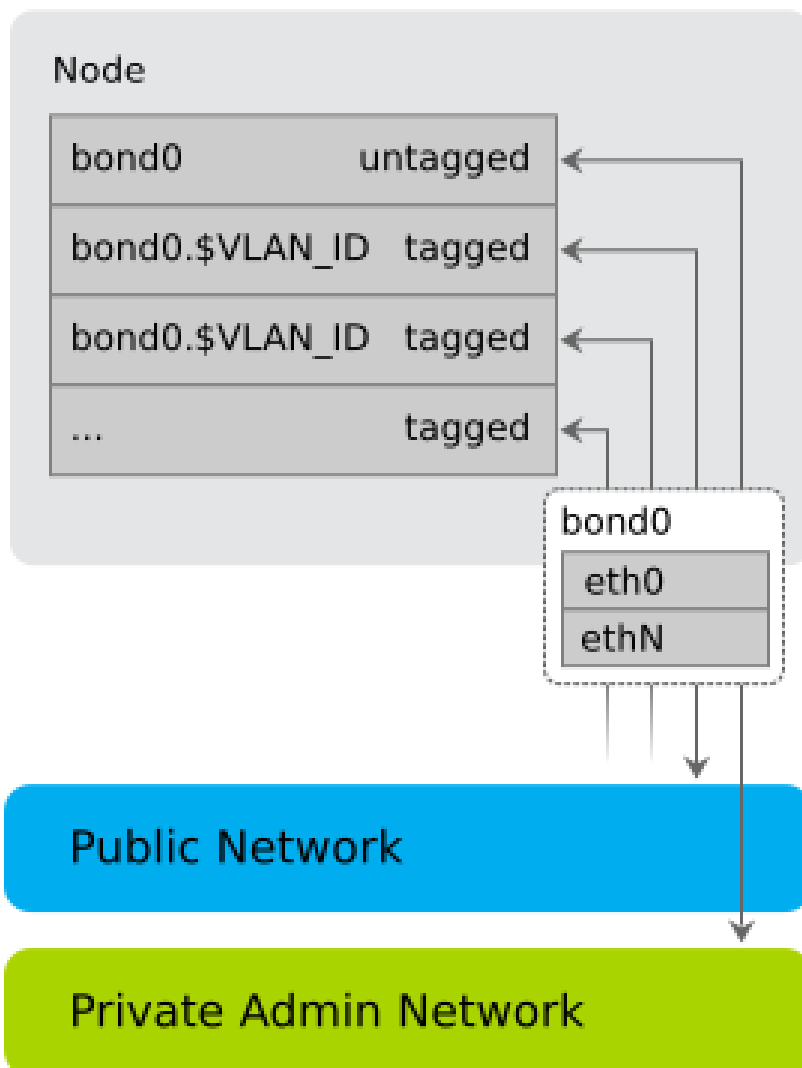


### 2.1.2.3 Teaming Network Mode

Teaming mode is almost identical to single mode, except that you combine several Ethernet cards to a “bond” (network device bonding). Teaming mode needs two or more Ethernet cards.



## Team Mode



When using teaming mode, you also need to choose a “bonding policy” that defines how to use the combined Ethernet cards. You can either set them up for fault tolerance, performance (load balancing) or for a combination of both.



### 2.1.3 Accessing the Administration Server via a Bastion Network

If you want to enable access to the Administration Server from another network, you can do so by providing an external gateway. This option offers maximum flexibility, but requires additional machines and may be less secure than you require. Therefore SUSE OpenStack Cloud offers a second option for accessing the Administration Server: the bastion network. You only need a dedicated Ethernet card and a static IP address from the external network to set it up.

The bastion network setup (see [Section 7.3.1, “Setting Up a Bastion Network”](#) for setup instructions) enables you to log in to the Administration Server via SSH from the company network. A direct login to other nodes in the cloud is not possible. However, the Administration Server can act as a “jump host”: To log in to a node, first log in to the Administration Server via SSH. From there, you can log in via SSH to other nodes.

### 2.1.4 DNS and Host Names

The Administration Server acts as a name server for all nodes in the cloud. If the Administration Server has access to the outside, then you can add additional name servers that will automatically be used to forward requests. If additional name servers are found on cloud deployment, the name server on the Administration Server will automatically be configured to forward requests for non-local records to these servers.

The Administration Server needs to be configured to have a fully qualified host name. The domain name you specify will be used for the DNS zone. It is required to use a sub-domain such as cloud.example.com. The Administration Server needs to have authority on the domain it is working on (to be able to create records for discovered nodes). As a result it will not forward requests for names it cannot resolve in this domain and thus cannot resolve names for example.com other than the ones in the cloud.

This host name must not be changed after SUSE OpenStack Cloud has been deployed. The OpenStack nodes will be named after their MAC address by default, but you can provide aliases, which are easier to remember when allocating the nodes. The aliases for the OpenStack nodes can be changed at any time. It is useful to have a list of MAC addresses and the intended use of the corresponding host at hand when deploying the OpenStack nodes.



## 2.2 Persistent Storage

When talking about “persistent storage” on SUSE OpenStack Cloud, there are two completely different aspects to discuss: 1) the block and object storage services SUSE OpenStack Cloud offers, 2) the hardware related storage aspects on the different node types.



### Note: Persistent vs. Ephemeral Storage

Block and object storage are persistent storage models where files or images are stored until they are explicitly deleted. SUSE OpenStack Cloud also offers ephemeral storage for images attached to instances. These ephemeral images only exist during the life of an instance and are deleted when the guest is terminated. See [Section 2.2.2.3, “Compute Nodes”](#) for more information.


### 2.2.1 Cloud Storage Services

As mentioned above, SUSE OpenStack Cloud offers two different types of services for persistent storage: object and block storage. Object storage lets you upload and download files (similar to an FTP server), whereas a block storage provides mountable devices (similar to a hard-disk partition). Furthermore SUSE OpenStack Cloud provides a repository to store the virtual disk images used to start instances.

#### Object Storage with Swift

The OpenStack object storage service is called Swift. The storage component of Swift (swift-storage) needs to be deployed on dedicated nodes where no other cloud services run. To be able to store the objects redundantly, it is required to deploy at least two Swift nodes. SUSE OpenStack Cloud is configured to always use all unused disks on a node for storage. Swift can optionally be used by Glance, the service that manages the images used to boot the instances. Offering object storage with Swift is optional.

#### Block Storage

Block storage on SUSE OpenStack Cloud is provided by Cinder. Cinder can use a variety of storage back-ends, among them network storage solutions like NetApp or EMC. It is also possible to use local disks for block storage. A list of drivers available for Cinder and the features supported for each driver is available from the *CinderSupportMatrix* at <https://wiki.openstack.org/wiki/CinderSupportMatrix> . SUSE OpenStack Cloud 7 is shipping with OpenStack Newton.



Alternatively, Cinder can use Ceph RBD as a back-end. Ceph offers data security and speed by storing the devices redundantly on different servers. Ceph needs to be deployed on dedicated nodes where no other cloud services run. Ceph requires at least four dedicated nodes. If deploying the optional Calamari server for Ceph management and monitoring, an additional dedicated node is required.

### The Glance Image Repository

Glance provides a catalog and repository for virtual disk images used to start the instances. Glance is installed on a Control Node. It either uses Swift, Ceph or a directory on the Control Node to store the images. The image directory can either be a local directory or an NFS share.

## 2.2.2 Storage Hardware Requirements

Apart from sufficient disk space to install the SUSE Linux Enterprise Server operating system, each node in SUSE OpenStack Cloud needs to store additional data. Requirements and recommendations for the various node types are listed below.



### Important: Choose a Hard Disk for the Operating System Installation

The operating system will always be installed on the *first* hard disk, the one that is recognized as `/dev/sda`. This is the disk that is listed *first* in the BIOS, the one from which the machine will boot. If you have nodes with a certain hard disk you want the operating system to be installed on, make sure it will be recognized as the first disk.

### 2.2.2.1 Administration Server

If you store the update repositories directly on the Administration Server (see [Section 2.5.2, “Product and Update Repositories”](#) for details), it is recommended to mount `/srv` to a separate partition or volume with a minimum of 30 GB space.

Log files from all nodes in SUSE OpenStack Cloud are stored on the Administration Server under `/var/log` (see [Section A.1, “On the Administration Server”](#) for a complete list). Furthermore, the message service RabbitMQ requires 1 GB of free space in `/var`. Make sure sufficient space is available under `/var`.



### 2.2.2.2 Control Nodes

Depending on how the services are set up, Glance and Cinder may require additional disk space on the Control Node on which they are running. Glance may be configured to use a local directory, whereas Cinder may use a local image file for storage. For performance and scalability reasons this is only recommended for test setups. Make sure there is sufficient free disk space available if you use a local file for storage.

Cinder may be configured to use local disks for storage (configuration option `raw`). If you choose this setup, it is recommended to deploy the *cinder-volume* role to one or more dedicated Control Nodes. Those should be equipped with several disks providing sufficient storage space. It may also be necessary to equip this node with two or more bonded network cards, since it will generate heavy network traffic. Bonded network cards require a special setup for this node. For details, refer to [Appendix D, The Network Barclamp Template File](#).

Live migration for Xen instances requires to export `/var/lib/nova/instances` on the Control Node hosting `nova-controller`. This directory will host a copy of the root disk of *all* Xen instances in the cloud and needs to have sufficient disk space. It is strongly recommended to use a separate block device for this directory, preferably a RAID device to ensure data security.

### 2.2.2.3 Compute Nodes

Unless an instance is started via “Boot from Volume”, it is started with at least one disk—a copy of the image from which it has been started. Depending on the flavor you start, the instance may also have a second, so-called “ephemeral” disk. The size of the root disk depends on the image itself. Ephemeral disks are always created as sparse image files that grow (up to a defined size) when being “filled”. By default ephemeral disks have a size of 10 GB.

Both disks, root images and ephemeral disk, are directly bound to the instance and are deleted when the instance is terminated. Therefore these disks are bound to the Compute Node on which the instance has been started. The disks are created under `/var/lib/nova` on the Compute Node. Your Compute Nodes should be equipped with enough disk space to store the root images and ephemeral disks.





## Note: Ephemeral Disks vs. Block Storage

Do not confuse ephemeral disks with persistent block storage. In addition to an ephemeral disk, which is automatically provided with most instance flavors, you can optionally add a persistent storage device provided by Cinder. Ephemeral disks are deleted when the instance terminates, while persistent storage devices can be reused in another instance.

The maximum disk space required on a compute node depends on the available flavors. A flavor specifies the number of CPUs, RAM and disk size of an instance. Several flavors ranging from *tiny* (1 CPU, 512 MB RAM, no ephemeral disk) to *xlarge* (8 CPUs, 8 GB RAM, 10 GB ephemeral disk) are available by default. Adding custom flavors, editing and deleting existing flavors is also supported.

To calculate the minimum disk space needed on a compute node, you need to determine the highest "disk space to RAM" ratio from your flavors. Example:

Flavor small: 2 GB RAM, 100 GB ephemeral disk = > 50 GB disk /1 GB RAM

Flavor large: 8 GB RAM, 200 GB ephemeral disk = > 25 GB disk /1 GB RAM

So, 50 GB disk /1 GB RAM is the ratio that matters. If you multiply that value by the amount of RAM in GB available on your compute node, you have the minimum disk space required by ephemeral disks. Pad that value with sufficient space for the root disks plus a buffer that enables you to create flavors with a higher disk space to RAM ratio in the future.



## Warning: Overcommitting Disk Space

The scheduler that decides in which node an instance is started does not check for available disk space. If there is no disk space left on a compute node, this will not only cause data loss on the instances, but the compute node itself will also stop operating. Therefore you must make sure all compute nodes are equipped with enough hard disk space!

### 2.2.2.4 Storage Nodes (optional)

The block-storage service Ceph RBD and the object storage service Swift need to be deployed onto dedicated nodes—it is not possible to mix these services. Swift component requires at least two machines (more are recommended) to be able to store data redundantly. For Ceph at least



four machines are required (more are recommended). If deploying the optional Calamari server for Ceph management and monitoring, an additional machine (with moderate CPU and RAM requirements) needs to be supplied.

Each Ceph/Swift Storage Node needs at least two hard disks. The first one will be used for the operating system installation, while the others can be used for storage purposes. It is recommended to equip the storage nodes with as many disks as possible.

Using RAID on Swift storage nodes is not supported. Swift takes care of redundancy and replication on its own. Using RAID with Swift would also result in a huge performance penalty.

## 2.3 SSL Encryption

Whenever non-public data travels over a network it needs to be encrypted. Encryption protects the integrity and confidentiality of data. Therefore you should enable SSL support when deploying SUSE OpenStack Cloud to production. (SSL is not enabled by default since it requires certificates to be provided). The following services (and their APIs if available) can use SSL:

- Cinder
- Dashboard
- Glance
- Heat
- Keystone
- Manila
- Neutron
- Nova
- Trove
- VNC

Using SSL requires an SSL certificate either for each node on which the services that uses encryption run (services sharing a certificate). Alternatively, you need a dedicated certificate for each service. A single certificate for the Control Node is the minimum requirement, where all services listed above are installed on the Control Node and are sharing the certificate.



Certificates must be signed by a trusted authority. Refer to [http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles-12/book\\_sle\\_admin/data/sec\\_apache2\\_ssl.html](http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles-12/book_sle_admin/data/sec_apache2_ssl.html) for instructions on how to create and sign them.

### Important: Host Names

Each SSL certificate is issued for a certain host name and, optionally, for alternative host names (via the `AlternativeName` option). Each publicly available node in SUSE OpenStack Cloud has two host names—an internal and a public one. The SSL certificate needs to be issued for *both* internal and public names.

The internal name has the following scheme:

```
dMAC ADDRESS.FQDN
```

`MAC ADDRESS` is the MAC address of the interface used to boot the machine via PXE. All letters are turned lowercase and all colons are replaced with dashes. For example, `52-54-00-8e-ce-e3`. `FQDN` is the fully qualified domain name. An example name looks like this:

```
d52-54-00-8e-ce-e3.example.com
```

Unless you have entered a custom *Public Name* for a client (see [Section 9.2, “Node Installation”](#) for details), the public name is the same as the internal name prefixed by `public`:

```
public.d52-54-00-8e-ce-e3.example.com
```

To look up the node names open the Crowbar Web interface and click the name of a node in the *Node Dashboard*. The names are listed as *Full Name* and *Public Name*.

## 2.4 Hardware Requirements

Precise hardware requirements can only be listed for the Administration Server and the OpenStack Control Node. The requirements of the OpenStack Compute and Storage Nodes depends on the number of concurrent instances and their virtual hardware equipment.



The minimum number of machines required for a SUSE OpenStack Cloud setup is three: one Administration Server, one Control Node, and one Compute Node. In addition to that, a gateway providing access to the public network is required. Deploying storage requires additional nodes: at least two nodes for Swift and a minimum of four nodes for Ceph.

### Important: Virtual/Physical Machines and Architecture

Deploying SUSE OpenStack Cloud functions to virtual machines is only supported for the Administration Server—all other nodes need to be physical hardware. Although the Control Node can be virtualized in test environments, too, this is not supported for production systems.

SUSE OpenStack Cloud currently only runs on x86\_64 hardware.

## 2.4.1 Administration Server

- Architecture: x86\_64
- RAM: at least 4 GB, 8 GB recommended. The demand for memory depends on the total number of nodes in SUSE OpenStack Cloud—the higher the number of nodes, the more RAM is needed. A deployment with 50 nodes requires a minimum of 24 GB RAM for each Control Node.
- Hard disk: at least 50 GB. It is recommended to put /srv on a separate partition with at least additional 30 GB of space. Alternatively, you can mount the update repositories from another server (see [Section 2.5.2, “Product and Update Repositories”](#) for details).
- Number of network cards: 1 for single and dual mode, 2 or more for team mode. Additional networks such as the bastion network and/or a separate BMC network each need an additional network card. See [Section 2.1, “Network”](#) for details.
- Can be deployed on physical hardware or a virtual machine

## 2.4.2 Control Node

- Architecture: x86\_64
- RAM: at least 8 GB, 12 GB when deploying a single Control Node, and 32 GB recommended.



- Number of network cards: 1 for single mode, 2 for dual mode, 2 or more for team mode. See [Section 2.1, “Network”](#) for details.
- Hard disk: See [Section 2.2.2.2, “Control Nodes”](#).

### 2.4.3 Compute Node

The Compute Nodes need to be equipped with a sufficient amount of RAM and CPUs, matching the numbers required by the maximum number of instances running concurrently. An instance started in SUSE OpenStack Cloud cannot share resources from several physical nodes. It uses the resources of the node on which it was started. So if you offer a flavor (see [Flavor](#) for a definition) with 8 CPUs and 12 GB RAM, at least one of your nodes should be able to provide these resources. Make sure to also add 1 GB RAM for every two nodes (including Control Nodes and Storage Nodes) deployed in your cloud.

See [Section 2.2.2.3, “Compute Nodes”](#) for storage requirements.

### 2.4.4 Storage Node

Usually, the Storage Nodes are sufficiently equipped with a single CPU and a minimum of 4 GB RAM. The demand for memory depends on the total number of nodes in SUSE OpenStack Cloud—the higher the number of nodes, the more RAM is needed. A deployment with 50 nodes requires a minimum of 20 GB for each Storage Node. If you use Ceph as storage, the storage nodes should be equipped with an additional 2 GB RAM per OSD (Ceph object storage daemon). For storage requirements, see [Section 2.2.2.4, “Storage Nodes \(optional\)”](#).


## 2.5 Software Requirements



All nodes and the Administration Server in SUSE OpenStack Cloud run on SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 12 SP2. Subscriptions for the following components are available as one- or three-year subscriptions including priority support:

- SUSE OpenStack Cloud Control Node + SUSE OpenStack Cloud Administration Server (including entitlements for High Availability and SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 12 SP2)
- additional SUSE OpenStack Cloud Control Node (including entitlements for High Availability and SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 12 SP2)



- SUSE OpenStack Cloud Compute Node (excluding entitlements for High Availability and SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 12 SP2)
- SUSE OpenStack Cloud Swift node (excluding entitlements for High Availability and SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 12 SP2)

SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 12 SP2 and—optionally—HA entitlements for Compute Nodes and Swift Storage Nodes as well as entitlements for guest operating systems need to be purchased separately. Refer to <http://www.suse.com/products/suse-openstack-cloud/how-to-buy/>  for more information on licensing and pricing.

Running Ceph within SUSE OpenStack Cloud (optional) requires an additional SUSE Enterprise Storage subscription. Refer to <https://www.suse.com/products/suse-enterprise-storage/>  and <https://www.suse.com/products/suse-openstack-cloud/frequently-asked-questions>  for more information.




### Important: SUSE Account

A SUSE account is needed for product registration and access to update repositories. If you do not already have one, go to <http://www.suse.com/login>  to create it.

## 2.5.1 Optional Component: SUSE Enterprise Storage

SUSE OpenStack Cloud can be extended by SUSE Enterprise Storage for setting up a Ceph cluster providing block storage services. To store virtual disks for instances SUSE OpenStack Cloud uses block storage provided by the Cinder module. Cinder itself needs a back-end providing storage. In production environments this usually is a network storage solution. Cinder can use a variety of network storage back-ends, among them solutions from EMC, Fujitsu or NetApp. In case your organization does not provide a network storage solution that can be used with SUSE OpenStack Cloud, you can set up a Ceph cluster with SUSE Enterprise Storage. SUSE Enterprise Storage provides a reliable and fast distributed storage architecture using commodity hardware platforms.

Deploying SUSE Enterprise Storage (Ceph) within SUSE OpenStack Cloud is fully supported. Ceph nodes can be deployed using the same interface as for all other SUSE OpenStack Cloud components. It requires a SUSE Enterprise Storage subscription. See <https://www.suse.com/products/suse-enterprise-storage/>  for more information on SUSE Enterprise Storage.



## 2.5.2 Product and Update Repositories

To deploy SUSE OpenStack Cloud and to be able to keep a running SUSE OpenStack Cloud up-to-date, a total of seven software repositories is needed. This includes the static product repositories, which do not change over the product life cycle and the update repositories, which constantly change. The following repositories are needed:

### MANDATORY REPOSITORIES

#### SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 12 SP2 Product

The SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 12 SP2 product repository is a copy of the installation media (DVD #1) for SUSE Linux Enterprise Server. As of SUSE OpenStack Cloud 7 it is required to have it available locally on the Administration Server. This repository requires approximately 3.5 GB of hard disk space.

#### SUSE OpenStack Cloud 7 Product

The SUSE OpenStack Cloud 7 product repository is a copy of the installation media (DVD #1) for SUSE OpenStack Cloud. It can either be made available remote via HTTP or locally on the Administration Server. The latter is recommended, since it makes the setup of the Administration Server easier. This repository requires approximately 500 MB of hard disk space.

#### PTF

A repository created automatically on the Administration Server upon the SUSE OpenStack Cloud add-on product installation. It serves as a repository for “Program Temporary Fixes” (PTF) which are part of the SUSE support program.

#### SLES12-SP2-Pool and SUSE-OpenStack-Cloud-7-Pool

The SUSE Linux Enterprise Server and SUSE OpenStack Cloud repositories contain all binary RPMs from the installation media, plus pattern information and support status metadata. These repositories are served from SUSE Customer Center and need to be kept in synchronization with their sources. They can be made available remotely via an existing SMT or SUSE Manager server. Alternatively, make them available locally on the Administration Server by installing a local SMT server, by mounting or synchronizing a remote directory or by copying them.



## SLES12-SP2-Updates and SUSE-OpenStack-Cloud-7-Updates

These repositories contain maintenance updates to packages in the corresponding Pool repositories. These repositories are served from SUSE Customer Center and need to be kept synchronized with their sources. They can be made available remotely via an existing SMT or SUSE Manager server or locally on the Administration Server by installing a local SMT server, by mounting or synchronizing a remote directory or by regularly copying them.

As explained in [Section 2.6, “High Availability”](#), Control Nodes in SUSE OpenStack Cloud can optionally be made highly available using the SUSE Linux Enterprise High Availability Extension. SUSE OpenStack Cloud also comes with full support for installing a storage cluster running Ceph provided by the SUSE Enterprise Storage extension. Deploying Ceph is optional. The following repositories are required to deploy SLES High Availability Extension and SUSE Enterprise Storage nodes:


### OPTIONAL REPOSITORIES

#### SLE-HA12-SP2-Pool and SUSE-Enterprise-Storage-4-Pool

The pool repositories contain all binary RPMs from the installation media, plus pattern information and support status metadata. These repositories are served from SUSE Customer Center and need to be kept in synchronization with their sources. They can be made available remotely via an existing SMT or SUSE Manager server. Alternatively, make them available locally on the Administration Server by installing a local SMT server, by mounting or synchronizing a remote directory or by copying them.

#### SLE-HA12-SP2-Updates and SUSE-Enterprise-Storage-4-Updates

These repositories contain maintenance updates to packages in the corresponding pool repositories. These repositories are served from SUSE Customer Center and need to be kept synchronized with their sources. They can be made available remotely via an existing SMT or SUSE Manager server or locally on the Administration Server by installing a local SMT server, by mounting or synchronizing a remote directory or by regularly copying them.

The product repositories (for SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 12 SP2 and SUSE OpenStack Cloud 7) do not change during the life cycle of a product. Thus, they can be copied to the destination directory from the installation media. However, the pool and update repositories need to be kept synchronized with their sources on the SUSE Customer Center. SUSE offers two products taking care of synchronizing repositories and making them available within your organization: SUSE Manager (<http://www.suse.com/products/suse-manager/> ) and Subscription Management Tool (shipping with SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 12 SP2).



All repositories need to be served via <http> to be available for SUSE OpenStack Cloud deployment. Repositories that are directly available on the Administration Server are made available by the Apache Web server running on the Administration Server. If your organization already uses SUSE Manager or SMT, you can use the repositories provided by these servers.

Making the repositories locally available on the Administration Server has the advantage of a simple network setup within SUSE OpenStack Cloud. It also allows you to seal off the SUSE OpenStack Cloud network from other networks in your organization. Using a remote server as a source for the repositories has the advantage of using existing resources and services. It also makes setting up the Administration Server much easier. However, this requires a custom network setup for SUSE OpenStack Cloud, since the Administration Server needs to be able to access the remote server.

### Installing a Subscription Management Tool (SMT) Server on the Administration Server

The SMT server, shipping with SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 12 SP2, regularly synchronizes repository data from SUSE Customer Center with your local host. Installing the SMT server on the Administration Server is recommended if you do not have access to update repositories from elsewhere within your organization. This option requires the Administration Server to be able to access the Internet.

### Using a Remote SMT Server

If you already run an SMT server within your organization, you can use it within SUSE OpenStack Cloud. When using a remote SMT server, update repositories are served directly from the SMT server. Each node is configured with these repositories upon its initial setup. The SMT server needs to be accessible from the Administration Server and all nodes in SUSE OpenStack Cloud (via one or more gateways). Resolving the server's host name also needs to work.

### Using a SUSE Manager Server

Each client that is managed by SUSE Manager needs to register with the SUSE Manager server. Therefore the SUSE Manager support can only be installed after the nodes have been deployed. To also be able to use repositories provided by SUSE Manager during node deployment, SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 12 SP2 must be set up for autoinstallation on the SUSE Manager server.

The server needs to be accessible from the Administration Server and all nodes in SUSE OpenStack Cloud (via one or more gateways). Resolving the server's host name also needs to work.



## Utilizing Existing Repositories

If you can access existing repositories from within your company network from the Administration Server, you have the following options: either mount or synchronize or manually transfer these repositories to the required locations on the Administration Server.

## 2.6 High Availability

Several components and services in SUSE OpenStack Cloud can become single points of failure that may cause system downtime and/or data loss if they fail.

SUSE OpenStack Cloud provides various mechanisms which can ensure that the crucial components and services are highly available. The following sections provide an overview of which components on each node you should consider to make highly available. For making the Control Node functions and the Compute Nodes highly available, SUSE OpenStack Cloud uses the cluster software SUSE Linux Enterprise High Availability Extension. Make sure to thoroughly read [Section 2.6.5, “Cluster Requirements and Recommendations”](#) that lists additional requirements with regard to that.

### 2.6.1 High Availability of the Administration Server

The Administration Server provides all services needed to manage and deploy all other nodes in the cloud. If the Administration Server is not available, new cloud nodes cannot be allocated, and you cannot add new roles to cloud nodes.

However, only two services on the Administration Server are single points of failure, without which the cloud cannot continue to run properly: DNS and NTP.

#### 2.6.1.1 Administration Server—Avoiding Points of Failure

To avoid DNS and NTP as potential points of failure, deploy the roles `dns-server` and `ntp-server` to multiple nodes.





## Note: Access to External Network

If any configured DNS forwarder or NTP external server is not reachable through the admin network from these nodes, allocate an address in the public network for each node that has the `dns-server` and `ntp-server` roles:

```
crowbar network allocate_ip default `hostname -f` public host
```

That way, the nodes can use the public gateway to reach the external servers. The change will only become effective after the next run of `chef-client` on the affected nodes.

### 2.6.1.2 Administration Server—Recovery

To minimize recovery time for the Administration Server, follow the backup and restore recommendations described in [Section 11.5, “Backing Up and Restoring the Administration Server”](#).

## 2.6.2 High Availability of the Control Node(s)

The Control Node(s) usually run a variety of services without which the cloud would not be able to run properly.

### 2.6.2.1 Control Node(s)—Avoiding Points of Failure

To prevent the cloud from avoidable downtime in case one or more Control Nodes fail, you can make the following roles highly available:

- `database-server` (`database` barclamp)
- `keystone-server` (`keystone` barclamp)
- `rabbitmq-server` (`rabbitmq` barclamp)
- `swift-proxy` (`swift` barclamp)
- `glance-server` (`glance` barclamp)
- `cinder-controller` (`cinder` barclamp)



- neutron-server (neutron barclamp)
- neutron-network (neutron barclamp)
- nova-controller (nova barclamp)
- nova\_dashboard-server (nova\_dashboard barclamp)
- ceilometer-server (ceilometer barclamp)
- ceilometer-polling (ceilometer barclamp)
- heat-server (heat barclamp)

Instead of assigning these roles to individual cloud nodes, you can assign them to one or several High Availability clusters. SUSE OpenStack Cloud will then use the Pacemaker cluster stack (shipped with the SUSE Linux Enterprise High Availability Extension) to manage the services. In case one Control Node fails, the services will fail over to another Control Node. For details on the Pacemaker cluster stack and the SUSE Linux Enterprise High Availability Extension, refer to the Administration Guide, available at <http://www.suse.com/documentation/sle-ha-12/>. However, whereas SUSE Linux Enterprise High Availability Extension includes Linux Virtual Server as load-balancer, SUSE OpenStack Cloud uses HAProxy for this purpose (<http://haproxy.1wt.eu/>).



### Note: Recommended Setup

Though it is possible to use the same cluster for all of the roles above, the recommended setup is to use three clusters and to deploy the roles as follows:

- data cluster: database-server and rabbitmq-server
- network cluster: neutron-network (as the neutron-network role may result in heavy network load and CPU impact)
- Trove (always needs to be deployed on a dedicated node)
- services cluster: all other roles listed above (as they are related to API/schedulers)

SUSE OpenStack Cloud does not support High Availability for the LBaaS service plug-in. Thus, failover of a neutron load-balancer to another node can only be done manually by editing the database.



## Important: Cluster Requirements and Recommendations

For setting up the clusters, some special requirements and recommendations apply. For details, refer to *Section 2.6.5, “Cluster Requirements and Recommendations”*.


### 2.6.2.2 Control Node(s)—Recovery

Recovery of the Control Node(s) is done automatically by the cluster software: if one Control Node fails, Pacemaker will fail over the services to another Control Node. If a failed Control Node is repaired and rebuilt via Crowbar, it will be automatically configured to join the cluster. At this point Pacemaker will have the option to fail services back if required.

### 2.6.3 High Availability of the Compute Node(s)

If a Compute Node fails, all VMs running on that node will go down, too. While it cannot protect against failures of individual VMs, a High Availability setup for Compute Nodes helps you to minimize VM downtime caused by Compute Node failures. If the `nova-compute` service or `libvirtd` fail on a Compute Node, Pacemaker will try to automatically recover them. If recovery fails, or the node itself should become unreachable, the node will be fenced and the VMs will be moved to a different Compute Node.

If you decide to use High Availability for Compute Nodes, your Compute Node will be run as Pacemaker remote nodes. With the `pacemaker-remote` service, High Availability clusters can be extended to control remote nodes without any impact on scalability, and without having to install the full cluster stack (including `corosync`) on the remote nodes. Instead, each Compute Node only runs the `pacemaker-remote` service. The service acts as a proxy, allowing the cluster stack on the “normal” cluster nodes to connect to it and to control services remotely. Thus, the node is effectively integrated into the cluster as a remote node. In this way, the services running on the OpenStack compute nodes can be controlled from the core Pacemaker cluster in a lightweight, scalable fashion.

Find more information about the `remote_pacemaker` service in *Pacemaker Remote—Extending High Availability into Virtual Nodes*, available at <http://www.clusterlabs.org/doc/> .



To configure High Availability for Compute Nodes, you need to adjust the following barclamp proposals:

- Pacemaker—for details, see *Section 10.1, “Deploying Pacemaker (Optional, HA Setup Only)”*.
- Nova—for details, see *Section 10.10.1, “HA Setup for Nova”*.

## 2.6.4 High Availability of the Storage Node(s)

SUSE OpenStack Cloud offers two different types of storage that can be used for the Storage Nodes: object storage (provided by the OpenStack Swift component) and block storage (provided by Ceph).

Both already consider High Availability aspects by design, therefore it does not require much effort to make the storage highly available.

### 2.6.4.1 Swift—Avoiding Points of Failure

The OpenStack Object Storage replicates the data by design, provided the following requirements are met:

- The option *Replicas* in the Swift barclamp is set to 3, the tested and recommended value.
- The number of Storage Nodes needs to be greater than the value set in the *Replicas* option.

1. To avoid single points of failure, assign the swift-storage role to multiple nodes.
2. To make the API highly available, too, assign the swift-proxy role to a cluster instead of assigning it to a single Control Node. See *Section 2.6.2.1, “Control Node(s)—Avoiding Points of Failure”*. Other swift roles must not be deployed on a cluster.

### 2.6.4.2 Ceph—Avoiding Points of Failure

Ceph is a distributed storage solution that can provide High Availability. For High Availability redundant storage and monitors need to be configured in the Ceph cluster. For more information refer to the SUSE Enterprise Storage documentation at <http://www.suse.com/documentation/ses-2/>.



## 2.6.5 Cluster Requirements and Recommendations

When considering to set up one or more High Availability clusters, refer to the chapter *System Requirements* in the Administration Guide for SUSE Linux Enterprise High Availability Extension. The guide is available at <http://www.suse.com/documentation/sle-ha-12/>.

To make the Control Node functions highly available, the requirements listed there also apply to SUSE OpenStack Cloud. Note that by buying SUSE OpenStack Cloud, you automatically get an entitlement for SUSE Linux Enterprise High Availability Extension.

Especially note the following requirements:

### Number of Cluster Nodes

Each cluster needs to consist of at least two cluster nodes.



#### Important: Odd Number of Cluster Nodes

It is strongly recommended to use an *odd* number of cluster nodes with a *minimum* of three nodes.

A cluster needs *Quorum* to keep services running. Therefore a three-node cluster can tolerate only failure of one node at a time, whereas a five-node cluster can tolerate failures of two nodes etc.

### STONITH

The cluster software will shut down “misbehaving” nodes in a cluster to prevent them from causing trouble. This mechanism is called fencing or *STONITH*.



#### Important: No Support Without STONITH

A cluster without STONITH is not supported.



For a supported HA setup, ensure the following:

- Each node in the High Availability cluster needs to have at least one STONITH device (usually a piece of hardware). We strongly recommend multiple STONITH devices per node, unless SBD is used.
- The global cluster options `stonith-enabled` and `startup-fencing` needs to be set to `true`. These options are set automatically when deploying the `Pacemaker` barclamp. When you change them, you will lose support.
- When deploying the `Pacemaker` service, select a *STONITH: Configuration mode for STONITH* that matches your setup. If your STONITH devices support the IPMI protocol, choosing the IPMI option is the easiest way to configure STONITH. Another alternative is SBD (STONITH Block Device). It provides a way to enable STONITH and fencing in clusters without external power switches, but it requires shared storage. For SBD requirements, see [http://linux-ha.org/wiki/SBD\\_Fencing](http://linux-ha.org/wiki/SBD_Fencing), section *Requirements*.

For more information, refer to the Administration Guide, available at <http://www.suse.com/documentation/sle-ha-12/>. Especially read the following chapters: *Configuration and Administration Basics*, and *Fencing and STONITH, Storage Protection*.

## Network Configuration



### Important: Redundant Communication Paths

For a supported HA setup, it is required to set up cluster communication via two or more redundant paths. For this purpose, use network device bonding and teaming network mode in your Crowbar network setup. For details, see *Section 2.1.2.3, “Teaming Network Mode”*. At least two Ethernet cards per cluster node are required for network redundancy. It is advisable to use teaming network mode everywhere (not only between the cluster nodes) to ensure redundancy.

For more information, refer to the Administration Guide, available at <http://www.suse.com/documentation/sle-ha-12/>. Especially read the following chapter: *Network Device Bonding*. Using a second communication channel (ring) in Corosync (as an alternative to network device bonding) is not supported yet in SUSE OpenStack Cloud. By default, SUSE OpenStack Cloud uses the admin network (typically `eth0`) for the first Corosync ring.



## Storage Requirements

The following services require shared storage: `database-server` and `rabbitmq-server`. For this purpose, use either an external NFS share or DRBD.

If using an external NFS share, the following additional requirements are important:

- The share needs to be reliably accessible from all cluster nodes via redundant communication paths. See *Network Configuration*.
- The share needs to have certain settings in `/etc/exports` to be usable by the `database` barclamp. For details, see *Section 10.2.1, "HA Setup for the Database"* and *Section 10.3.1, "HA Setup for RabbitMQ"*.

If using DRBD, the following additional requirements are important:

- Because of a DRBD limitation, the cluster used for `database-server` and `rabbitmq-server` is restricted to two nodes.
- All nodes of the cluster that is used for `database-server` and `rabbitmq-server` needs to have an additional hard disk that will be used for DRBD. For more information on DRBD, see the *DRBD* chapter in the Administration Guide, which is available at <http://www.suse.com/documentation/sle-ha-12/>.

When using SBD as STONITH device, additional requirements apply for the shared storage. For details, see [http://linux-ha.org/wiki/SBD\\_Fencing](http://linux-ha.org/wiki/SBD_Fencing), section *Requirements*.

## 2.6.6 For More Information

For a basic understanding and detailed information on the SUSE Linux Enterprise High Availability Extension (including the Pacemaker cluster stack), read the Administration Guide. It is available at <http://www.suse.com/documentation/sle-ha-12/>.

In addition to the chapters mentioned in *Section 2.6.5, "Cluster Requirements and Recommendations"*, especially the following chapters are recommended:

- *Product Overview*
- *Configuration and Administration Basics*



The Administration Guide also provides comprehensive information about the cluster management tools with which you can view and check the cluster status in SUSE OpenStack Cloud. They can also be used to look up details like configuration of cluster resources or global cluster options. Read the following chapters for more information:

- HA Web Console: *Configuring and Managing Cluster Resources (Web Interface)*
- [crm.sh](#): *Configuring and Managing Cluster Resources (Command Line)*

## 2.7 Summary: Considerations and Requirements

As outlined above, there are some important considerations to be made before deploying SUSE OpenStack Cloud. The following briefly summarizes what was discussed in detail in this chapter. Keep in mind that as of SUSE OpenStack Cloud 7 it is not possible to change some aspects such as the network setup when SUSE OpenStack Cloud is deployed!

### NETWORK

- If you do not want to stick with the default networks and addresses, define custom networks and addresses. You need five different networks. If you need to separate the admin and the BMC network, a sixth network is required. See [Section 2.1, “Network”](#) for details. Networks that share interfaces need to be configured as VLANs.
- The SUSE OpenStack Cloud networks are completely isolated, therefore it is not required to use public IP addresses for them. A class C network as used in this documentation may not provide enough addresses for a cloud that is supposed to grow. You may alternatively choose addresses from a class B or A network.
- Determine how to allocate addresses from your network. Make sure not to allocate IP addresses twice. See [Section 2.1.1, “Network Address Allocation”](#) for the default allocation scheme.
- Define which network mode to use. Keep in mind that all machines within the cloud (including the Administration Server) will be set up with the chosen mode and therefore need to meet the hardware requirements. See [Section 2.1.2, “Network Modes”](#) for details.
- Define how to access the admin and BMC network(s): no access from the outside (no action is required), via an external gateway (gateway needs to be provided), or via bastion network. See [Section 2.1.3, “Accessing the Administration Server via a Bastion Network”](#) for details.



- Provide a gateway to access the public network (public, nova-floating).
- Make sure the Administration Server's host name is correctly configured (`hostname -f` needs to return a fully qualified host name). If this is not the case, run `YaST > Network Services > Hostnames` and add a fully qualified host name.
- Prepare a list of MAC addresses and the intended use of the corresponding host for all OpenStack nodes.

## UPDATE REPOSITORIES

- Depending on your network setup you have different options on how to provide up-to-date update repositories for SUSE Linux Enterprise Server and SUSE OpenStack Cloud for SUSE OpenStack Cloud deployment: using an existing SMT or SUSE Manager server, installing SMT on the Administration Server, synchronizing data with an existing repository, mounting remote repositories or using physical media. Choose the option that best matches your needs.

## STORAGE

- Decide whether you want to deploy the object storage service Swift. If so, you need to deploy at least two nodes with sufficient disk space exclusively dedicated to Swift.
- Decide which back-end to use with Cinder. If using the *raw* back-end (local disks) it is strongly recommended to use a separate node equipped with several hard disks for deploying `cinder-volume`. If using Ceph, you need to deploy at least four nodes with sufficient disk space exclusively dedicated to it.
- Make sure all Compute Nodes are equipped with sufficient hard disk space.

## SSL ENCRYPTION

- Decide whether to use different SSL certificates for the services and the API or whether to use a single certificate.
- Get one or more SSL certificates certified by a trusted third party source.

## HARDWARE AND SOFTWARE REQUIREMENTS

- Make sure the hardware requirements for the different node types are met.
- Make sure to have all required software at hand.



## 2.8 Overview of the SUSE OpenStack Cloud Installation

Deploying and installing SUSE OpenStack Cloud is a multi-step process, starting by deploying a basic SUSE Linux Enterprise Server installation and the SUSE OpenStack Cloud add-on product to the Administration Server. Now the product and update repositories need to be set up and the SUSE OpenStack Cloud network needs to be configured. Next the Administration Server setup will be finished. After the Administration Server is ready, you can start deploying and configuring the OpenStack nodes. The complete node deployment is done automatically via Crowbar and Chef from the Administration Server. All you need to do is to boot the nodes using PXE and to deploy the OpenStack components to them.

1. Install SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 12 SP2 on the Administration Server with the add-on product SUSE OpenStack Cloud. Optionally select the Subscription Management Tool pattern for installation. See *Chapter 3, Installing the Administration Server*.
2. Optionally set up and configure the SMT server on the Administration Server. See *Chapter 4, Installing and Setting Up an SMT Server on the Administration Server (Optional)*.
3. Make all required software repositories available on the Administration Server. See *Chapter 5, Software Repository Setup*.
4. Set up the network on the Administration Server. See *Chapter 6, Service Configuration: Administration Server Network Configuration*.
5. Perform the Crowbar setup to configure the SUSE OpenStack Cloud network and to make the repository locations known. When the configuration is done, start the SUSE OpenStack Cloud Crowbar installation. See *Chapter 7, Crowbar Setup*.
6. Boot all nodes onto which the OpenStack components should be deployed using PXE and allocate them in the Crowbar Web interface to start the automatic SUSE Linux Enterprise Server installation. See *Chapter 9, Installing the OpenStack Nodes*.
7. Configure and deploy the OpenStack components via the Crowbar Web interface or command line tools. See *Chapter 10, Deploying the OpenStack Services*.
8. When all OpenStack components are up and running, SUSE OpenStack Cloud is ready. The cloud administrator can now upload images to enable users to start deploying instances. See the *Administrator Guide* and the *Supplement to Administrator Guide and End User Guide*.



## II Setting Up the Administration Server




- 3 Installing the Administration Server **45**
- 4 Installing and Setting Up an SMT Server on the Administration Server (Optional) **48**
- 5 Software Repository Setup **53**
- 6 Service Configuration: Administration Server Network Configuration **60**
- 7 Crowbar Setup **62**



## 3 Installing the Administration Server


In this chapter you will learn how to install the Administration Server from scratch. It will run on SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 12 SP2 and include the SUSE OpenStack Cloud extension and, optionally, the Subscription Management Tool (SMT) server. Prior to starting the installation, refer to *Section 2.4, “Hardware Requirements”* and *Section 2.5, “Software Requirements”* for the requirements.

### 3.1 Starting the Operating System Installation

Start the installation by booting into the SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 12 SP2 installation system. For an overview of a default SUSE Linux Enterprise Server installation, refer to the *SUSE Linux Enterprise Server Installation Quick Start* ([http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles-12/book\\_quickstarts/data/art\\_sle\\_installquick.html](http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles-12/book_quickstarts/data/art_sle_installquick.html)) . Detailed installation instructions ([http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles-12/book\\_sle\\_deployment/data/cha\\_inst.html](http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles-12/book_sle_deployment/data/cha_inst.html))  are available in the SUSE Linux Enterprise Server *Deployment Guide*. Both documents are available at <http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles-12/> .

The following sections will only cover the differences from the default installation process.

### 3.2 Registration and Online Updates

Registering SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 12 SP2 during the installation process is required for getting product updates and for installing the SUSE OpenStack Cloud extension. Refer to the *SUSE Customer Center Registration* ([http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles-12/book\\_sle\\_deployment/data/sec\\_i\\_yast2\\_conf\\_manual\\_cc.html](http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles-12/book_sle_deployment/data/sec_i_yast2_conf_manual_cc.html))  section of the SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 12 SP2 *Deployment Guide* for further instructions.

After having successfully registered you will be asked whether to add the update repositories. If you agree, the latest updates will automatically be installed, ensuring that your system is on the latest patch level after the initial installation. It is strongly recommended to add the update repositories now. If you choose to skip, you need to perform an online update later, before starting the SUSE OpenStack Cloud Crowbar installation.





### Note: SUSE Login Required

To register a product, you need to have a SUSE login. If you do not have such a login, create it at <http://www.suse.com/login>.

## 3.3 Installing the SUSE OpenStack Cloud Extension

SUSE OpenStack Cloud is an extension to SUSE Linux Enterprise Server. Installing it during the SUSE Linux Enterprise Server installation is the easiest and recommended way to set up the Administration Server. To get access to the extension selection dialog, you need to register SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 12 SP2 during the installation. After a successful registration, the SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 12 SP2 installation continues with the *Extension & Module Selection*. Choose *SUSE OpenStack Cloud 7* and provide the registration key you have obtained by purchasing SUSE OpenStack Cloud. The registration and the extension installation require an Internet connection.

Alternatively, install the SUSE OpenStack Cloud after the SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 12 SP2 installation via *YaST > Software > Add-On Products*. For details, refer to the section *Installing Modules and Extensions from Online Channels* ([https://www.suse.com/documentation/sles-12/book\\_sle\\_deployment/data/sec\\_add-ons\\_extensions.html](https://www.suse.com/documentation/sles-12/book_sle_deployment/data/sec_add-ons_extensions.html)) of the SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 12 SP2 *Deployment Guide*.

## 3.4 Partitioning

Currently, Crowbar requires `/opt` to be writable. It is also recommended to create a separate partition or volume formatted with XFS for `/srv` with a size of at least 30 GB.

The default file system on SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 12 SP2 is Btrfs with snapshots enabled. SUSE OpenStack Cloud installs into `/opt`, a directory that is excluded from snapshots. Reverting to a snapshot may therefore break the SUSE OpenStack Cloud installation. It is recommended to disable Btrfs snapshots on the Administration Server.

Help on using the partitioning tool is available at the section *Using the YaST Partitioner* ([http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles11/book\\_sle\\_deployment/data/sec\\_yast2\\_i\\_y2\\_part\\_expert.html](http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles11/book_sle_deployment/data/sec_yast2_i_y2_part_expert.html)) of the SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 12 SP2 *Deployment Guide*.



## 3.5 Installation Settings

The final installation step, *Installation Settings*, lets you configure various settings. For the Administration Server setup, you need to adjust the software selection and the firewall settings. For more information refer to the [Installation Settings \(http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles-12/book\\_sle\\_deployment/data/sec\\_i\\_yast2\\_proposal.html\)](http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles-12/book_sle_deployment/data/sec_i_yast2_proposal.html) section of the SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 12 SP2 *Deployment Guide*.

### 3.5.1 Software Selection

Installing a minimal base system is sufficient to set up the Administration Server. The following patterns are the minimum requirement:

- *Base System*
- *Minimal System (Appliances)*
- *Meta Package for Pattern cloud\_admin* (in case you have chosen to install the SUSE OpenStack Cloud Extension)
- *Subscription Management Tool* (optional, also see [Tip: Installing a Local SMT Server \(Optional\)](#))



#### Tip: Installing a Local SMT Server (Optional)

In case you do not have a SUSE Manager or SMT server in your organization or are planning to manually update the repositories required for deployment of the SUSE OpenStack Cloud nodes, you need to set up an SMT server on the Administration Server. Choose the pattern *Subscription Management Tool* in addition to the patterns listed above to install the SMT server software.

### 3.5.2 Firewall Settings

SUSE OpenStack Cloud requires to disable the firewall on the Administration Server. You can disable the firewall now in the *Firewall and SSH* section. In case your environment requires a firewall to be active at this stage of the installation, you can postpone disabling the firewall until doing the final network configuration (see [Chapter 6, Service Configuration: Administration Server Network Configuration](#)). Optionally you can also enable SSH access to the admin server here.



## 4 Installing and Setting Up an SMT Server on the Administration Server (Optional)

One way of providing the repositories needed to set up the nodes in SUSE OpenStack Cloud is to install an SMT server on the Administration Server. Then mirror all repositories from SUSE Customer Center via this server. Installing an SMT server on the Administration Server is optional. If your organization already provides an SMT server or a SUSE Manager server that can be accessed from the Administration Server, skip this step.

### Important: Use of SMT Server and Ports

When installing an SMT server on the Administration Server, use it exclusively for SUSE OpenStack Cloud. To use the SMT server for other products, too, run it outside of SUSE OpenStack Cloud. Make sure it can be accessed from the Administration Server for mirroring the repositories needed for SUSE OpenStack Cloud.

When the SMT server is installed on the Administration Server, Crowbar provides the mirrored repositories on port 8091.

### 4.1 SMT Installation

If you have not installed the SMT server during the initial Administration Server installation as suggested in *Section 3.5.1, "Software Selection"*, run the following command to install it:

```
sudo zypper in -t pattern smt
```

### 4.2 SMT Configuration

No matter whether the SMT server was installed during the initial installation or in the running system, it needs to be configured with the following steps.





## Note: Prerequisites

To configure the SMT server, a SUSE account is required. If you do not have such an account, register at <http://www.suse.com/login>. Furthermore, all products and extensions for which you want to mirror updates with the SMT server, should be registered at the SUSE Customer Center (<http://scc.suse.com/>).

1. Configuring the SMT server requires you to have your mirroring credentials (user name and password) and your registration e-mail address at hand. To access them, proceed as follows:
  - a. Open a Web browser and log in to the SUSE Customer Center at <http://scc.suse.com/>.
  - b. Click your name to see the e-mail address which you have registered.
  - c. Click *Organization > Organization Credentials* to obtain your mirroring credentials (user name and password).
2. Start *YaST > Network Services > SMT Configuration Wizard*.
3. Activate *Enable Subscription Management Tool Service (SMT)*.
4. Enter the *Customer Center Configuration* data as follows:

*Use Custom Server:* Do not activate this option  
*User:* The user name you retrieved from the SUSE Customer Center  
*Password:* The password you retrieved from the SUSE Customer Center  
Check your input with *Test*. If the test does not return success, check the credentials you entered.
5. Enter the e-mail address you retrieved from the SUSE Customer Center at *SCC E-Mail Used for Registration*.
6. *Your SMT Server URL* shows the HTTP address of your server. Usually it should not be necessary to change it.
7. Proceed to step two of the *SMT Configuration Wizard* with *Next*.
8. Enter a *Database Password for SMT User* and confirm it by entering it once again.



9. Enter one or more e-mail addresses to which SMT status reports are sent by selecting *Add*.
10. Write the SMT configuration with *Next*. When setting up the database, you will be prompted for the MariaDB root password. If you have already configured it earlier on, provide the existing password. Otherwise enter a new password. Note, that this is the global MariaDB root password, not the database password for the SMT user you specified before.

The SMT server requires a server certificate at `/etc/pki/trust/anchors/YaST-CA.pem`. Choose *Run CA Management*, provide a password and choose *Next* to create such a certificate. If your organization already provides a CA certificate, *Skip* this step and import the certificate via *YaST > Security and Users > CA Management* after the SMT configuration is done. See [http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles-12/book\\_security/data/cha\\_security\\_yast\\_ca.html](http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles-12/book_security/data/cha_security_yast_ca.html) for more information.

The last step that is performed when writing the configuration, is a synchronization check with the SUSE Customer Center. It may take several minutes until it is finished.

## 4.3 Setting up Repository Mirroring on the SMT Server

The final step in setting up the SMT server is to configure it to mirror the repositories needed for SUSE OpenStack Cloud. The SMT server mirrors the repositories from the SUSE Customer Center. To access them, make sure to have appropriate subscriptions registered in SUSE Customer Center with the same e-mail address you have specified when configuring SMT. For details on the required subscriptions refer to *Section 2.5, "Software Requirements"*.

### 4.3.1 Adding Mandatory Repositories

Mirroring the SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 12 SP2 and SUSE OpenStack Cloud 7 repositories is mandatory. Run the following commands as user `root` to add them to the list of mirrored repositories:

```
for REPO in SLES12-SP2-{Pool,Updates} SUSE-OpenStack-Cloud-7-{Pool,Updates}; do
    smt-repos $REPO sle-12-x86_64 -e
done
```



## 4.3.2 Adding Optional Repositories

The following repositories are only required if wanting to install the respective optional functionality:

### High Availability

For the optional HA setup you need to mirror the SLE-HA12-SP2 repositories. Run the following commands as user root to add them to the list of mirrored repositories:

```
for REPO in SLE-HA12-SP2-{Pool,Updates}; do
    smt-repos $REPO sle-12-x86_64 -e
done
```

### SUSE Enterprise Storage

The SUSE Enterprise Storage repositories are needed if you plan to deploy Ceph with SUSE OpenStack Cloud. Run the following commands as user root to add them to the list of mirrored repositories:

```
for REPO in SUSE-Enterprise-Storage-4-{Pool,Updates}; do
    smt-repos $REPO sle-12-x86_64 -e
done
```

## 4.3.3 Mirroring the Repositories

Repositories added to SMT are updated automatically via cron job. However, to make repositories that have been added available, a manual mirroring run needs to be triggered initially. Do so by running the following command as user root:

```
smt-mirror -L /var/log/smt/smt-mirror.log
```

This command will download several GB of patches. This process may last up to several hours. A log file is written to /var/log/smt/smt-mirror.log. A list of all repositories and their location in the file system on the Administration Server can be found at [Table B.1, “SMT Repositories Hosted on the Administration Server”](#).



## 4.4 For More Information

For detailed information about SMT refer to the Subscription Management Tool manual at [http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles-12/book\\_smt/data/book\\_smt.html](http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles-12/book_smt/data/book_smt.html) .



## 5 Software Repository Setup

Nodes in SUSE OpenStack Cloud are automatically installed from the Administration Server. For this to happen, software repositories containing products, extensions, and the respective updates for all software need to be available on or accessible from the Administration Server. In this configuration step, these repositories are made available. Two types of repositories can be distinguished:

**Product Media Repositories:** Product media repositories are copies of the installation media. They need to be directly copied to the Administration Server, “loop-mounted” from an iso image or mounted from a remote server via NFS. Affected are SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 12 SP2 and SUSE OpenStack Cloud 7. The content of these repositories is static. See [Section 5.1, “Copying the Product Media Repositories”](#) for setup instructions.

**Update and Pool Repositories:** Update and Pool repositories are provided by the SUSE Customer Center. They contain all updates and patches for the products and extensions. To make them available for SUSE OpenStack Cloud they need to be mirrored from the SUSE Customer Center. Since their content is regularly updated, they need to be kept in synchronization with SUSE Customer Center. For these purposes, SUSE provides either the Subscription Management Tool (SMT) or the SUSE Manager.

### 5.1 Copying the Product Media Repositories

The files in the product repositories for SUSE Linux Enterprise Server and SUSE OpenStack Cloud do not change, therefore they do not need to be synchronized with a remote source. It is sufficient to either copy the data (from a remote host or the installation media), to mount the product repository from a remote server via NFS, or to loop mount a copy of the installation images.



#### Important: No Symbolic Links for the SUSE Linux Enterprise Server Repository

Note that the SUSE Linux Enterprise Server product repository *must* be directly available from the local directory listed below. It is not possible to use a symbolic link to a directory located elsewhere, since this will cause booting using PXE to fail.





## Tip: Providing the SUSE OpenStack Cloud Repository via HTTP

The SUSE Linux Enterprise Server product repositories need to be made available locally to enable booting using PXE for node deployment. The SUSE OpenStack Cloud repository may also be served via [http](#) from a remote host. In this case, enter the URL to the [Cloud](#) repository as described in [Section 7.4, "Repositories"](#).

However, copying the data to the Administration Server as described here, is recommended. It does not require much hard disk space (approximately 350 MB). Nor does it require the Administration Server to be able to access a remote host from a different network.

The following product media needs to be copied to the specified directories:

**TABLE 5.1: LOCAL PRODUCT REPOSITORIES FOR SUSE OPENSTACK CLOUD**

Repository	Directory
SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 12 SP2 DVD #1	<a href="#">/srv/tftpboot/suse-12.2/x86_64/install</a>
SUSE OpenStack Cloud 7 DVD #1	<a href="#">/srv/tftpboot/suse-12.2/x86_64/repos/Cloud</a>

The data can be copied by a variety of methods:

### Copying from the Installation Media

It is recommended to use [rsync](#) for copying. If the installation data is located on a removable device, make sure to mount it first (for example, after inserting the DVD1 in the Administration Server and waiting for the device to become ready):

### SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 12 SP2 DVD#1

```
mkdir -p /srv/tftpboot/suse-12.2/x86_64/install
mount /dev/dvd /mnt
rsync -avP /mnt/ /srv/tftpboot/suse-12.2/x86_64/install/
umount /mnt
```

### SUSE OpenStack Cloud 7 DVD#1

```
mkdir -p /srv/tftpboot/suse-12.2/x86_64/repos/Cloud
```



```
mount /dev/dvd /mnt
rsync -avP /mnt/ /srv/tftpboot/suse-12.2/x86_64/repos/Cloud/
umount /mnt
```

### Copying from a Remote Host

If the data is provided by a remote machine, log in to that machine and push the data to the Administration Server (which has the IP address 192.168.124.10 in the following example):

### SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 12 SP2 DVD#1

```
mkdir -p /srv/tftpboot/suse-12.2/x86_64/install
rsync -avPz /data/SLES-12-SP2/DVD1/ 192.168.124.10:/srv/tftpboot/suse-12.2/
x86_64/install/
```

### SUSE OpenStack Cloud 7 DVD#1

```
mkdir -p /srv/tftpboot/suse-12.2/x86_64/repos/Cloud
rsync -avPz /data/SUSE-OPENSTACK-CLOUD//DVD1/ 192.168.124.10:/srv/tftpboot/
suse-12.2/x86_64/repos/Cloud/
```

### Mounting from an NFS Server

If the installation data is provided via NFS by a remote machine, mount the respective shares as follows. To automatically mount these directories either create entries in /etc/fstab or set up the automounter.

### SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 12 SP2 DVD#1

```
mkdir -p /srv/tftpboot/suse-12.2/x86_64/install
mount -t nfs nfs.example.com:/exports/SLES-12-SP2/x86_64/DVD1/ /srv/tftpboot/
suse-12.2/x86_64/install
```

### SUSE OpenStack Cloud 7 DVD#1

```
mkdir -p /srv/tftpboot/suse-12.2/x86_64/repos/Cloud
mount -t nfs nfs.example.com:/exports/SUSE-OPENSTACK-CLOUD/DVD1/ /srv/tftpboot/
suse-12.2/x86_64/repos/Cloud
```



## Mounting the ISO Images

The product repositories can also be made available by copying the respective iso images to the Administration Server and mounting them. To automatically mount these directories either create entries in /etc/fstab or set up the automounter.

### SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 12 SP2 DVD#1

```
mkdir -p /srv/tftpboot/suse-12.2/x86_64/install/  
mount -o loop /local/SLES-12-SP2-x86_64-DVD1.iso /srv/tftpboot/suse-12.2/  
x86_64/install
```

### SUSE OpenStack Cloud 7 DVD#1

```
mkdir -p /srv/tftpboot/suse-12.2/x86_64/repos/Cloud/  
mount -o loop /local/SUSE-OPENSTACK-CLOUD-7-x86_64-DVD1.iso /srv/tftpboot/  
suse-12.2/x86_64/repos/Cloud
```

## 5.2 Update and Pool Repositories

Update and Pool Repositories are required on the Administration Server to set up and maintain the SUSE OpenStack Cloud nodes. They are provided by SUSE Customer Center and contain all software packages needed to install SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 12 SP2 and the extensions (pool repositories). In addition, they contain all updates and patches (update repositories). Update repositories are already used when deploying the nodes that will build SUSE OpenStack Cloud to ensure they are initially equipped with the latest software versions available.

The repositories can be made available on the Administration Server using one of the following methods (or a mix of them):

- *Section 5.2.1, "Repositories Hosted on an SMT Server Installed on the Administration Server"*
- *Section 5.2.2, "Repositories Hosted on a Remote SMT Server"*
- *Section 5.2.3, "Repositories Hosted on a SUSE Manager Server"*
- *Section 5.2.4, "Alternative Ways to Make the Repositories Available"*



## 5.2.1 Repositories Hosted on an SMT Server Installed on the Administration Server

When all update and pool repositories are managed by an SMT server installed on the Administration Server (see [Chapter 4, Installing and Setting Up an SMT Server on the Administration Server \(Optional\)](#)), make sure the repository location in YaST Crowbar is set to *Local SMT Server* (this is the default). For details, see [Section 7.4, “Repositories”](#). No further action is required. The SUSE OpenStack Cloud Crowbar installation automatically detects all available repositories.

## 5.2.2 Repositories Hosted on a Remote SMT Server

To use repositories from a remote SMT server, you first need to make sure all required repositories are mirrored on the server. Refer to [Section 4.3, “Setting up Repository Mirroring on the SMT Server”](#) for more information. When all update and pool repositories are managed by a remote SMT server, make sure the repository location in YaST Crowbar is set to *Remote SMT Server*. For details, see [Section 7.4, “Repositories”](#). No further action is required. The SUSE OpenStack Cloud Crowbar installation automatically detects all available repositories.



### Note: Accessing an External SMT Server

In SUSE OpenStack Cloud, only the Administration Server needs to be able to access the external SMT server. A network connection can either be established via a bastion network (see [Section 7.3.1, “Setting Up a Bastion Network”](#)) or an external gateway.

## 5.2.3 Repositories Hosted on a SUSE Manager Server

To use repositories from SUSE Manager you first need to make sure all required products and extensions are registered and the corresponding channels are mirrored in SUSE Manager (refer to [Table B.3, “SUSE Manager Repositories \(Channels\)”](#) for a list of channels).



## ! Important: Accessing a SUSE Manager Server

An external SUSE Manager server needs to be accessed from *all* nodes in SUSE OpenStack Cloud. To be able to access it, the network hosting the SUSE Manager server needs to be added to the network definitions as described in [Section 7.5.1, “Providing Access to External Networks”](#).

By default SUSE Manager does not expose repositories for direct access. To access them via [https](#), you need to create a *Distribution* for auto-installation for the SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 12 SP2 (x86\_64) product. Creating this distribution makes the update repositories for this product available, including the repositories for all registered add-on products (like SUSE OpenStack Cloud, SLES High Availability Extension and SUSE Enterprise Storage). Instructions on how to create a distribution can be found in the SUSE Manager documentation in [http://www.suse.com/documentation/suse\\_manager/](http://www.suse.com/documentation/suse_manager/) [↗](#).

During the distribution setups you need to provide a *Label* for each the distribution. This label will be part of the URL under which the repositories are available. It is recommended to choose a name consisting of characters that do not need to be URL-encoded. In [Table B.3, “SUSE Manager Repositories \(Channels\)”](#) we assume the following label has been provided: `sles12-sp2-x86_64`.

When all update and pool repositories are managed by a SUSE Manager server, make sure the repository location in YaST Crowbar is set to *SUSE Manager Server*. For details, see [Section 7.4, “Repositories”](#). No further action is required. The SUSE OpenStack Cloud Crowbar installation automatically detects all available repositories.

The autoinstallation tree provided by SUSE Manager does not provide the SLES Pool repository. Although this repositories is not used for node installation, it needs to be present. To work around this issue, it is sufficient to create an empty Pool repository for SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 12 SP2:

```
mkdir /srv/tftpboot/suse-12.2/x86_64/repos/SLES12-SP2-Pool/  
createrepo /srv/tftpboot/suse-12.2/x86_64/repos/SLES12-SP2-Pool/
```



## 5.2.4 Alternative Ways to Make the Repositories Available

If you want to keep your SUSE OpenStack Cloud network as isolated from the company network as possible, or your infrastructure does not allow accessing a SUSE Manager or an SMT server, you can alternatively provide access to the required repositories by one of the following ways:

- mounting the repositories from a remote server
- synchronizing the repositories from a remote server (for example via **rsync** and cron)
- manually synchronize the update repositories from removable media.

It is strongly recommended to make the repositories available at the default locations on the Administration Server as listed in *Table B.4, “Default Repository Locations on the Administration Server”*. When choosing these locations, it is sufficient to set the repository location in YaST Crowbar to *Custom*. You do not need to specify a detailed location for each repository. Refer to *Section 7.4, “Repositories”* for details. If you prefer to use different locations, you need to announce each location with YaST Crowbar.

## 5.3 Software Repository Sources for the Administration Server Operating System

During the installation of the Administration Server repository locations for SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 12 SP2 have been automatically added to the Administration Server. They point to the source used to install the Administration Server and to the SUSE Customer Center. These repository locations have no influence on the repositories used to set up nodes in the cloud. They are solely used to maintain and update the Administration Server itself.

However, as the Administration Server and all nodes in the cloud use the same operating system—SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 12 SP2—it makes sense to use the same repositories for the cloud and the Administration Server. To avoid downloading the same patches twice: Change this setup in a way that the repositories set up for SUSE OpenStack Cloud deployment are also used on the Administration Server.

To do so, you need to disable or delete all services. In a second step all SUSE Linux Enterprise Server and SUSE OpenStack Cloud repositories need to be edited to point to the alternative sources. Editing the repository setup can either be done with Zypper or YaST. Note that changing the repository setup on the Administration Server is optional.



## 6 Service Configuration: Administration Server Network Configuration

Prior to starting the SUSE OpenStack Cloud Crowbar installation, make sure the first network interface (`eth0`) gets a fixed IP address from the admin network. A host and domain name also needs to be provided. Other interfaces will automatically be configured during the SUSE OpenStack Cloud Crowbar installation.

To configure the network interface proceed as follows:

1. Start *YaST* > *System* > *Network Settings*.
2. Switch to the *Overview* tab and select the interface with the *Device* identifier `eth0` and choose *Edit*.
3. Switch to the *Address* tab and activate *Statically Assigned IP Address* and provide an IPv4 *IP Address*, a *Subnet Mask* and a fully qualified *Hostname*. Examples in this book assume the default IP address of `192.168.124.10` and a network mask of `255.255.255.0`. Using a different IP address requires to adjust the Crowbar configuration in a later step as described in *Chapter 7, Crowbar Setup*.
4. Check the settings on the *General* tab. The device needs to be activated *At Boot Time*. Confirm your settings with *Next*.
5. Back on the *Network Settings* dialog, switch to the *Routing* tab and enter a *Default IPv4 Gateway*. The address depends on whether you have provided an external gateway for the admin network. In that case, use the address of that gateway. If not, use `xxx.xxx.xxx.1`, for example, `192.168.124.1`. Confirm your settings with *OK*.
6. Choose *Hostname/DNS* from the *Network Settings* dialog and set the *Hostname* and *Domain Name*. Examples in this book assume and `admin.cloud.example.com` for the host/domain name.

If the Administration Server has access to the outside, you can add additional name servers here that will automatically be used to forward requests. The Administration Server's name server will automatically be configured during the SUSE OpenStack Cloud Crowbar installation to forward requests for non-local records to those server(s).



7. Last, check if the firewall is disabled. Return to YaST's main menu (*YaST Control Center*) and start *Security and Users > Firewall*. On *Start-Up > Service Start*, the firewall needs to be disabled. Confirm your settings with *Next*.



### Important: Administration Server Domain Name and Host name

Setting up the SUSE OpenStack Cloud will also install a DNS server for all nodes in the cloud. The domain name you specify for the Administration Server will be used for the DNS zone. It is required to use a sub-domain such as *cloud.example.com*. See [Section 2.1.4, "DNS and Host Names"](#) for more information.

The host name and the FQDN need to be resolvable with **hostname** -f. Double-check whether /etc/hosts contains an appropriate entry for the Administration Server. It should look like the following:

```
192.168.124.10 admin.cloud.example.com admin
```

It is *not* possible to change the Administration Server host name or the FQDN after the SUSE OpenStack Cloud Crowbar installation has been completed.



## 7 Crowbar Setup

The YaST Crowbar module enables you to configure all networks within the cloud, to set up additional repositories and to manage the Crowbar users. This module should be launched before starting the SUSE OpenStack Cloud Crowbar installation. To start this module, either run **yast crowbar** or *YaST > Miscellaneous > Crowbar*.

### 7.1 User Settings

On this tab you can manage users for the Crowbar Web interface. The user crowbar (password crowbar) is preconfigured. Use the *Add*, *Edit* and *Delete* buttons to manage user accounts. Users configured here have no relations to existing system users on the Administration Server.

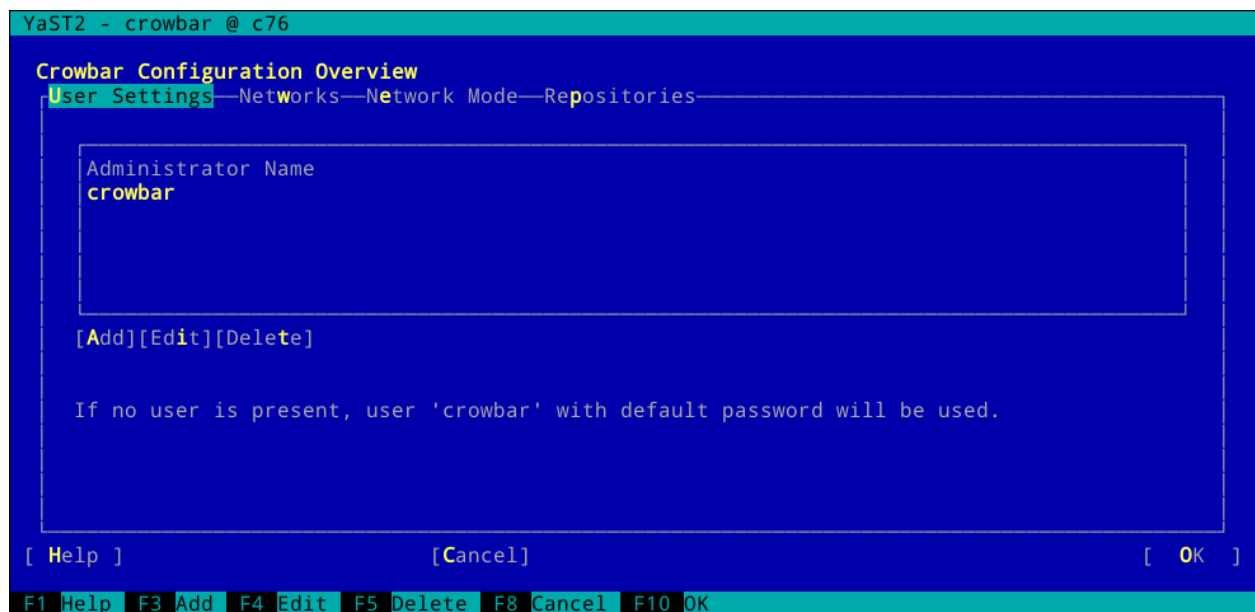


FIGURE 7.1: YAST CROWBAR SETUP: USER SETTINGS

### 7.2 Networks

Use the *Networks* tab to change the default network setup (described in [Section 2.1, “Network”](#)). Change the IP address assignment for each network under *Edit Ranges*. You may also add a bridge (*Add Bridge*) or a VLAN (*Use VLAN*, *VLAN ID*) to a network. Only change the latter two settings if you really know what you require; sticking with the defaults is recommended.



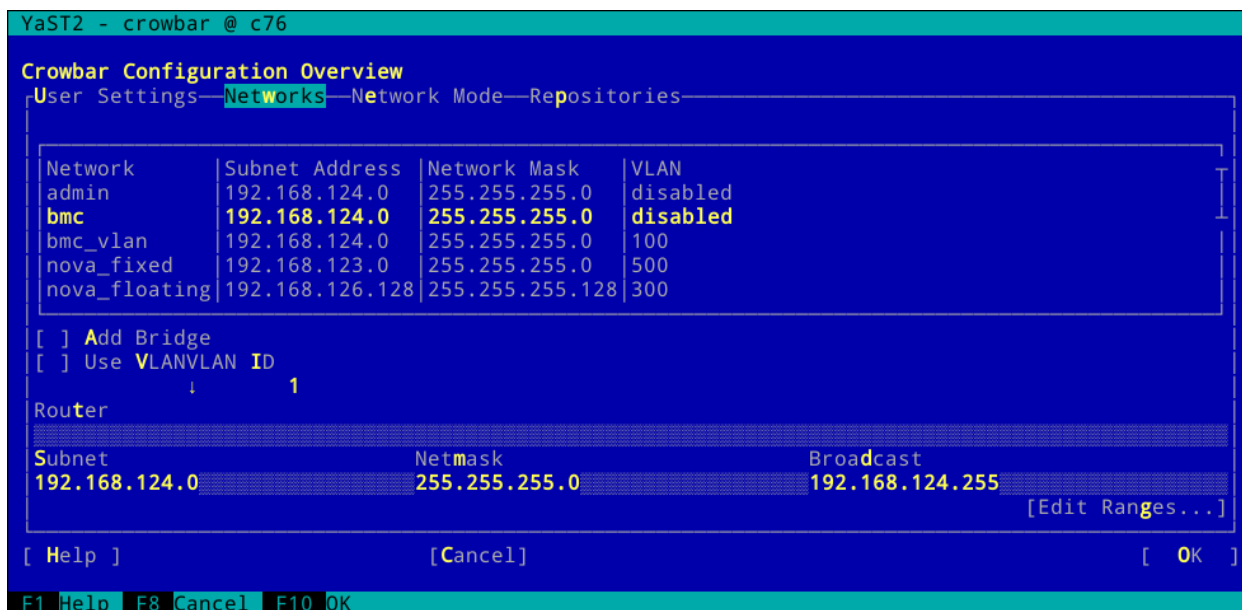


FIGURE 7.2: YAST CROWBAR SETUP: NETWORK SETTINGS



## Warning: No Network Changes After Having Completed the SUSE OpenStack Cloud Crowbar installation

After you have completed the SUSE OpenStack Cloud Crowbar installation, you cannot change the network setup anymore. If you did, you would need to completely set up the Administration Server again.



## Important: VLAN Settings

As of SUSE OpenStack Cloud 7, using a VLAN for the admin network is only supported on a native/untagged VLAN. If you need VLAN support for the admin network, it must be handled at switch level.


When deploying Compute Nodes with Microsoft Hyper-V or Windows Server, you must *not* use openvswitch with gre. Instead, use openvswitch with VLAN (recommended) or linuxbridge as a plugin for Neutron.



When changing the network configuration with YaST or by editing `/etc/crowbar/network.json` you can define VLAN settings for each network. For the networks `nova-fixed` and `nova-floating`, however, special rules apply:

**nova-fixed:** The `USE VLAN` setting will be ignored. However, VLANs will automatically be used if deploying Neutron with VLAN support (using the drivers `linuxbridge`, `openvswitch` plus VLAN or `cisco_nexus`). In this case, you need to specify a correct `VLAN ID` for this network.

**nova-floating:** When using a VLAN for `nova-floating` (which is the default), the `USE VLAN` and `VLAN ID` settings for `nova-floating` and `public` need to be the same. When not using a VLAN for `nova-floating`, it needs to use a different physical network interface than the `nova_fixed` network.

Other, more flexible network mode setups, can be configured by manually editing the Crowbar network configuration files. See [Appendix D, The Network Barclamp Template File](#) for more information. SUSE or a partner can assist you in creating a custom setup within the scope of a consulting services agreement. See <http://www.suse.com/consulting/>  for more information on SUSE consulting.

## 7.2.1 Separating the Admin and the BMC Network

If you want to separate the admin and the BMC network, you must change the settings for the networks `bmc` and `bmc_vlan`. The `bmc_vlan` is used to generate a VLAN tagged interface on the Administration Server that can access the `bmc` network. The `bmc_vlan` needs to be in the same ranges as `bmc`, and `bmc` needs to have VLAN enabled.

TABLE 7.1: SEPARATE BMC NETWORK EXAMPLE CONFIGURATION

	bmc	bmc_vlan
Subnet	<u>192.168.128.0</u>	
Netmask	<u>255.255.255.0</u>	
Router	<u>192.168.128.1</u>	
Broadcast	<u>192.168.128.255</u>	



	bmc	bmc_vlan
Host Range	<u>192.168.128.10</u> - <u>192.168.128.100</u>	<u>192.168.128.101</u> - <u>192.168.128.101</u>
VLAN	yes	
VLAN ID	100	
Bridge	no	

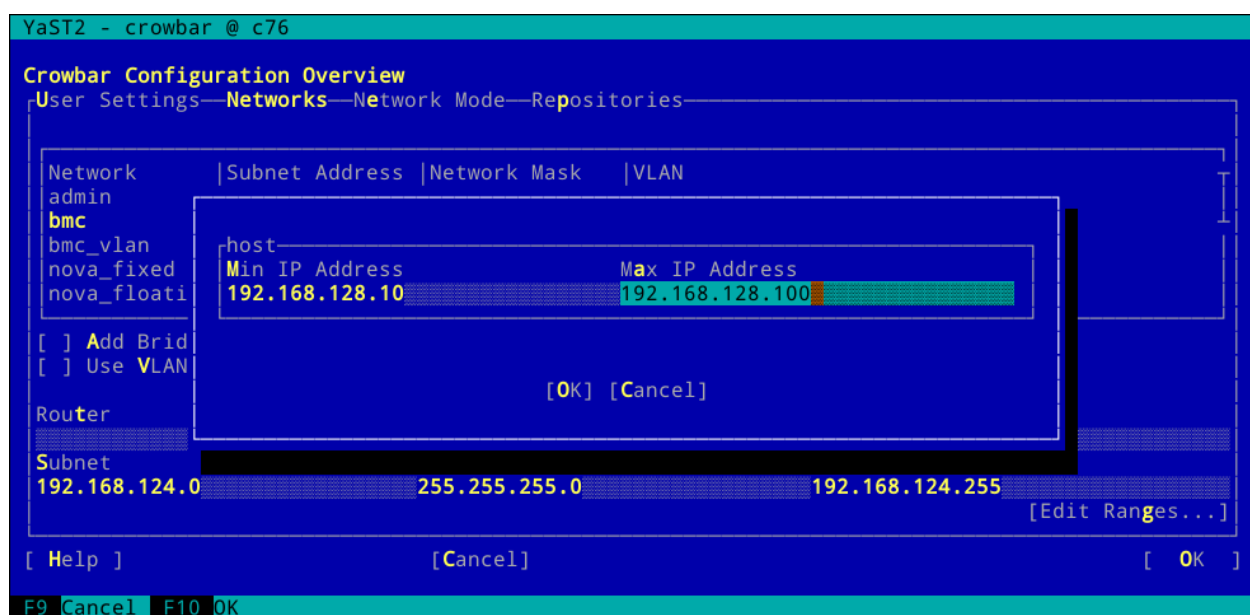


FIGURE 7.3: YAST CROWBAR SETUP: NETWORK SETTINGS FOR THE BMC NETWORK

## 7.3 Network Mode

On the *Network Mode* tab you can choose between *single*, *dual*, and *team*. In single mode, all traffic is handled by a single Ethernet card. Dual mode requires two Ethernet cards and separates traffic for private and public networks. See [Section 2.1.2, “Network Modes”](#) for details.



Teaming mode is almost identical to single mode, except that you combine several Ethernet cards to a “bond”. It is required for an HA setup of SUSE OpenStack Cloud. When choosing this mode, you also need to specify a *Bonding Policy*. This option lets you define whether to focus on reliability (fault tolerance), performance (load balancing), or a combination of both. You can choose between the following modes:

#### 0 (balance-rr)

Default mode in SUSE OpenStack Cloud. Packets are transmitted in round-robin fashion from the first to the last available interface. Provides fault tolerance and load balancing.

#### 1 (active-backup)

Only one network interface is active. If it fails, a different interface becomes active. This setting is the default for SUSE OpenStack Cloud. Provides fault tolerance.

#### 2 (balance-xor)

Traffic is split between all available interfaces based on the following policy:  $\lfloor (\text{source MAC address XOR'd with destination MAC address XOR packet type ID}) \bmod \text{slave count} \rfloor$ . Requires support from the switch. Provides fault tolerance and load balancing.

#### 3 (broadcast)

The complete traffic is broadcasted on all interfaces. Requires support from the switch. Provides fault tolerance.

#### 4 (802.3ad)

Aggregates interfaces into groups that share the same speed and duplex settings. Requires ethtool support in the interface drivers and a switch that supports and is configured for IEEE 802.3ad Dynamic link aggregation. Provides fault tolerance and load balancing.

#### 5 (balance-tlb)

Adaptive transmit load balancing. Requires ethtool support in the interface drivers but no switch support. Provides fault tolerance and load balancing.

#### 6 (balance-alb)

Adaptive load balancing. Requires ethtool support in the interface drivers but no switch support. Provides fault tolerance and load balancing.

For a more detailed description of the modes, see <https://www.kernel.org/doc/Documentation/networking/bonding.txt>.



### 7.3.1 Setting Up a Bastion Network

The *Network Mode* tab of the YaST Crowbar module also lets you set up a Bastion network. As outlined in [Section 2.1, “Network”](#), one way to access the Administration Server from a defined external network is via a Bastion network and a second network card (as opposed to providing an external gateway).

To set up the Bastion network, you need to have a static IP address for the Administration Server from the external network. The example configuration used below assumes that the external network from which to access the admin network has the following addresses. Adjust them according to your needs.

TABLE 7.2: EXAMPLE ADDRESSES FOR A BASTION NETWORK

Subnet	<u>10.10.1.0</u>
Netmask	<u>255.255.255.0</u>
Broadcast	<u>10.10.1.255</u>
Gateway	<u>10.10.1.1</u>
Static Administration Server address	<u>10.10.1.125</u>

In addition to the values above, you need to enter the *Physical Interface Mapping*. With this value you specify the Ethernet card that is used for the bastion network. See [Section D.4, “Network Conduits”](#) for details on the syntax. The default value ?1g2 matches the second interface (“eth1”) of the system.



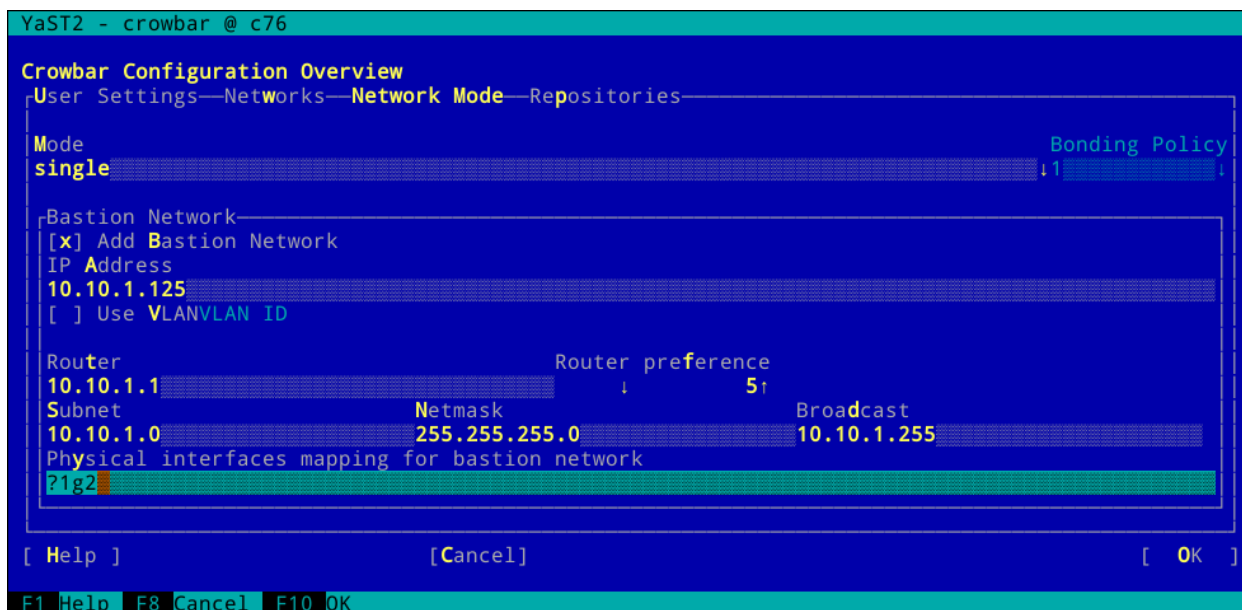


FIGURE 7.4: YAST CROWBAR SETUP: NETWORK SETTINGS FOR THE BASTION NETWORK



### Warning: No Network Changes After Having Completed the SUSE OpenStack Cloud Crowbar installation

After you have completed the SUSE OpenStack Cloud Crowbar installation, you cannot change the network setup anymore. If you did, you would need to completely set up the Administration Server again.



### Important: Accessing Nodes From Outside the Bastion Network

The example configuration from above allows to access SUSE OpenStack Cloud nodes from *within* the bastion network. If you want to access nodes from outside the bastion network, make the router for the bastion network the default router for the Administration Server. This is achieved by setting the value for the bastion network's *Router preference* entry to a lower value than the corresponding entry for the admin network. By default no router preference is set for the Administration Server—in this case, set the preference for the bastion network to 5.

If you use a Linux gateway between the outside and the bastion network, you also need to disable route verification (`rp_filter`) on the Administration Server. Do so by running the following command on the Administration Server:

```
echo 0 > /proc/sys/net/ipv4/conf/all/rp_filter
```



That command disables route verification for the current session, so the setting will not “survive” a reboot. Make it permanent by editing `/etc/sysctl.conf` and setting the value for `net.ipv4.conf.all.rp_filter` to `0`.

## 7.4 Repositories

This dialog lets you announce the locations of the product, pool, and update repositories (see [Chapter 5, Software Repository Setup](#) for details). You can choose between four alternatives:

### **Local SMT Server**

If you have an SMT server installed on the Administration Server as explained in [Chapter 4, Installing and Setting Up an SMT Server on the Administration Server \(Optional\)](#), choose this option. The repository details do not need to be provided, they will be configured automatically. This option will be applied by default in case the repository configuration has not been changed manually.

### **Remote SMT Server**

If you use a remote SMT for *all* repositories, choose this option and provide the *Server URL* (in the form of `http://smt.example.com`). The repository details do not need to be provided, they will be configured automatically.

### **SUSE Manager Server**

If you use a remote SUSE Manager server for *all* repositories, choose this option and provide the *Server URL* (in the form of `http://manager.example.com`).

### **Custom**

If you use different sources for your repositories or are using non-standard locations, choose this option and manually provide a location for each repository. This can either be a local directory (`/srv/tftpboot/suse-12.2/x86_64/repos/SLES12-SP2-Pool/`) or a remote location (`http://manager.example.com/ks/dist/child/sles12-sp2-updates-x86_64/sles12-sp2-x86_64/`). Activating *Ask On Error* ensures that you will be informed, if a repository is not available during node deployment (otherwise errors will be silently ignored).

The *Add Repository* dialog allows to add additional repositories. See [Q:](#) for instructions.





## Tip: Default Locations

In case you have made the repositories available in the default locations on the Administration Server (see [Table B.4, “Default Repository Locations on the Administration Server”](#) for a list), choose *Custom* and leave the *Repository URL* empty (default). The repositories will automatically be detected.

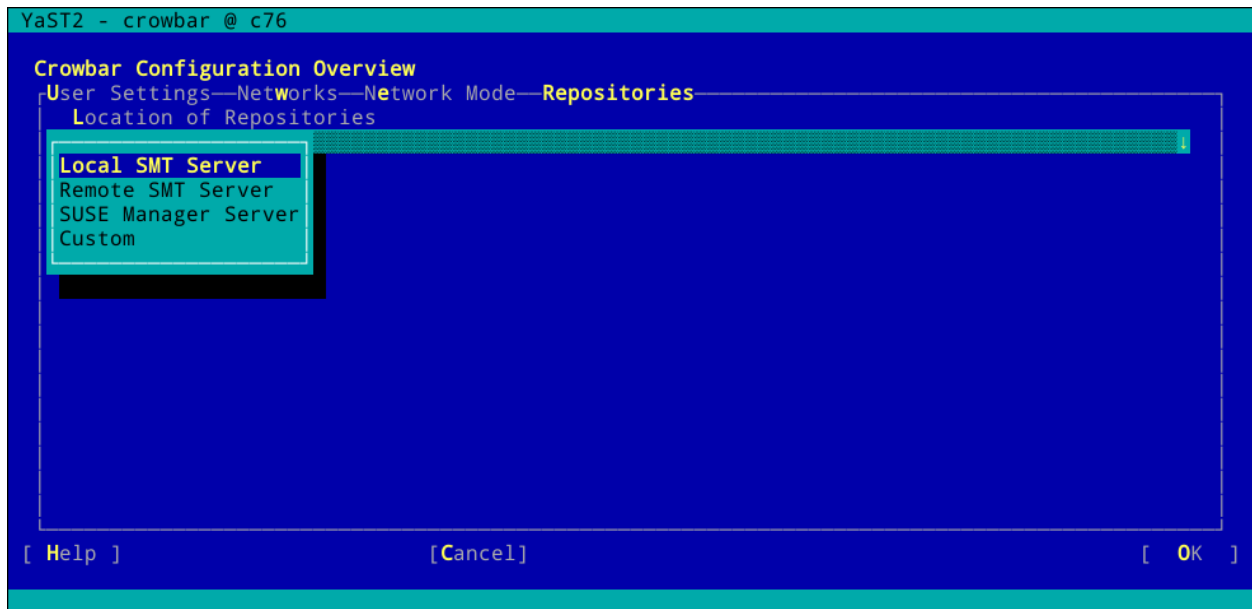


FIGURE 7.5: YAST CROWBAR SETUP: REPOSITORY SETTINGS

## 7.5 Custom Network Configuration

In case you need to adjust the pre-defined network setup of SUSE OpenStack Cloud beyond the scope of changing IP address assignments (as described in [Chapter 7, Crowbar Setup](#)), you need to manually modify the network barclamp template. Refer to [Appendix D, The Network Barclamp Template File](#) for details.



## 7.5.1 Providing Access to External Networks

By default, external networks cannot be reached from nodes in the SUSE OpenStack Cloud. To access external services such as a SUSE Manager server, an SMT server, or a SAN, you need to make the external network(s) known to SUSE OpenStack Cloud. Do so by adding a network definition for each external network to `/etc/crowbar/network.json`. Refer to [Appendix D, The Network Barclamp Template File](#) for setup instructions.

### EXAMPLE 7.1: EXAMPLE NETWORK DEFINITION FOR THE EXTERNAL NETWORK 192.168.150.0/16

```
"external" : {
  "add_bridge" : false,
  "vlan" : XXX,
  "ranges" : {
    "host" : {
      "start" : "192.168.150.1",
      "end" : "192.168.150.254"
    }
  },
  "broadcast" : "192.168.150.255",
  "netmask" : "255.255.255.0",
  "conduit" : "intf1",
  "subnet" : "192.168.150.0",
  "use_vlan" : true
}
```

Replace the value `XXX` for the VLAN by a value not used within the SUSE OpenStack Cloud network and not used by Neutron. By default, the following VLANs are already used:

TABLE 7.3: VLANS USED BY THE SUSE OPENSTACK CLOUD DEFAULT NETWORK SETUP

VLAN ID	Used by
100	BMC VLAN (bmc_vlan)
200	Storage Network
300	Public Network (nova-floating, public)
400	Software-defined network (os_sdn)
500	Private Network (nova-fixed)
501 - 2500	Neutron (value of nova-fixed plus 2000)



## 7.5.2 Split Public and Floating Networks on Different VLANs

For custom setups, the public and floating networks can be separated. For this, configure your own separate floating network which will not be a subnet of public network. The floating network also needs to have its own router defined.

## 7.5.3 Adjusting the Maximum Transmission Unit for the Admin and Storage Network

If you need to adjust the Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU) for the Admin and/or Storage Network, adjust `/etc/crowbar/network.json` as shown below. You can also enable jumbo frames this way by setting the MTU to 9000. The following example enables jumbo frames for both, the storage and the admin network by setting `"mtu": 9000`.

```
"admin": {
  "add_bridge": false,
  "broadcast": "192.168.124.255",
  "conduit": "intf0",
  "mtu": 9000,
  "netmask": "255.255.255.0",
  "ranges": {
    "admin": {
      "end": "192.168.124.11",
      "start": "192.168.124.10"
    },
    "dhcp": {
      "end": "192.168.124.80",
      "start": "192.168.124.21"
    },
    "host": {
      "end": "192.168.124.160",
      "start": "192.168.124.81"
    },
    "switch": {
      "end": "192.168.124.250",
      "start": "192.168.124.241"
    }
  },
  "router": "192.168.124.1",
  "router_pref": 10,
  "subnet": "192.168.124.0",
```



```

        "use_vlan": false,
        "vlan": 100
    },
    "storage": {
        "add_bridge": false,
        "broadcast": "192.168.125.255",
        "conduit": "intf1",
        "mtu": 9000,
        "netmask": "255.255.255.0",
        "ranges": {
            "host": {
                "end": "192.168.125.239",
                "start": "192.168.125.10"
            }
        }
    },
    "subnet": "192.168.125.0",
    "use_vlan": true,
    "vlan": 200
},

```



### Warning: No Network Changes After Having Completed the SUSE OpenStack Cloud Crowbar installation

After you have completed the SUSE OpenStack Cloud Crowbar installation, you cannot change the network setup anymore. This also includes changing the MTU size.

## 7.6 Starting the SUSE OpenStack Cloud Crowbar installation

Before starting the SUSE OpenStack Cloud Crowbar installation to finish the configuration of the Administration Server make sure to double-check the following items.

### FINAL CHECK POINTS

- Make sure the network configuration is correct. Run *YaST > Crowbar* to review/change the configuration. See *Chapter 7, Crowbar Setup* for further instructions.



## ! Important: An HA Setup Requires Teaming Network Mode

In case you are planning to make SUSE OpenStack Cloud highly available upon the initial setup from the start or later, set up the network in the teaming mode. Such a setup requires at least two network cards for each node.

- Make sure `hostname -f` returns a fully qualified host name. See *Chapter 6, Service Configuration: Administration Server Network Configuration* for further instructions.
- Make sure all update and product repositories are available. See *Chapter 5, Software Repository Setup* for further instructions.
- Make sure the operating system and SUSE OpenStack Cloud are up-to-date and have the latest patches installed. Run `zypper patch` to install them.
- To use the Web interface for the SUSE OpenStack Cloud Crowbar installation you need network access to the Administration Server via a second network interface. As the network will be reconfigured during the SUSE OpenStack Cloud Crowbar installation, make sure to either have a bastion network or an external gateway configured. (For details on bastion networks, see *Section 7.3.1, “Setting Up a Bastion Network”*.)

Now everything is in place to finally set up Crowbar and install the Administration Server. Crowbar requires a PostgreSQL database—you can either create one on the Administration Server or use an existing PostgreSQL database on a remote server.

### PROCEDURE 7.1: SETTING UP CROWBAR WITH A LOCAL DATABASE

#### 1. Start Crowbar:

```
sudo systemctl start crowbar-init
```

#### 2. Create a new database on the Administration Server. By default the credentials `crowbar/crowbar` are used:

```
crowbarctl database create
```

To use a different user name and password, run the following command instead:

```
crowbarctl database create \
```



```
--db_username=USERNAME --db_password=PASSWORD
```

Run **`crowbarctl database help create`** for help and more information.

#### PROCEDURE 7.2: SETTING UP CROWBAR WITH A REMOTE POSTGRESQL DATABASE

1. Start Crowbar:

```
sudo systemctl start crowbar-init
```

2. Make sure a user account that can be used for the Crowbar database exists on the remote PostgreSQL database. If not, create such an account.
3. Test the database connection using the credentials from the previous step:

```
crowbarctl database test --db-username=USERNAME \  
--db-password=PASSWORD --database=DBNAME \  
--host=IP_or_FQDN --port=PORT
```

You need to be able to successfully connect to the database before you can proceed. Run **`crowbarctl database help test`** for help and more information.

4. To connect to the database, use the following command:

```
crowbarctl database connect --db-username=USERNAME \  
--db-password=PASSWORD --database=DBNAME \  
--host=IP_or_FQDN --port=PORT
```

Run **`crowbarctl database help connect`** for help and more information.

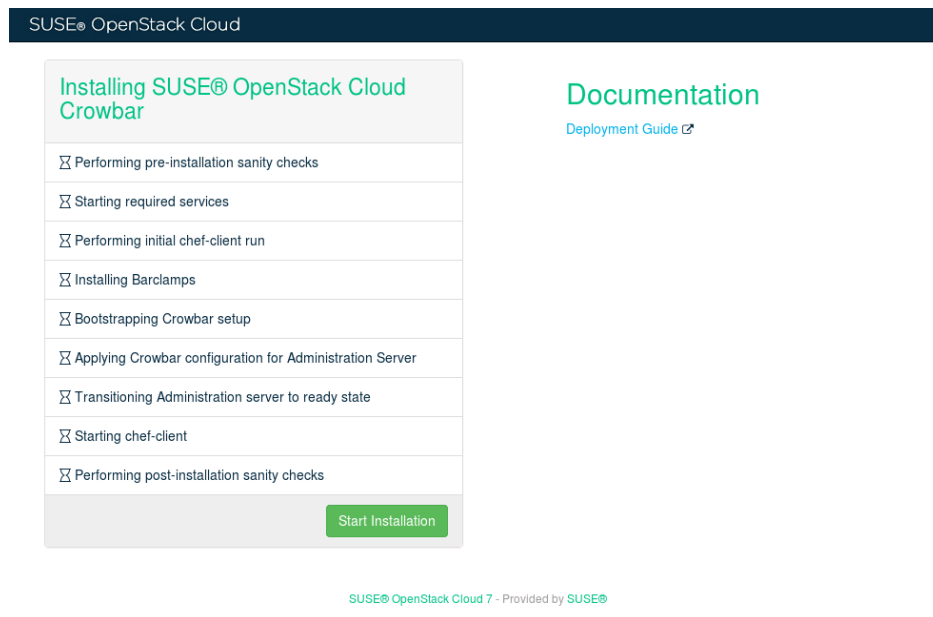
After the database is successfully created or connected to, you can access the Web interface from a Web browser, using the following address:

```
http://ADDRESS
```

Replace ADDRESS either with the IP address of the second network interface or its associated host name. Logging in to the Web interface requires the credentials you configured with YaST Crowbar (see [Section 7.1, “User Settings”](#)). If you have not changed the defaults, user name and password are both crowbar. Refer to [Chapter 8, The Crowbar Web Interface](#) for details.

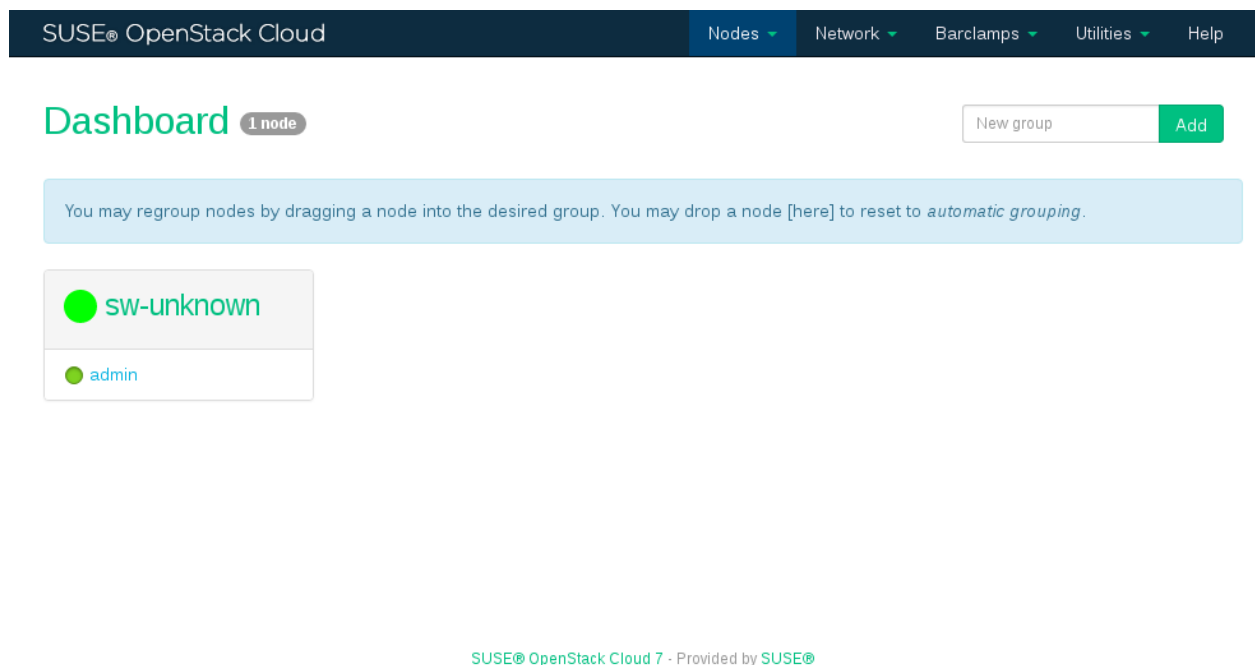


The Web interface shows the SUSE OpenStack Cloud installation wizard. Click *Start Installation* to begin. The installation progress is shown in the Web interface:



**FIGURE 7.6: THE SUSE OPENSTACK CLOUD CROWBAR INSTALLATION WEB INTERFACE**

If the installation has successfully finished, you will be redirected to the Crowbar Dashboard:



**FIGURE 7.7: CROWBAR WEB INTERFACE: THE DASHBOARD**



Form here you can start allocating nodes and then deploy the OpenStack services. Refer to *Part III, “Setting Up OpenStack Nodes and Services”* for more information.



# III Setting Up OpenStack Nodes and Services

- 8 The Crowbar Web Interface **79**
- 9 Installing the OpenStack Nodes **90**
- 10 Deploying the OpenStack Services **115**



## 8 The Crowbar Web Interface

The Crowbar Web interface runs on the Administration Server. It provides an overview of the most important deployment details in your cloud. This includes a view on the nodes and which roles are deployed on which nodes, and on the barclamp proposals that can be edited and deployed. In addition, the Crowbar Web interface shows details about the networks and switches in your cloud. It also provides graphical access to tools you can use to manage your repositories, back up or restore the Administration Server, export the Chef configuration, or generate a `supportconfig` TAR archive with the most important log files.



### Tip: Crowbar API Documentation

You can access the Crowbar API documentation from the following static page: [http://CROWBAR\\_SERVER/apidoc](http://CROWBAR_SERVER/apidoc).

The documentation contains information about the crowbar API endpoints and its parameters, including response examples, possible errors (and their HTTP response codes), parameter validations and required headers.

## 8.1 Logging In

The Crowbar Web interface uses the HTTP protocol and port `80`.

### PROCEDURE 8.1: LOGGING IN TO THE CROWBAR WEB INTERFACE

1. On any machine, start a Web browser and make sure that JavaScript and cookies are enabled.
2. As URL, enter the IP address of the Administration Server, for example:

```
http://192.168.124.10/
```

3. Log in as user `crowbar`. If you have not changed the password, it is `crowbar` by default.

### PROCEDURE 8.2: CHANGING THE PASSWORD FOR THE CROWBAR WEB INTERFACE

1. After being logged in to the Crowbar Web interface, select *Barclamp* > *Crowbar*.



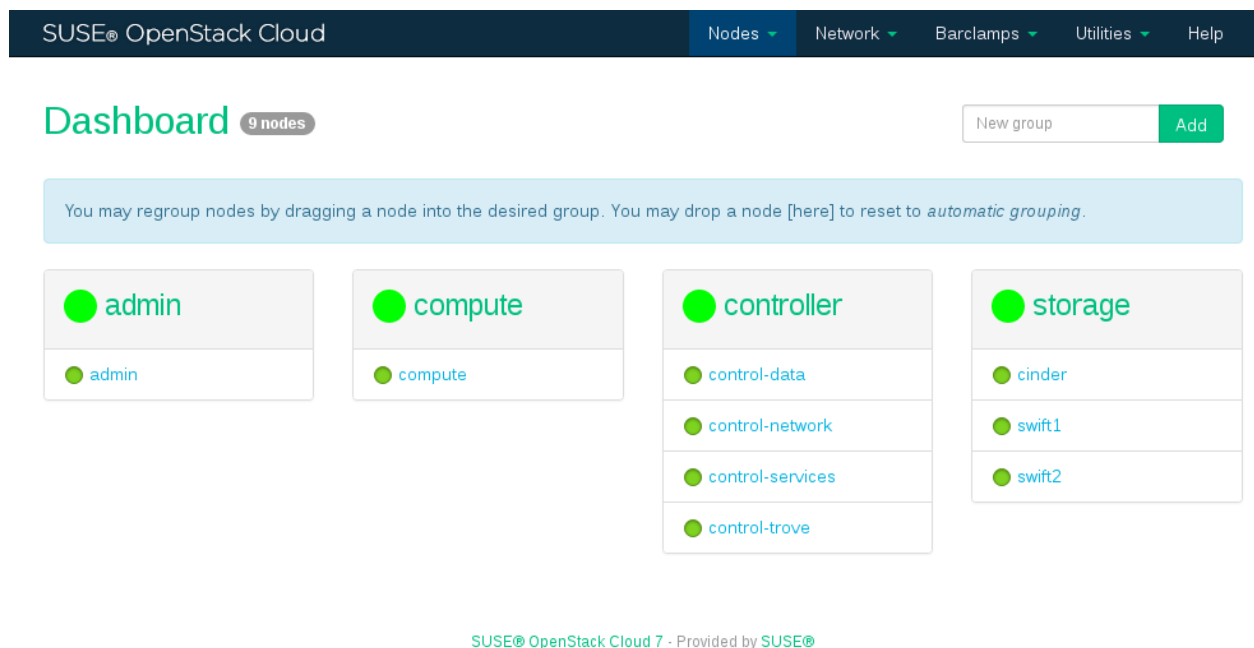
2. Select the Crowbar barclamp entry and *Edit* the proposal.
3. In the *Attributes* section, click *Raw* to edit the configuration file.
4. Search for the following entry:

```
"crowbar": {  
  "password": "crowbar"
```

5. Change the password.
6. Confirm your change by clicking *Save* and *Apply*.

## 8.2 Overview: Main Elements

After logging in to Crowbar, you will see a navigation bar at the top-level row. Its menus and the respective views are described in the following sections.



**FIGURE 8.1: CROWBAR UI—DASHBOARD (MAIN SCREEN)**



## 8.2.1 Nodes

### *Dashboard*

This is the default view after logging in to the Crowbar Web interface. The Dashboard shows the groups (which you can create to arrange nodes according to their purpose), which nodes belong to each group, and which state the nodes and groups are in. In addition, the total number of nodes is displayed in the top-level row.

The color of the dot in front of each node or group indicates the status. If the dot for a group shows more than one color, hover the mouse pointer over the dot to view the total number of nodes and the statuses they are in.

- Gray means the node is being discovered by the Administration Server or that there is no up-to-date information about a deployed node. If the status is shown for a node longer than expected, check if the chef-client is still running on the node.
- Yellow means the node has been successfully Discovered. As long as the node has not been allocated, yet, the dot will flash. A solid (non-flashing) yellow dot indicates that the node has been allocated, but installation has not yet started.
- Flashing from yellow to green means the node has been allocated and is currently being installed.
- Solid green means the node is in status Ready.
- Red means the node is in status Problem.

During the initial state of the setup, the Dashboard only shows one group called sw\_unknown into which the Administration Server is automatically sorted. Initially, all nodes (except the Administration Server) are listed with their MAC address as a name. However, it is recommended to create an alias for each node. This makes it easier to identify the node in the admin network and on the Dashboard. For details on how to create groups, how to assign nodes to a group and how to create node aliases, see [Section 9.2, “Node Installation”](#).

### *Bulk Edit*

This screen allows you to edit multiple nodes at once instead of editing them individually. It lists all nodes, including *Name* (in form of the MAC address), *Hardware* configuration, *Alias* (used within the admin network), *Public Name* (name used outside of the SUSE OpenStack



Cloud network), *Group*, *Intended Role*, *Platform* (the operating system that is going to be installed on the node), *License* (if available), and allocation status. You can toggle the list view between *Show unallocated* or *Show all* nodes.

For details on how to fill in the data for all nodes and how to start the installation process, see [Section 9.2, “Node Installation”](#).

#### **HA Clusters**

This menu entry only appears if your cloud contains a High Availability setup. The overview shows all clusters in your setup, including the *Nodes* that are members of the respective cluster and the *Roles* assigned to the cluster. It also shows if a cluster contains *Remote Nodes* and which roles are assigned to the remote nodes.

#### **Actives Roles**

This overview shows which roles have been deployed on which node(s). The roles are grouped according to the service to which they belong. You cannot edit anything here. To change role deployment, you need to edit and redeploy the respective barclamp as described in [Chapter 10, Deploying the OpenStack Services](#).

## 8.2.2 Barclamps

#### **All Barclamps**

This screen shows a list of all available barclamp proposals, including their *Status*, *Name* and a short *Description*. From here, you can *Edit* individual barclamp proposals as described in [Section 8.3, “Deploying Barclamp Proposals”](#).

#### **Crowbar**

This screen only shows the barclamps that are included with the core Crowbar framework. They contain general recipes for setting up and configuring all nodes. From here, you can *Edit* individual barclamp proposals.

#### **OpenStack**

This screen only shows the barclamps that are dedicated to OpenStack service deployment and configuration. From here, you can *Edit* individual barclamp proposals.



## Deployment Queue

If barclamps are applied to one or more nodes that are not yet available for deployment (for example, because they are rebooting or have not been fully installed yet), the proposals will be put in a queue. This screen shows the proposals that are *Currently deploying* or *Waiting in queue*.

## 8.2.3 Utilities

### Exported Items

The *Exported Files* screen allows you to export the Chef configuration and the supportconfig TAR archive. The supportconfig archive contains system information such as the current kernel version being used, the hardware, RPM database, partitions, and the most important log files for analysis of any problems. To access the export options, click *New Export*. After the export has been successfully finished, the *Exported Files* screen will show any files that are available for download.

### Repositories

This screen shows an overview of the mandatory, recommended and optional repositories for all architectures of SUSE OpenStack Cloud. On each reload of the screen the Crowbar Web interface checks the availability and status of the repositories. If a mandatory repository is not present, it is marked red in the screen. Any repositories marked green are usable and available to each node in the cloud. Usually, the available repositories are also shown as *Active* in the rightmost column. This means that the managed nodes will automatically be configured to use this repository. If you disable the *Active* check box for a repository, managed nodes will not use that repository.

You cannot edit any repositories in this screen. If you need additional, third-party repositories (or want to modify the repository metadata), edit /etc/crowbar/repos.yml. Find an example of a repository definition below:

```
suse-12.2:
  x86_64:
    Custom-Repo-12.2:
      url: 'http://example.com/12-SP2/x86_64/custom-repo/'
      ask_on_error: true # sets the ask_on_error flag in
                        # the autoyast profile for that repo
      priority: 99 # sets the repo priority for zypper
```



Alternatively, use YaST Crowbar module to add or edit repositories as described in [Section 7.4, “Repositories”](#).

### **Swift Dashboard**

This screen allows you to run **`swift-dispersion-report`** on the node or nodes to which it has been deployed. Use this tool to measure the overall health of the swift cluster. For details, see <http://docs.openstack.org/liberty/config-reference/content/object-storage-dispersion.html> .

### **Backup & Restore**

This screen lets you create a backup of the Administration Server and download it. You can also restore from a backup or upload a backup image from your local file system. For details, see [Section 11.5, “Backing Up and Restoring the Administration Server”](#).

### **Cisco UCS**

SUSE OpenStack Cloud can communicate with a Cisco UCS Manager instance via its XML-based API server to perform the following functions:

- Instantiate UCS service profiles for Compute Nodes and Storage Nodes from predefined UCS service profile templates
- Reboot, start, and stop nodes.

The following prerequisites need to be fulfilled on the Cisco UCS side:

- Templates for Compute Nodes and Storage Nodes need to be created. These service profile templates will be used for preparing systems as SUSE OpenStack Cloud nodes. Minimum requirements are a processor supporting AMD-V or Intel-VT, 8 GB RAM, one network interface and at least 20 GB of storage (more for Storage Nodes). The templates need to be named `suse-cloud-compute` and `suse-cloud-storage`.
- A user account with administrative permissions needs to be created for communicating with SUSE OpenStack Cloud. The account needs to have access to the service profile templates listed above. It also need permission to create service profiles and associate them with physical hardware.

To initially connect to the Cisco UCS Manager provide the login credentials of the user account mentioned above. The *API URL* has the form `http://UCSMANAGERHOST/nuova`. Click *Login* to connect. When connected, you will see a list of servers and associated actions. Applying an action with the *Update* button can take up to several minutes.



## 8.2.4 Help

From this screen, you can access HTML and PDF versions of the SUSE OpenStack Cloud manuals that are installed on the Administration Server.

## 8.3 Deploying Barclamp Proposals

Barclamps are a set of recipes, templates, and installation instructions. They are used to automatically install OpenStack components on the nodes. Each barclamp is configured via a so-called proposal. A proposal contains the configuration of the service(s) associated with the barclamp and a list of machines onto which to deploy the barclamp.

Most barclamps consist of two sections:

### *Attributes*

Lets you change the barclamp's configuration. You can do so either by editing the respective Web forms (*Custom* view) or by switching to the *Raw* view, which exposes all configuration options for the barclamp. In the *Raw* view, you directly edit the configuration file.



### Important: Saving Your Changes

Before you switch to *Raw* view or back again to *Custom* view, *Save* your changes. Otherwise they will be lost.

### *Deployment*

Lets you choose onto which nodes to deploy the barclamp. On the left-hand side, you see a list of *Available Nodes*. The right-hand side shows a list of roles that belong to the barclamp. Assign the nodes to the roles that should be deployed on that node. Some barclamps contain roles that can also be deployed to a cluster. If you have deployed the Pacemaker barclamp, the *Deployment* section additionally lists *Available Clusters* and *Available Clusters with Remote Nodes* in this case. The latter are clusters that contain both “normal” nodes and Pacemaker remote nodes. See [Section 2.6.3, “High Availability of the Compute Node\(s\)”](#) for the basic details.



## Important: Clusters with Remote Nodes

- Clusters (or clusters with remote nodes) cannot be assigned to roles that need to be deployed on individual nodes. If you try to do so, the Crowbar Web interface shows an error message.
- If you assign a cluster with remote nodes to a role that can only be applied to “normal” (Corosync) nodes, the role will only be applied to the Corosync nodes of that cluster. The role will not be applied to the remote nodes of the same cluster.

### 8.3.1 Creating, Editing and Deploying Barclamp Proposals

The following procedure shows how to generally edit, create and deploy barclamp proposals. For the description and deployment of the individual barclamps, see [Chapter 10, Deploying the OpenStack Services](#).

1. Log in to the Crowbar Web interface.
2. Click *Barclamp* and select *All Barclamp*. Alternatively, filter for categories by selecting either *Crowbar* or *OpenStack*.
3. To create a new proposal or edit an existing one, click *Create* or *Edit* next to the respective barclamp.
4. Change the configuration in the *Attributes* section:
  - a. Change the available options via the Web form.
  - b. To edit the configuration file directly, first save changes made in the Web form. Click then *Raw* to edit the configuration in the editor view.
  - c. After you have finished, *Save* your changes. (They are not applied yet).
5. Assign nodes to a role in the *Deployment* section of the barclamp. By default, one or more nodes are automatically pre-selected for available roles.
  - a. If this pre-selection does not meet your requirements, click the *Remove* icon next to the role to remove the assignment.



- b. To assign a node or cluster of your choice, select the item you want from the list of nodes or clusters on the left-hand side, then drag and drop the item onto the desired role name on the right.



#### Note

Do *not* drop a node or cluster onto the text box—this is used to filter the list of available nodes or clusters!

- c. To save your changes without deploying them yet, click *Save*.

- 6. Deploy the proposal by clicking *Apply*.



#### Warning: Wait Until a Proposal Has Been Deployed

If you deploy a proposal onto a node where a previous one is still active, the new proposal will overwrite the old one.

Deploying a proposal might take some time (up to several minutes). Always wait until you see the message “Successfully applied the proposal” before proceeding to the next proposal.

A proposal (that has not been deployed yet), can be deleted in the *Edit Proposal* view by clicking *Delete*. To delete a proposal that has already been deployed, see [Section 8.3.3, “Deleting a Proposal That Already Has Been Deployed”](#).

## 8.3.2 Barclamp Deployment Failure



#### Warning: Deployment Failure

A deployment failure of a barclamp may leave your node in an inconsistent state. If deployment of a barclamp fails:

1. Fix the reason that has caused the failure.
2. Re-deploy the barclamp.



For help, see the respective troubleshooting section at [Q & A 12.1.2, "OpenStack Node Deployment"](#).

### 8.3.3 Deleting a Proposal That Already Has Been Deployed

To delete a proposal that has already been deployed, you first need to *Deactivate* it.

#### PROCEDURE 8.3: DEACTIVATING AND DELETING A PROPOSAL

1. Log in to the Crowbar Web interface.
2. Click *Barclamp* > *All Barclamp*.
3. Click *Edit* to open the editing view.
4. Click *Deactivate* and confirm your choice in the following pop-up.  
Deactivating a proposal removes the chef role from the nodes, so the routine that installed and set up the services is not executed anymore.
5. Click *Delete* confirm your choice in the following pop-up.  
This removes the barclamp configuration data from the server.

However, deactivating and deleting a barclamp that already had been deployed does *not* remove packages installed when the barclamp was deployed. Nor does it stop any services that were started during the barclamp deployment. On the affected node, proceed as follows to undo the deployment:

1. Stop the respective services:

```
root # systemctl stop service
```

2. Disable the respective services:

```
root # systemctl disable service
```

Uninstalling the packages should not be necessary.



### 8.3.4 Queuing/Dequeuing Proposals

When a proposal is applied to one or more nodes that are not yet available for deployment (for example, because they are rebooting or have not been yet fully installed), the proposal will be put in a queue. A message like

```
Successfully queued the proposal until the following become ready:  
d52-54-00-6c-25-44
```

will be shown when having applied the proposal. A new button *Dequeue* will also become available. Use it to cancel the deployment of the proposal by removing it from the queue.



## 9 Installing the OpenStack Nodes

The OpenStack nodes represent the actual cloud infrastructure. Node installation and service deployment is done automatically from the Administration Server. Before deploying the OpenStack services, SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 12 SP2 will be installed on all Control Nodes and Storage Nodes.

To prepare the installation, each node needs to be booted using PXE, which is provided by the `tftp` server from the Administration Server. Afterward you can allocate the nodes and trigger the operating system installation.

### 9.1 Preparations

#### Meaningful Node Names

Make a note of the MAC address and the purpose of each node (for example, controller, block storage, object storage, compute). This will make deploying the OpenStack components a lot easier and less error-prone—. It also enables you to assign meaningful names (aliases) to the nodes, which are otherwise listed with the MAC address by default.

#### BIOS Boot Settings

Make sure booting using PXE (booting from the network) is enabled and configured as the *primary* boot-option for each node. The nodes will boot twice from the network during the allocation and installation phase. Booting from the first hard disk needs to be configured as the second boot option.

#### Custom Node Configuration

All nodes are installed using AutoYaST with the same configuration located at `/opt/dell/chef/cookbooks/provisioner/templates/default/autoyast.xml.erb`. If this configuration does not match your needs (for example if you need special third party drivers) you need to make adjustments to this file. See the [AutoYaST manual \(http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles-12/book\\_autoyast/data/book\\_autoyast.html\)](http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles-12/book_autoyast/data/book_autoyast.html) for details. Having changed the AutoYaST configuration file, you need to re-upload it to Chef, using the following command:

```
knife cookbook upload -o /opt/dell/chef/cookbooks/ provisioner
```



## Direct root Login

By default, the root account on the nodes has no password assigned, so a direct root login is not possible. Logging in on the nodes as root is only possible via SSH public keys (for example, from the Administration Server).

If you want to allow direct root login, you can set a password via the Crowbar Provisioner barclamp before deploying the nodes. That password will be used for the root account on all OpenStack nodes. Using this method after the nodes are deployed is not possible. In that case you would need to log in to each node via SSH from the Administration Server and change the password manually with passwd.

### SETTING A root PASSWORD FOR THE OPENSTACK NODES

1. Create an md5-hashed root -password, for example by using openssl passwd -1.
2. Open a browser and point it to the Crowbar Web interface on the Administration Server, for example http://192.168.124.10. Log in as user crowbar. The password is crowbar by default, if you have not changed it during the installation.
3. Open the barclamp menu by clicking *Barclamps > Crowbar*. Click the *Provisioner* barclamp entry and *Edit* the *Default* proposal.
4. Click *Raw* in the *Attributes* section to edit the configuration file.
5. Add the following line to the end of the file before the last closing curly bracket:

```
, "root_password_hash": "HASHED_PASSWORD"
```

replacing "HASHED\_PASSWORD" with the password you generated in the first step.

6. Click *Apply*.

## 9.2 Node Installation

To install a node, you need to boot it first using PXE. It will be booted with an image that enables the Administration Server to discover the node and make it available for installation. When you have allocated the node, it will boot using PXE again and the automatic installation will start.

1. Boot all nodes that you want to deploy using PXE. The nodes will boot into the “SLEShammer” image, which performs the initial hardware discovery.



## ! Important: Limit the Number of Concurrent Boots using PXE

Booting many nodes using PXE at the same time will cause heavy load on the TFTP server, because all nodes will request the boot image at the same time. It is recommended to boot the nodes time-delayed.

2. Open a browser and point it to the Crowbar Web interface on the Administration Server, for example <http://192.168.124.10/>. Log in as user crowbar. The password is crowbar by default, if you have not changed it.

Click *Nodes* > *Dashboard* to open the *Node Dashboard*.

3. Each node that has successfully booted will be listed as being in state Discovered, indicated by a yellow bullet. The nodes will be listed with their MAC address as a name. Wait until all nodes are listed as being Discovered before proceeding. In case a node does not report as being Discovered, it may need to be rebooted manually.

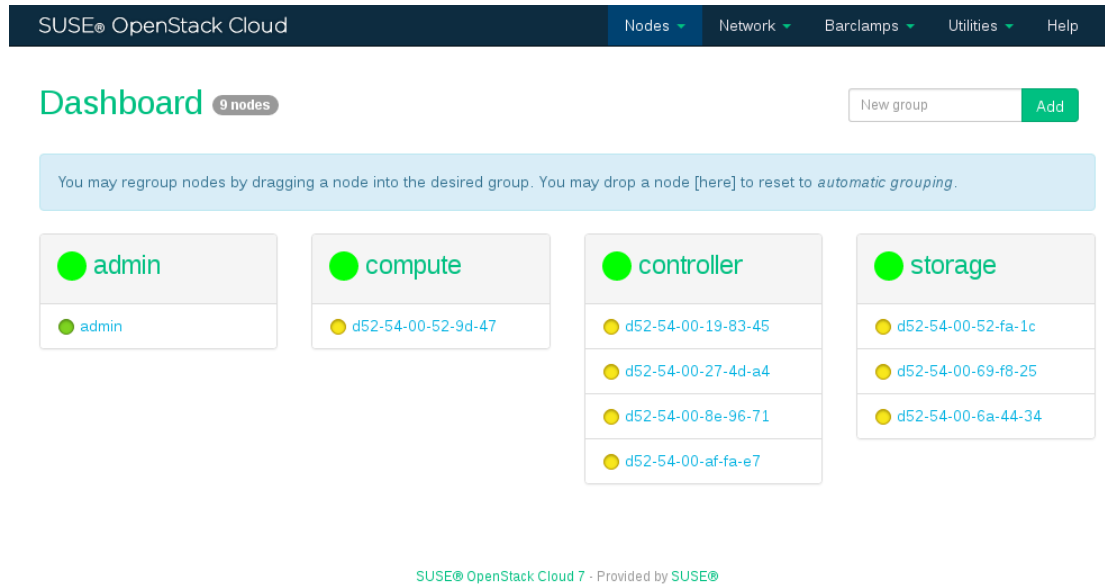
The screenshot shows the SUSE OpenStack Cloud 7 web interface. At the top is a navigation bar with 'Nodes' selected. Below it is the 'Dashboard' for '9 nodes'. A light blue instruction box states: 'You may regroup nodes by dragging a node into the desired group. You may drop a node [here] to reset to automatic grouping.' The main area displays a list of nodes, each with a colored circle icon and a name. The first node, 'sw-unknown', has a green circle. The remaining eight nodes, all starting with 'd52-54-00', have yellow circles, indicating they are in the 'Discovered' state. The footer of the interface reads 'SUSE OpenStack Cloud 7 - Provided by SUSE'.

Node Name	State
sw-unknown	Discovered
admin	Discovered
d52-54-00-19-83-45	Discovered
d52-54-00-27-4d-a4	Discovered
d52-54-00-52-9d-47	Discovered
d52-54-00-52-fa-1c	Discovered
d52-54-00-69-f8-25	Discovered
d52-54-00-6a-44-34	Discovered
d52-54-00-8e-96-71	Discovered
d52-54-00-af-fa-e7	Discovered

FIGURE 9.1: DISCOVERED NODES



4. Although this step is optional, it is recommended to properly group your nodes at this stage, since it lets you clearly arrange all nodes. Grouping the nodes by role would be one option, for example control, compute, object storage (Swift), and block storage (Ceph).
  - a. Enter the name of a new group into the *New Group* text box and click *Add Group*.
  - b. Drag and drop a node onto the title of the newly created group. Repeat this step for each node you want to put into the group.



**FIGURE 9.2: GROUPING NODES**

5. To allocate all nodes, click *Nodes > Bulk Edit*. To allocate a single node, click the name of a node, then click *Edit*.



SUSE® OpenStack Cloud

Nodes

Network

Barclamps

Utilities

Help

Edit node

d52-54-00-19-83-45.cloud.fs

CancelSaveAllocate

Target Platform

SLES 12 SP2

To find out why a platform is disabled, check the status of repositories.

Alias

d52-54-00-19-83-45

Public Name

The public name is the hostname that users will use to access services on this node. Re-apply proposals on the node to have this setting taken into account immediately, or wait for an automatic update on the node. Any name specified here should already exist in the upstream DNS zones.

Description

Group

controller

Intended Role

Undecided

Intended Role is the way you intend to use the node in your cloud infrastructure. The value is used to propose the initial node deployment for barclamps.

Availability Zone

Availability zones allow to arrange sets of either OpenStack Compute or OpenStack Block Storage hosts into logical groups. If empty, the default availability zone will be used.

CancelSaveAllocate

SUSE® OpenStack Cloud 7 · Provided by SUSE®

FIGURE 9.3: EDITING A SINGLE NODE

### ! Important: Limit the Number of Concurrent Node Deployments

Deploying many nodes in bulk mode will cause heavy load on the Administration Server. The subsequent concurrent Chef client runs triggered by the nodes will require a lot of RAM on the Administration Server.

Therefore it is recommended to limit the number of concurrent “Allocations” in bulk mode. The maximum number depends on the amount of RAM on the Administration Server—limiting concurrent deployments to five up to ten is recommended.



6. In single node editing mode, you can also specify the *Filesystem Type* for the node. By default, it is set to ext4 for all nodes. It is recommended to keep this default.
7. Provide a meaningful *Alias*, *Public Name* and a *Description* for each node and check the *Allocate* box. You can also specify the *Intended Role* for the node. This optional setting is used to make reasonable proposals for the barclamps.  
By default *Target Platform* is set to *SLES 12 SP2*.



### Tip: Alias Names

Providing an alias name will change the default node names (MAC address) to the name you provided, making it easier to identify the node. Furthermore, this alias will also be used as a DNS CNAME for the node in the admin network. As a result, you can access the node via this alias when, for example, logging in via SSH.



### Tip: Public Names

A node's *Alias Name* is resolved by the DNS server installed on the Administration Server and therefore only available within the cloud network. The OpenStack Dashboard or some APIs (keystone-server, glance-server, cinder-controller, neutron-server, nova-controller, and swift-proxy) can be accessed from outside the SUSE OpenStack Cloud network. To be able to access them by name, these names need to be resolved by a name server placed outside of the SUSE OpenStack Cloud network. If you have created DNS entries for nodes, specify the name in the *Public Name* field.

The *Public Name* is never used within the SUSE OpenStack Cloud network. However, if you create an SSL certificate for a node that has a public name, this name must be added as an AlternativeName to the certificate. See [Section 2.3, "SSL Encryption"](#) for more information.



SUSE® OpenStack Cloud
Nodes
Network
Barclamps
Utilities
Help

Bulk edit
Show unallocated

All available nodesSave

Name	Alias	Public Name	Intended Role	Target OS	License	Allocate
admin	<input type="text" value="admin"/>	<input type="text"/>	-	SLES 12 SP2	-	-
d52-54-00-19-83-45	<input type="text" value="d52-54-00-19-83"/>	<input type="text"/>	Underl ▾	SLES 12 SP2 ▾		<input type="checkbox"/>
d52-54-00-27-4d-a4	<input type="text" value="d52-54-00-27-4d"/>	<input type="text"/>	Underl ▾	SLES 12 SP2 ▾		<input type="checkbox"/>
d52-54-00-52-9d-47	<input type="text" value="d52-54-00-52-9d"/>	<input type="text"/>	Underl ▾	SLES 12 SP2 ▾		<input type="checkbox"/>
d52-54-00-52-fa-1c	<input type="text" value="d52-54-00-52-fa-"/>	<input type="text"/>	Underl ▾	SLES 12 SP2 ▾		<input type="checkbox"/>
d52-54-00-69-f8-25	<input type="text" value="d52-54-00-69-f8-"/>	<input type="text"/>	Underl ▾	SLES 12 SP2 ▾		<input type="checkbox"/>
d52-54-00-6a-44-34	<input type="text" value="d52-54-00-6a-44"/>	<input type="text"/>	Underl ▾	SLES 12 SP2 ▾		<input type="checkbox"/>
d52-54-00-8e-96-71	<input type="text" value="d52-54-00-8e-96"/>	<input type="text"/>	Underl ▾	SLES 12 SP2 ▾		<input type="checkbox"/>
d52-54-00-af-fa-e7	<input type="text" value="d52-54-00-af-fa-ε"/>	<input type="text"/>	Underl ▾	SLES 12 SP2 ▾		<input type="checkbox"/>
						<input type="checkbox"/>

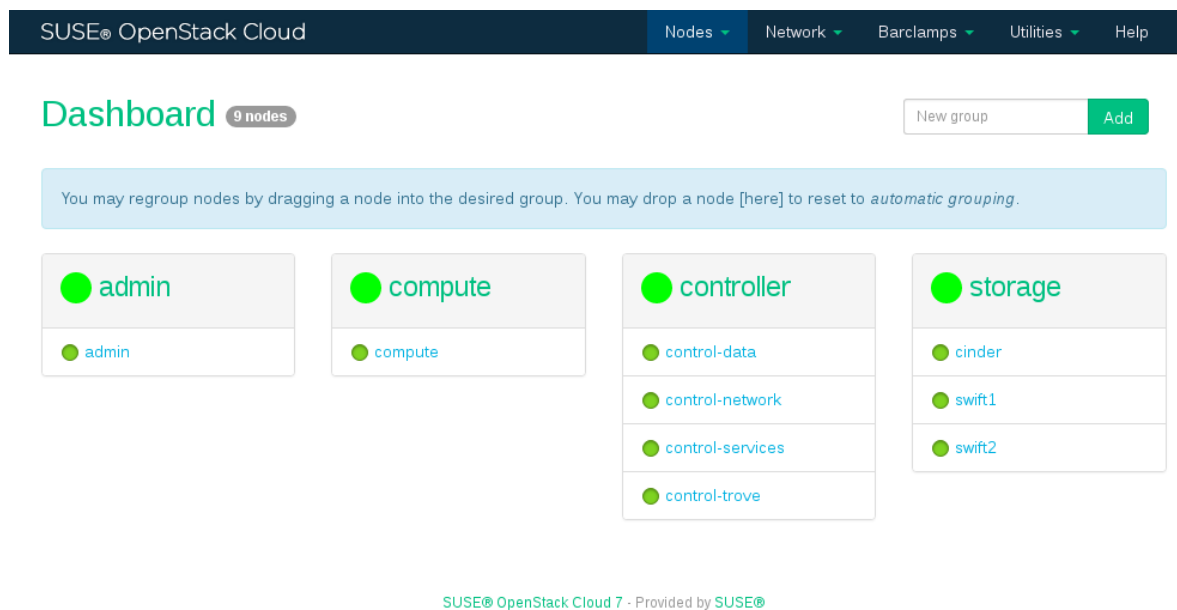
Save

SUSE® OpenStack Cloud 7 - Provided by SUSE®

**FIGURE 9.4: BULK EDITING NODES**

- When you have filled in the data for all nodes, click *Save*. The nodes will reboot and commence the AutoYaST-based SUSE Linux Enterprise Server installation (or installation of other target platforms, if selected) via a second boot using PXE. Click *Nodes > Dashboard* to return to the *Node Dashboard*.
- Nodes that are being installed are listed with the status Installing (yellow/green bullet). When the installation of a node has finished, it is listed as being Ready, indicated by a green bullet. Wait until all nodes are listed as being Ready before proceeding.





**FIGURE 9.5: ALL NODES HAVE BEEN INSTALLED**

## 9.3 Converting Existing SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 12 SP2 Machines Into SUSE OpenStack Cloud Nodes

SUSE OpenStack Cloud also allows to add existing machines installed with SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 12 SP2 to the pool of nodes. This enables you to use spare machines for SUSE OpenStack Cloud, and offers an alternative way of provisioning and installing nodes (via SUSE Manager for example). The machine must run SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 12 SP2.

The machine also needs to be on the same network as the Administration Server, because it needs to communicate with this server. Since the Administration Server provides a DHCP server, it is recommended to configure the respective network device with DHCP. If using a static IP address, make sure it is not already used in the admin network. Check the list of used IP addresses with the YaST Crowbar module as described in [Section 7.2, “Networks”](#).

Proceed as follows to convert an existing SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 12 SP2 machine into a SUSE OpenStack Cloud node:



1. Download the `crowbar_register` script from the Administration Server at [http://192.168.124.10:8091/suse-12.2/x86\\_64/crowbar\\_register](http://192.168.124.10:8091/suse-12.2/x86_64/crowbar_register). Replace the IP address with the IP address of your Administration Server using `curl` or `wget`. Note that the download only works from within the admin network.
2. Make the `crowbar_register` script executable (`chmod a+x crowbar_register`).
3. Run the `crowbar_register` script. If you have multiple network interfaces, the script tries to automatically detect the one that is connected to the admin network. You may also explicitly specify which network interface to use by using the `--interface` switch, for example `crowbar_register --interface eth1`.
4. After the script has successfully run, the machine has been added to the pool of nodes in the SUSE OpenStack Cloud and can be used as any other node from the pool.

## 9.4 Post-Installation Configuration

The following lists some *optional* configuration steps like configuring node updates, monitoring, access and SSL-enablement. You may entirely skip the following steps or perform any of them at a later stage.

### 9.4.1 Deploying Node Updates with the Updater Barclamp

To keep the operating system and the SUSE OpenStack Cloud software itself up-to-date on the nodes, you can deploy either the Updater barclamp or the SUSE Manager barclamp. The latter requires access to a SUSE Manager server. The Updater barclamp uses Zypper to install updates and patches from repositories made available on the Administration Server.

The easiest way to provide the required repositories on the Administration Server is to set up an SMT server as described in *Chapter 4, Installing and Setting Up an SMT Server on the Administration Server (Optional)*. Alternatives to setting up an SMT server are described in *Chapter 5, Software Repository Setup*.

The Updater barclamp lets you deploy updates that are available on the update repositories at the moment of deployment. Each time you deploy updates with this barclamp you can choose a different set of nodes to which the updates are deployed. This lets you exactly control where and when updates are deployed.



To deploy the Updater barclamp, proceed as follows. For general instructions on how to edit barclamp proposals refer to [Section 8.3, “Deploying Barclamp Proposals”](#).

1. Open a browser and point it to the Crowbar Web interface on the Administration Server, for example <http://192.168.124.10/>. Log in as user `crowbar`. The password is `crowbar` by default, if you have not changed it during the installation.
2. Open the barclamp menu by clicking *Barclamps > Crowbar*. Click the *Updater* barclamp entry and *Create* to open the proposal.
3. Configure the barclamp by the following attributes. This configuration always applies to all nodes on which the barclamp is deployed. Individual configurations for certain nodes are only supported by creating a separate proposal.

#### *Use zypper*

Define which Zypper subcommand to use for updating. *patch* will install all patches applying to the system from the configured update repositories that are available. *update* will update packages from all configured repositories (not just the update repositories) that have a higher version number than the installed packages. *dist-upgrade* replaces each package installed with the version from the repository and deletes packages not available in the repositories.

Using *patch* is recommended.

#### *Enable GPG Checks*

If set to true (recommended), checks if packages are correctly signed.

#### *Automatically Agree With Licenses*

If set to true (recommended), Zypper automatically accepts third party licenses.

#### *Include Patches that need Reboots (Kernel)*

Installs patches that require a reboot (for example Kernel or glibc updates). Only set this option to `true` when you can safely reboot the affected nodes. Refer to [Chapter 11, SUSE OpenStack Cloud Maintenance](#) for more information. Installing a new Kernel and not rebooting may result in an unstable system.

#### *Reboot Nodes if Needed*

Automatically reboots the system in case a patch requiring a reboot has been installed. Only set this option to `true` when you can safely reboot the affected nodes. Refer to [Chapter 11, SUSE OpenStack Cloud Maintenance](#) for more information.



SUSE® OpenStack Cloud

Nodes

Network

Barclamps

Utilities

Help

Updater

Save

Apply

Delete

Cancel

Attributes

Raw

Use zypper

patch

Enable GPG checks

true

Automatically agree with licenses

false

Include patches that need reboots (Kernel)

false

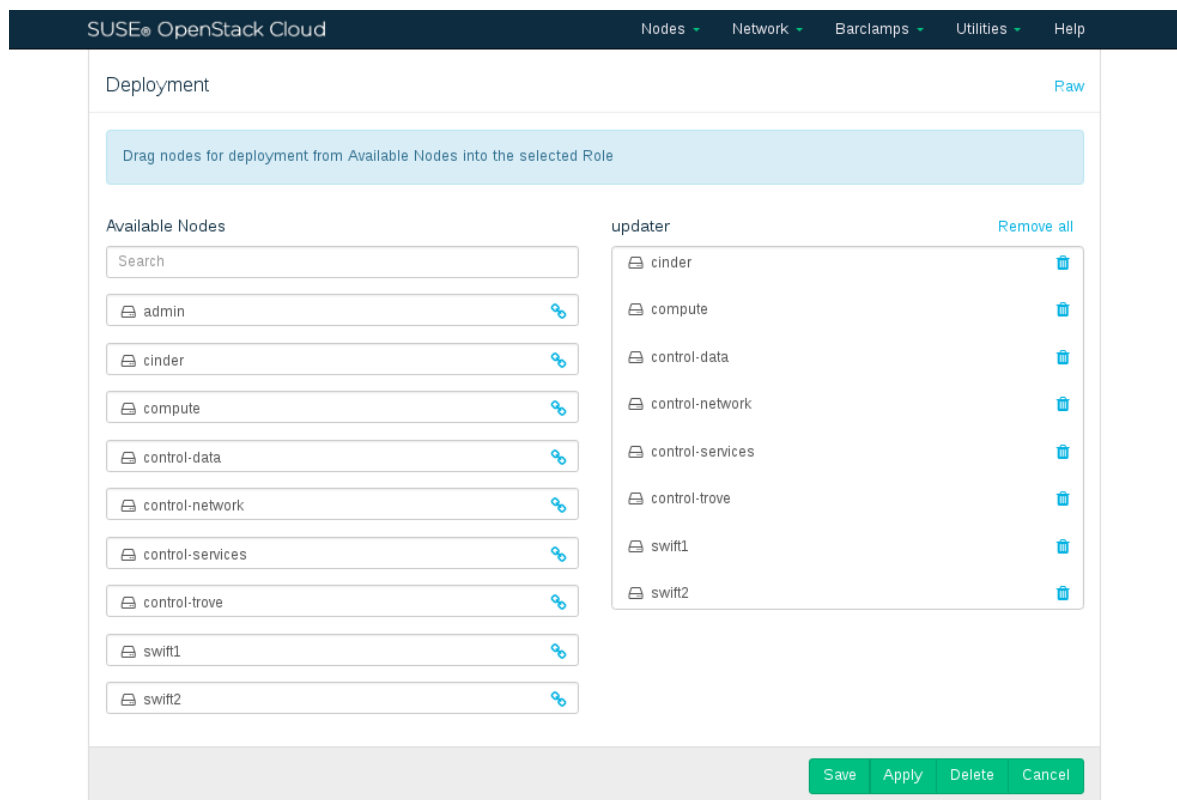
Reboot nodes if needed

false

FIGURE 9.6: SUSE UPDATER BARCLAMP: CONFIGURATION

4. Choose the nodes on which the Updater barclamp should be deployed in the *Node Deployment* section by dragging them to the *Updater* column.





**FIGURE 9.7: SUSE UPDATER BARCLAMP: NODE DEPLOYMENT**

**zypper** keeps track of the packages and patches it installs in `/var/log/zypp/history`. Review that log file on a node to find out which updates have been installed. A second log file recording debug information on the **zypper** runs can be found at `/var/log/zypper.log` on each node.



### Warning: Updating Software Packages on Cluster Nodes

Before starting an update for a cluster node, either stop the cluster stack on that node or put the cluster into maintenance mode. If the cluster resource manager on a node is active during the software update, this can lead to unpredictable results like fencing of active nodes. For detailed instructions refer to [http://www.suse.com/documentation/sle-ha-12/book\\_sleha/data/sec\\_ha\\_migration\\_update.html](http://www.suse.com/documentation/sle-ha-12/book_sleha/data/sec_ha_migration_update.html).



## 9.4.2 Configuring Node Updates with the *SUSE Manager Client* Barclamp

To keep the operating system and the SUSE OpenStack Cloud software itself up-to-date on the nodes, you can deploy either *SUSE Manager Client* barclamp or the Updater barclamp. The latter uses Zypper to install updates and patches from repositories made available on the Administration Server.

To enable the SUSE Manager server to manage the SUSE OpenStack Cloud nodes, you must make the respective SUSE OpenStack Cloud 7 channels, the SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 12 SP2 channels and the channels for extensions used with your deployment (High Availability Extension, SUSE Enterprise Storage) available via an activation key.

The *SUSE Manager Client* barclamp requires access to the SUSE Manager server from every node it is deployed to.

To deploy the *SUSE Manager Client* barclamp, proceed as follows. For general instructions on how to edit barclamp proposals refer to [Section 8.3, “Deploying Barclamp Proposals”](#).

1. Download the package `rhn-org-trusted-ssl-cert-VERSION-RELEASE.noarch.rpm` from `https://susemanager.example.com/pub/`. `VERSION` and `RELEASE` may vary, ask the administrator of the SUSE Manager for the correct values. `susemanager.example.com` needs to be replaced by the address of your SUSE Manager server. Copy the file you downloaded to `/opt/dell/chef/cookbooks/suse-manager-client/files/default/ssl-cert.rpm` on the Administration Server. The package contains the SUSE Manager's CA SSL Public Certificate. The certificate installation has not been automated on purpose, because downloading the certificate manually enables you to check it before copying it.
2. Re-install the barclamp by running the following command:

```
/opt/dell/bin/barclamp_install.rb --rpm core
```
3. Open a browser and point it to the Crowbar Web interface on the Administration Server, for example `http://192.168.124.10/`. Log in as user `crowbar`. The password is `crowbar` by default, if you have not changed it during the installation.
4. Open the barclamp menu by clicking *Barclamps* > *Crowbar*. Click the *SUSE Manager Client* barclamp entry and *Create* to open the proposal.



5. Specify the URL of the script for activation of the clients in the *URL of the bootstrap script* field.
6. Choose the nodes on which the SUSE Manager barclamp should be deployed in the *Deployment* section by dragging them to the *suse-manager-client* column. It is recommended to deploy it on all nodes in the SUSE OpenStack Cloud.

The screenshot shows the 'SUSE Manager Client' configuration page. At the top, there's a navigation bar with 'Nodes', 'Network', 'Barclamps', 'Utilities', and 'Help'. The main title is 'SUSE Manager Client' with a warning icon. Below the title are 'Save', 'Apply', 'Delete', and 'Cancel' buttons. The 'Attributes' section contains a 'Raw' link and a text box with instructions: 'Manual steps are required in order to use this barclamp. After installing the SUSE Manager Server, download https://your-manager-server.example.com/pub/rhn-org-trusted-ssl-cert-\*.noarch.rpm and place the file at /opt/dell/chef/cookbooks/suse-manager-client/files/default/ssl-cert.rpm. To finish the setup, execute knife cookbook upload suse-manager-client -o /opt/dell/chef/cookbooks on the Administration Server.' The 'URL of the bootstrap script' section has a text input field and a description: 'This is the script the administrator of the SUSE Manager server has prepared to be used for activation of the clients. It is likely located under /pub/bootstrap directory on the server. For example https://susemgr.example.com/pub/bootstrap/bootstrap-sles12sp1.sh.' The 'Deployment' section has a 'Raw' link and a instruction: 'Drag nodes for deployment from Available Nodes into the selected Role'. Below this, there are two columns: 'Available Nodes' and 'suse-manager-client'. The 'Available Nodes' column has a search bar and a list of nodes: admin, cinder, compute, control-data, control-network, control-services, control-trove, swift1, and swift2. The 'suse-manager-client' column has a 'Remove all' link and an empty list. At the bottom, there are 'Save', 'Apply', 'Delete', and 'Cancel' buttons.

FIGURE 9.8: SUSE MANAGER BARCLAMP





## Warning: Updating Software Packages on Cluster Nodes

Before starting an update for a cluster node, either stop the cluster stack on that node or put the cluster into maintenance mode. If the cluster resource manager on a node is active during the software update, this can lead to unpredictable results like fencing of active nodes. For detailed instructions refer to [http://www.suse.com/documentation/sle-ha-12/book\\_sleha/data/sec\\_ha\\_migration\\_update.html](http://www.suse.com/documentation/sle-ha-12/book_sleha/data/sec_ha_migration_update.html).

### 9.4.3 Mounting NFS Shares on a Node

The NFS barclamp allows you to mount NFS share from a remote host on nodes in the cloud. This feature can, for example, be used to provide an image repository for Glance. Note that all nodes which are to mount an NFS share must be able to reach the NFS server. This requires to manually adjust the network configuration.

To deploy the NFS barclamp, proceed as follows. For general instructions on how to edit barclamp proposals refer to [Section 8.3, “Deploying Barclamp Proposals”](#).

1. Open a browser and point it to the Crowbar Web interface on the Administration Server, for example <http://192.168.124.10/>. Log in as user `crowbar`. The password is `crowbar` by default, if you have not changed it during the installation.
2. Open the barclamp menu by clicking *Barclamps* > *Crowbar*. Click the *NFS Client* barclamp entry and *Create* to open the proposal.
3. Configure the barclamp by the following attributes. Each set of attributes is used to mount a single NFS share.

#### *Name*

Unique name for the current configuration. This name is used in the Web interface only to distinguish between different shares.

#### *NFS Server*

Fully qualified host name or IP address of the NFS server.

#### *Export*

Export name for the share on the NFS server.



### Path

Mount point on the target machine.

### Mount Options

Mount options that will be used on the node. See [man 8 mount](#) for general mount options and [man 5 nfs](#) for a list of NFS-specific options. Note that the general option [nofail](#) (do not report errors if device does not exist) is automatically set.

4. After having filled in all attributes, click *Add*. If you want to mount more than one share, fill in the data for another NFS mount. Otherwise click *Save* to save the data, or *Apply* to deploy the proposal. Note that you must always click *Add* before saving or applying the barclamp, otherwise the data that was entered will be lost.

SUSE® OpenStack Cloud

Nodes Network Barclamps Utilities Help

NFS Client: Default

Save Apply Delete Cancel

Attributes [Raw](#)

Name	NFS Server	Export	Path	Mount options
Currently there are no mounts available				

Name NFS Server Export Path Mount options Add

The "nofail" option will automatically be added to the options

FIGURE 9.9: NFS BARCLAMP

5. Go to the *Node Deployment* section and drag and drop all nodes, on which the NFS shares defined above should be mounted, to the *nfs-client* column. Click *Apply* to deploy the proposal.

The NFS barclamp is the only barclamp that lets you create different proposals, enabling you to mount different NFS shares on different nodes. When you have created an NFS proposal, a special *Edit* is shown in the barclamp overview of the Crowbar Web interface. Click it to either *Edit* an existing proposal or *Create* a new one. Creating a new proposal requires to give it a unique name.



<input type="radio"/>	NFS Client	Access remote filesystems by utilizing NFS	<button>Edit</button>
<input type="radio"/>	Default	Created on Tue, 31 Jan 2017 11:13:49 +0100	<button>Edit</button>
<input type="button" value="+"/>	<input type="text" value="proposal_1"/>	Created on Tue, 31 Jan 2017 11:19:21 +0100	<button>Create</button>

FIGURE 9.10: EDITING AN NFS BARCLAMP PROPOSAL

## 9.4.4 Using an Externally Managed Ceph Cluster

While deploying Ceph from within SUSE OpenStack Cloud is possible, leveraging an external Ceph cluster is also fully supported. Follow the instructions below to use an external Ceph cluster in SUSE OpenStack Cloud.

### 9.4.4.1 Requirements

#### Ceph Release

SUSE OpenStack Cloud uses Ceph clients from the Ceph “Hammer” release. Since other Ceph releases may not fully work with “Hammer” clients, the external Ceph installation must run a “Hammer” release, too. Other releases are not supported.

#### Network Configuration

The external Ceph cluster needs to be connected to a separate VLAN, which is mapped to the SUSE OpenStack Cloud storage VLAN. See [Section 2.1, “Network”](#) for more information.

### 9.4.4.2 Making Ceph Available on the SUSE OpenStack Cloud Nodes

Ceph can be used from the KVM Compute Nodes, with Cinder and with Glance,. The following installation steps need to be executed on each node accessing Ceph:



#### Important: Installation Workflow

The following steps need to be executed before the barclamps get deployed.





## Warning: Do Not Deploy the Ceph Barclamp

If using an external Ceph cluster, you must not deploy the SUSE OpenStack Cloud Ceph barclamp. An external and an internal Ceph cluster cannot be used together.

1. Log in as user `root` to a machine in the Ceph cluster and generate keyring files for Cinder users. Optionally, you can generate keyring files for the Glance users (only needed when using Glance with Ceph/Rados). The keyring file that will be generated for Cinder will also be used on the Compute Nodes. To do so, you need to specify pool names and user names for both services. The default names are:

	Glance	Cinder
User	glance	cinder
Pool	images	volumes

Make a note of user and pool names in case you do not use the default values. You will need this information later, when deploying Glance and Cinder.

2.



## Warning: Automatic Changes to the Cluster

If you decide to use the admin keyring file to connect the external Ceph cluster, be aware that after Crowbar discovers this admin keyring, it will create clients keyrings, pools and capabilities needed to run Glance, Cinder or Nova integration.

If you have access to the admin keyring file and agree that automatic changes will be done to the cluster as described above, copy it together with the Ceph configuration file to the Administration Server. If you cannot access this file, create a keyring:

- a. When you can access the admin keyring file `ceph.client.admin.keyring`, copy it together with `ceph.conf` (both files are usually located in `/etc/ceph`) to a temporary location on the Administration Server, for example `/root/tmp/`.



- b. If you cannot access the admin keyring file create a new keyring file with the following commands. Re-run the commands for Glance, too, if needed. First create a key:

```
ceph auth get-or-create-key client.USERNAME mon "allow r" \  
osd 'allow class-read object_prefix rbd_children, allow rwx \  
pool=POOLNAME'
```

Replace *USERNAME* and *POOLNAME* with the respective values.

Now use the key to generate the keyring file */etc/ceph/ceph.client.*USERNAME*.keyring*:

```
ceph-authtool \  
/etc/ceph/ceph.client.USERNAME.keyring \  
--create-keyring --name=client.USERNAME> \  
--add-key=KEY
```

Replace *USERNAME* with the respective value.

Copy the Ceph configuration file *ceph.conf* (usually located in */etc/ceph*) and the keyring file(s) generated above to a temporary location on the Administration Server, for example */root/tmp/*.

3. Log in to the Crowbar Web interface and check whether the nodes which should have access to the Ceph cluster already have an IP address from the storage network. Do so by going to the *Dashboard* and clicking the node name. An *IP address* should be listed for *storage*. Make a note of the *Full name* of each node that has *no* storage network IP address.
4. Log in to the Administration Server as user *root* and run the following command for all nodes you noted down in the previous step:

```
crowbar network allocate_ip "default" NODE "storage" "host"  
chef-client
```

*NODE* needs to be replaced by the node's name.

5. After having executed the command in the previous step for all affected nodes, run the command ***chef-client*** on the Administration Server.



6. Log in to each affected node as user root . See [Q:](#) for instructions. On each node, do the following:

- a. Manually install nova, cinder (if using cinder) and/or glance (if using glance) packages with the following commands:

```
zypper in openstack-glance
zypper in openstack-cinder
zypper in openstack-nova
```

- b. Copy the ceph.conf file from the Administration Server to /etc/ceph:

```
mkdir -p /etc/ceph
scp root@admin:/root/tmp/ceph.conf /etc/ceph
chmod 664 /etc/ceph/ceph.conf
```

- c. Copy the keyring file(s) to /etc/ceph . The exact process depends on whether you have copied the admin keyring file or whether you have created your own keyrings:

- i. If you have copied the admin keyring file, run the following command on the Control Node(s) on which Cinder and Glance will be deployed, and on all KVM Compute Nodes:

```
scp root@admin:/root/tmp/ceph.client.admin.keyring /etc/ceph
chmod 640 /etc/ceph/ceph.client.admin.keyring
```

- ii. If you have created you own keyrings, run the following command on the Control Node on which Cinder will be deployed, and on all KVM Compute Nodes to copy the Cinder keyring:

```
scp root@admin:/root/tmp/ceph.client.cinder.keyring /etc/ceph
chmod 640 /etc/ceph/ceph.client.cinder.keyring
```

Now copy the Glance keyring to the Control Node on which Glance will be deployed:

```
scp root@admin:/root/tmp/ceph.client.glance.keyring /etc/ceph
chmod 640 /etc/ceph/ceph.client.glance.keyring
```



- d. Adjust the ownership of the keyring file as follows:

Glance: `chown root.cinder /etc/ceph/ceph.client.cinder.keyring`

Cinder: `chown root.glance /etc/ceph/ceph.client.glance.keyring`

KVM Compute Nodes: `chown root.nova /etc/ceph/ceph.volumes.keyring`

## 9.4.5 Accessing the Nodes

The nodes can only be accessed via SSH from the Administration Server—it is not possible to connect to them from any other host in the network.

The root account *on the nodes* has no password assigned, therefore logging in to a node as root@node is only possible via SSH with key authentication. By default, you can only log in with the key of the root of the Administration Server (root@admin) via SSH only.

In case you have added additional users to the Administration Server and want to give them permission to log in to the nodes as well, you need to add these users' public SSH keys to root's authorized\_keys file on all nodes. Proceed as follows:

### PROCEDURE 9.1: COPYING SSH KEYS TO ALL NODES

1. If not already existing, generate an SSH key pair for the user that should be able to log in to the nodes with ssh-keygen. Alternatively copy an existing public key with ssh-copy-id. Refer to the respective man pages for more information.
2. Log in to the Crowbar Web interface available on the Administration Server, for example http://192.168.124.10/ (user name and default password: crowbar).
3. Open the barclamp menu by clicking *Barclamps* > *Crowbar*. Click the *Provisioner* barclamp entry and *Edit* the *Default* proposal.
4. Copy and paste the *public* SSH key of the user into the *Additional SSH Keys* text box. If adding keys for multiple users, note that each key needs to be placed on a new line.
5. Click *Apply* to deploy the keys and save your changes to the proposal.



## 9.4.6 Enabling SSL

To enable SSL to encrypt communication within the cloud (see [Section 2.3, “SSL Encryption”](#) for details), the respective certificates need to be available on the nodes running the encrypted services. An SSL certificate is at least required on the Control Node.

To make them available, copy them to the node. Each certificate consists of a pair of files: the certificate file (for example, signing\_cert.pem) and the key file (for example, signing\_key.pem). If you use your own certificate authority (CA) for signing, you will also need a certificate file for the CA (for example, ca.pem). It is recommended to copy the files to the /etc directory using the directory structure outlined below. If you use a dedicated certificate for each service, create directories named after the services (for example, /etc/keystone). If sharing the certificates, use a directory such as /etc/cloud.

### RECOMMENDED LOCATIONS FOR SHARED CERTIFICATES

#### SSL Certificate File

/etc/cloud/ssl/certs/signing\_cert.pem

#### SSL Key File

/etc/cloud/private/signing\_key.pem

#### CA Certificates File

/etc/cloud/ssl/certs/ca.pem

## 9.5 Editing Allocated Nodes

All nodes that have been allocated can be decommissioned or re-installed. Click a node's name in the *Node Dashboard* to open a screen with the node details. The following options are available:

#### **Forget**

Deletes a node from the pool. If you want to re-use this node again, it needs to be reallocated and re-installed from scratch.

#### **Reinstall**

Triggers a reinstallation. The machine stays allocated. If barclamp had been deployed on that machine before, they will be re-applied again after the installation.



### ***Deallocate***

Temporarily removes the node from the pool of nodes. After you reallocate the node it will take its former role. Useful for adding additional machines in times of high load or for decommissioning machines in times of low load.

### ***Power Actions > Reboot***

Reboots the node.

### ***Power Actions > Shutdown***

Shuts the node down.

### ***Power Actions > Power Cycle***

Forces a (non-clean) shuts down and a restart afterward. Only use if a reboot does not work.

### ***Power Actions > Power Off***

Forces a (non-clean) node shut down. Only use if a clean shut down does not work.



## Node

● control-data
Edit

<b>Full Name</b>	d52-54-00-8e-96-71.cloud.fs	<b>Hardware</b>	Standard PC (i440FX + PIIX, 1996)
<b>Public Name</b>	—	<b>Service Tag</b>	Not Specified (Not Specified)
<b>Description</b>	—	<b>CPU</b>	QEMU Virtual CPU version 2.3.1 (x86_64)
<b>Target Platform</b>	SLES 12 SP2	<b>Memory</b>	3.86 GB
<b>Uptime</b>	32 minutes 46 seconds	<b>Disk Drives</b>	2
<b>Allocated</b>	Allocated	<b>MAC Address</b>	52:54:00:8e:96:71
<b>State</b>	Ready	<b>Switch Name/Port</b>	Unknown / Unknown
<b>Intended Role</b>	Controller		
<b>Availability Zone</b>	—		
<b>IP Address</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>admin               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>eth0: 192.168.134.81</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		
<b>Links</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>No links available</li> </ul>		
<b>Applied Barclamps</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Crowbar               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>DNS</li> <li>Deployer</li> <li>IPMI</li> <li>Logging</li> <li>NTP</li> <li>Network</li> <li>Provisioner</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		
<b>Applied Roles</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Crowbar               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>bmc-nat-client</li> <li>deployer-client</li> <li>dns-client</li> <li>ipmi</li> <li>logging-client</li> <li>network</li> <li>ntp-client</li> <li>provisioner-base</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

Forget
Reinstall
Deallocate
Power Actions ▾

FIGURE 9.11: NODE INFORMATION





## Warning: Editing Nodes in a Production System

When de-allocating nodes that provide essential services, the complete cloud will become unusable. If you have not disabled redundancy, it is uncritical to disable single storage nodes or single compute nodes. However, disabling Control Node(s) will cause major problems. It will either “kill” certain services (for example Swift) or, at worst the complete cloud (when deallocating the Control Node hosting Neutron). You should also not disable nodes providing Ceph monitoring services or the nodes providing swift ring and proxy services.



## 10 Deploying the OpenStack Services

After the nodes are installed and configured you can start deploying the OpenStack components to finalize the installation. The components need to be deployed in a given order, because they depend on one another. The *Pacemaker* component for an HA setup is the only exception from this rule—it can be set up at any time. However, when deploying SUSE OpenStack Cloud from scratch, it is recommended to deploy the *Pacemaker* proposal(s) first. Deployment for all components is done from the Crowbar Web interface through recipes, so-called “barclamps”.

The components controlling the cloud (including storage management and control components) need to be installed on the Control Node(s) (refer to [Section 1.2, “The Control Node\(s\)”](#) for more information). However, you may *not* use your Control Node(s) as a compute node or storage host for Swift or Ceph. Here is a list with components that may *not* be installed on the Control Node(s): *swift-storage*, all Ceph components, *nova-compute-\**. These components need to be installed on dedicated nodes.

When deploying an HA setup, the controller nodes are replaced by one or more controller clusters consisting of at least two nodes (three are recommended). Setting up three separate clusters—for data, services, and networking—is recommended. See [Section 2.6, “High Availability”](#) for more information on requirements and recommendations for an HA setup.

The OpenStack components need to be deployed in the following order. For general instructions on how to edit and deploy barclamp, refer to [Section 8.3, “Deploying Barclamp Proposals”](#). Deploying Pacemaker (only needed for an HA setup), Swift and Ceph is optional; all other components must be deployed.

1. *Deploying Pacemaker (Optional, HA Setup Only)*
2. *Deploying the Database*
3. *Deploying RabbitMQ*
4. *Deploying Keystone*
5. *Deploying Ceph (optional)*
6. *Deploying Swift (optional)*
7. *Deploying Glance*
8. *Deploying Cinder*
9. *Deploying Neutron*



- 10. *Deploying Nova*
- 11. *Deploying Horizon (OpenStack Dashboard)*
- 12. *Deploying Heat (Optional)*
- 13. *Deploying Ceilometer (Optional)*
- 14. *Deploying Manila*
- 15. *Deploying Trove (Optional)*
- 16. *Deploying Tempest (Optional)*
- 17. *Deploying Magnum (Optional)*

## 10.1 Deploying Pacemaker (Optional, HA Setup Only)

To make the SUSE OpenStack Cloud controller functions and the Compute Nodes highly available, set up one or more clusters by deploying Pacemaker (see [Section 2.6, “High Availability”](#) for details). Since it is possible (and recommended) to deploy more than one cluster, a separate proposal needs to be created for each cluster.

Deploying Pacemaker is optional. In case you do not want to deploy it, skip this section and start the node deployment by deploying the database as described in [Section 10.2, “Deploying the Database”](#).



### Note: Number of Cluster Nodes

To set up a cluster, at least two nodes are required. If setting up a cluster for storage with replicated storage via DRBD (for example for a cluster for the database and RabbitMQ), exactly two nodes are required. For all other setups an odd number of nodes with a minimum of three nodes is strongly recommended. See [Section 2.6.5, “Cluster Requirements and Recommendations”](#) for more information.

To create a proposal, go to *Barclamps > OpenStack* and click *Edit* for the Pacemaker barclamp. A drop-down box where you can enter a name and a description for the proposal opens. Click *Create* to open the configuration screen for the proposal.



Status	Name	Description	
<input type="radio"/>	Pacemaker	Deploy Pacemaker clusters	<button>Edit</button>
<input type="button" value="+"/>	<input type="text" value="data"/>	<input type="text" value="Created on Tue, 31 Jan 2017 11:22:39 +0100"/>	<button>Create</button>

## Important: Proposal Name

The name you enter for the proposal will be used to generate host names for the virtual IPs of HAProxy. By default, the names follow this scheme:

cluster-*PROPOSAL\_NAME*.*FQDN* (for the internal name)

public.cluster-*PROPOSAL\_NAME*.*FQDN* (for the public name)

For example, when *PROPOSAL\_NAME* is set to data, this results in the following names:

cluster-data.example.com

public.cluster-data.example.com

For requirements regarding SSL encryption and certificates, see [Section 2.3, “SSL Encryption”](#).

The following options are configurable in the Pacemaker configuration screen:

### Transport for Communication

Choose a technology used for cluster communication. You can choose between *Multicast* (*UDP*), (sending a message to multiple destinations) or *Unicast* (*UDPU*) (sending a message to a single destination). By default unicast is used.

### Policy when cluster does not have quorum

Whenever communication fails between one or more nodes and the rest of the cluster a “cluster partition” occurs. The nodes of a cluster are split in partitions but are still active. They can only communicate with nodes in the same partition and are unaware of the separated nodes. The cluster partition that has the majority of nodes is defined to have “quorum”.

This configuration option defines what to do with the cluster partition(s) that do not have the quorum. See [http://www.suse.com/documentation/sle-ha-12/book\\_sleha/data/sec\\_ha\\_config\\_basics\\_global.html](http://www.suse.com/documentation/sle-ha-12/book_sleha/data/sec_ha_config_basics_global.html), section *Option no-quorum-policy* for details.



The recommended setting is to choose *Stop*. However, *Ignore* is enforced for two-node clusters to ensure that the remaining node continues to operate normally in case the other node fails. For clusters using shared resources, choosing *freeze* may be used to ensure that these resources continue to be available.

## STONITH: Configuration mode for STONITH

“Misbehaving” nodes in a cluster are shut down to prevent it from causing trouble. This mechanism is called STONITH (“Shoot the other node in the head”). STONITH can be configured in a variety of ways, refer to [http://www.suse.com/documentation/sle-ha-12/book\\_sleha/data/cha\\_ha\\_fencing.html](http://www.suse.com/documentation/sle-ha-12/book_sleha/data/cha_ha_fencing.html) for details. The following configuration options exist:

### *Configured manually*

STONITH will not be configured when deploying the barclamp. It needs to be configured manually as described in [http://www.suse.com/documentation/sle-ha-12/book\\_sleha/data/cha\\_ha\\_fencing.html](http://www.suse.com/documentation/sle-ha-12/book_sleha/data/cha_ha_fencing.html). For experts only.

### *Configured with IPMI data from the IPMI barclamp*

Using this option automatically sets up STONITH with data received from the IPMI barclamp. Being able to use this option requires that IPMI is configured for all cluster nodes. This should be done by default, when deploying cloud. To check or change the IPMI deployment, go to *Barclamps > Crowbar > IPMI > Edit*. Also make sure the *Enable BMC* option is set to *true* on this barclamp.



### Important: STONITH Devices Must Support IPMI

To configure STONITH with the IPMI data, *all* STONITH devices must support IPMI. Problems with this setup may occur with IPMI implementations that are not strictly standards compliant. In this case it is recommended to set up STONITH with STONITH block devices (SBD).



### Configured with STONITH Block Devices (SBD)

This option requires to manually set up shared storage and a watchdog on the cluster nodes before applying the proposal. To do so, proceed as follows:

1. Prepare the shared storage. The path to the shared storage device must be persistent and consistent across all nodes in the cluster. The SBD device must not use host-based RAID, cLVM2, nor reside on a DRBD\* instance.
2. Install the package `sbd` on all cluster nodes.
3. Initialize SBD device with by running the following command. Make sure to replace `/dev/SBD` with the path to the shared storage device.

```
sbd -d /dev/SBD create
```

Refer to [http://www.suse.com/documentation/sle-ha-12/book\\_sleha/data/sec\\_ha\\_storage\\_protect\\_fencing.html#pro\\_ha\\_storage\\_protect\\_sbd\\_create](http://www.suse.com/documentation/sle-ha-12/book_sleha/data/sec_ha_storage_protect_fencing.html#pro_ha_storage_protect_sbd_create) for details.

In *Kernel module for watchdog*, specify the respective kernel module to be used. Find the most commonly used watchdog drivers in the following table:

Hardware	Driver
HP	<code>hpwdt</code>
Dell, Fujitsu, Lenovo (Intel TCO)	<code>iTCO_wdt</code>
VM on z/VM on IBM mainframe	<code>vmwatchdog</code>
Xen VM (DomU)	<code>xen_xdt</code>
Generic	<code>softdog</code>

If your hardware is not listed above, either ask your hardware vendor for the right name or check the following directory for a list of choices: `/lib/modules/KERNEL_VERSION/kernel/drivers/watchdog`.

Alternatively, list the drivers that have been installed with your kernel version:

```
root # rpm -ql kernel-VERSION | grep watchdog
```

If the nodes need different watchdog modules, leave the text box empty.



After the shared storage has been set up, specify the path using the “by-id” notation (/dev/disk/by-id/DEVICE). It is possible to specify multiple paths as a comma-separated list.

Deploying the barclamp will automatically complete the SBD setup on the cluster nodes by starting the SBD daemon and configuring the fencing resource.

#### *Configured with one shared resource for the whole cluster*

All nodes will use the identical configuration. Specify the *Fencing Agent* to use and enter *Parameters* for the agent.

To get a list of STONITH devices which are supported by the High Availability Extension, run the following command on an already installed cluster nodes: **stonith -L**. The list of parameters depends on the respective agent. To view a list of parameters use the following command:

```
stonith -t agent -n
```

#### *Configured with one resource per node*

All nodes in the cluster use the same *Fencing Agent*, but can be configured with different parameters. This setup is, for example, required when nodes are in different chassis and therefore need different ILO parameters.

To get a list of STONITH devices which are supported by the High Availability Extension, run the following command on an already installed cluster nodes: **stonith -L**. The list of parameters depends on the respective agent. To view a list of parameters use the following command:

```
stonith -t agent -n
```

#### *Configured for nodes running in libvirt*

Use this setting for completely virtualized test installations. This option is not supported.

### **STONITH: Do not start corosync on boot after fencing**

With STONITH, Pacemaker clusters with two nodes may sometimes hit an issue known as STONITH deathmatch where each node kills the other one, resulting in both nodes rebooting all the time. Another similar issue in Pacemaker clusters is the fencing loop, where a reboot caused by STONITH will not be enough to fix a node and it will be fenced again and again.



This setting can be used to limit these issues. When set to *true*, a node that has not been properly shut down or rebooted will not start the services for Pacemaker on boot. Instead, the node will wait for action from the SUSE OpenStack Cloud operator. When set to *false*, the services for Pacemaker will always be started on boot. The *Automatic* value is used to have the most appropriate value automatically picked: it will be *true* for two-node clusters (to avoid STONITH deathmatches), and *false* otherwise.

When a node boots but not starts corosync because of this setting, then the node's status is in the *Node Dashboard* is set to "Problem" (red dot). To make this node usable again, see [Section J.2, "Re-adding the Node to the Cluster"](#).

#### Mail Notifications: Enable Mail Notifications

Get notified of cluster node failures via e-mail. If set to *true*, you need to specify which *SMTP Server* to use, a prefix for the mails' subject and sender and recipient addresses. Note that the SMTP server must be accessible by the cluster nodes.

#### DRBD: Prepare Cluster for DRBD

Set up DRBD for replicated storage on the cluster. This option requires a two-node cluster with a spare hard disk for each node. The disks should have a minimum size of 100 GB. Using DRBD is recommended for making the database and RabbitMQ highly available. For other clusters, set this option to *False*.

#### *HAProxy: Public name for public virtual IP*

The public name is the host name that will be used instead of the generated public name (see [Important: Proposal Name](#)) for the public virtual IP of HAProxy. (This is the case when registering public endpoints, for example). Any name specified here needs to be resolved by a name server placed outside of the SUSE OpenStack Cloud network.



**Edit Proposal**

**Pacemaker: Proposal 1** Save Apply Delete Cancel

**Attributes** Roll

**Transport for Communication**  
 Unicast (UDPU) ▼

**Policy when cluster does not have quorum**  
 ignore ▼

Refer to the [High Availability Guide](#) for a description of each value.

**STONITH**

**Configuration mode for STONITH**  
 Configured with one resource per node ▼

**Fencing agent**

Node name	Parameters for agent
<input type="text"/>	

**Do not start corosync on boot after fencing**  
 Automatic ▼

This setting can be used to avoid the STONITH deathmatch issue for two-nodes clusters, or a fencing loop. The corosync service will not start on boot on a node when that node was not properly shut down or rebooted; you will have to manually start it after having fixed the issue. "Automatic" means that this setting will be set to "true" for two-nodes cluster, and to "false" otherwise.

**Mail Notifications**

**FIGURE 10.1: THE PACEMAKER BARCLAMP**

The Pacemaker component consists of the following roles. Deploying the *hawk-server* role is optional:

#### *pacemaker-cluster-member*

Deploy this role on all nodes that should become member of the cluster.

#### *hawk-server*

Deploying this role is optional. If deployed, sets up the Hawk Web interface which lets you monitor the status of the cluster. The Web interface can be accessed via <https://IP-ADDRESS:7630>. Note that the GUI on SUSE OpenStack Cloud can only be used to monitor the cluster status and not to change its configuration.

*hawk-server* may be deployed on at least one cluster node. It is recommended to deploy it on all cluster nodes.

#### *pacemaker-remote*

Deploy this role on all nodes that should become members of the Compute Nodes cluster. They will run as Pacemaker remote nodes that are controlled by the cluster, but do not affect quorum. Instead of the complete cluster stack, only the pacemaker-remote component will be installed on this nodes.



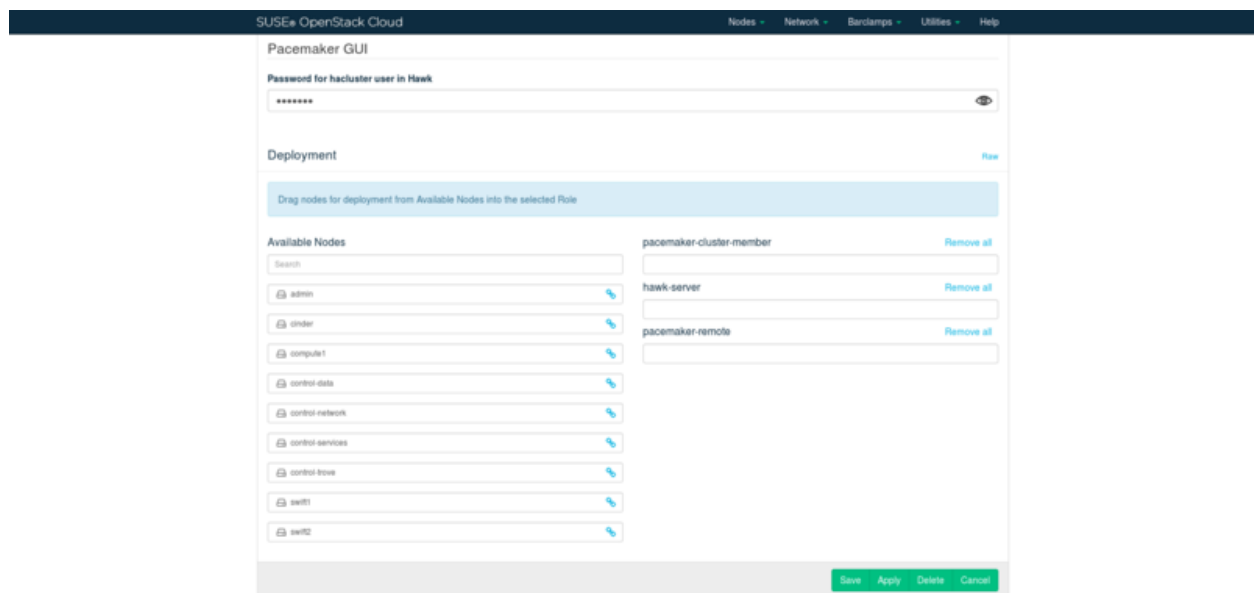


FIGURE 10.2: THE PACEMAKER BARCLAMP: NODE DEPLOYMENT EXAMPLE

After a cluster has been successfully deployed, it is listed under *Available Clusters* in the *Deployment* section and can be used for role deployment like a regular node.




### Warning: Deploying Roles on Single Cluster Nodes

When using clusters, roles from other barclamps must never be deployed to single nodes that are already part of a cluster. The only exceptions from this rule are the following roles:

- cinder-volume
- swift-proxy + swift-dispersion
- swift-ring-compute
- swift-storage



## Important: Service Management on the Cluster

After a role has been deployed on a cluster, its services are managed by the HA software. You must *never* manually start or stop an HA-managed service (or configure it to start on boot). Services may only be started or stopped by using the cluster management tools Hawk or the `crm` shell. See [http://www.suse.com/documentation/sle-ha-12/book\\_sleha/data/sec\\_ha\\_config\\_basics\\_resources.html](http://www.suse.com/documentation/sle-ha-12/book_sleha/data/sec_ha_config_basics_resources.html)  for more information.

## Note: Testing the Cluster Setup

To check whether all cluster resources are running, either use the Hawk Web interface or run the command `crm_mon -lr`. If it is not the case, clean up the respective resource with `crm resource cleanup RESOURCE`, so it gets respawned.

Also make sure that STONITH correctly works before continuing with the SUSE OpenStack Cloud setup. This is especially important when having chosen a STONITH configuration requiring manual setup. To test if STONITH works, log in to a node on the cluster and run the following command:

```
pgkill -9 corosync
```

In case STONITH is correctly configured, the node will reboot.

Before testing on a production cluster, plan a maintenance window in case issues should arise.

## 10.2 Deploying the Database

The very first service that needs to be deployed is the *Database*. The database component is using PostgreSQL and is used by all other components. It must be installed on a Control Node. The Database can be made highly available by deploying it on a cluster.

The only attribute you may change is the maximum number of database connections (*Global Connection Limit*). The default value should usually work—only change it for large deployments in case the log files show database connection failures.



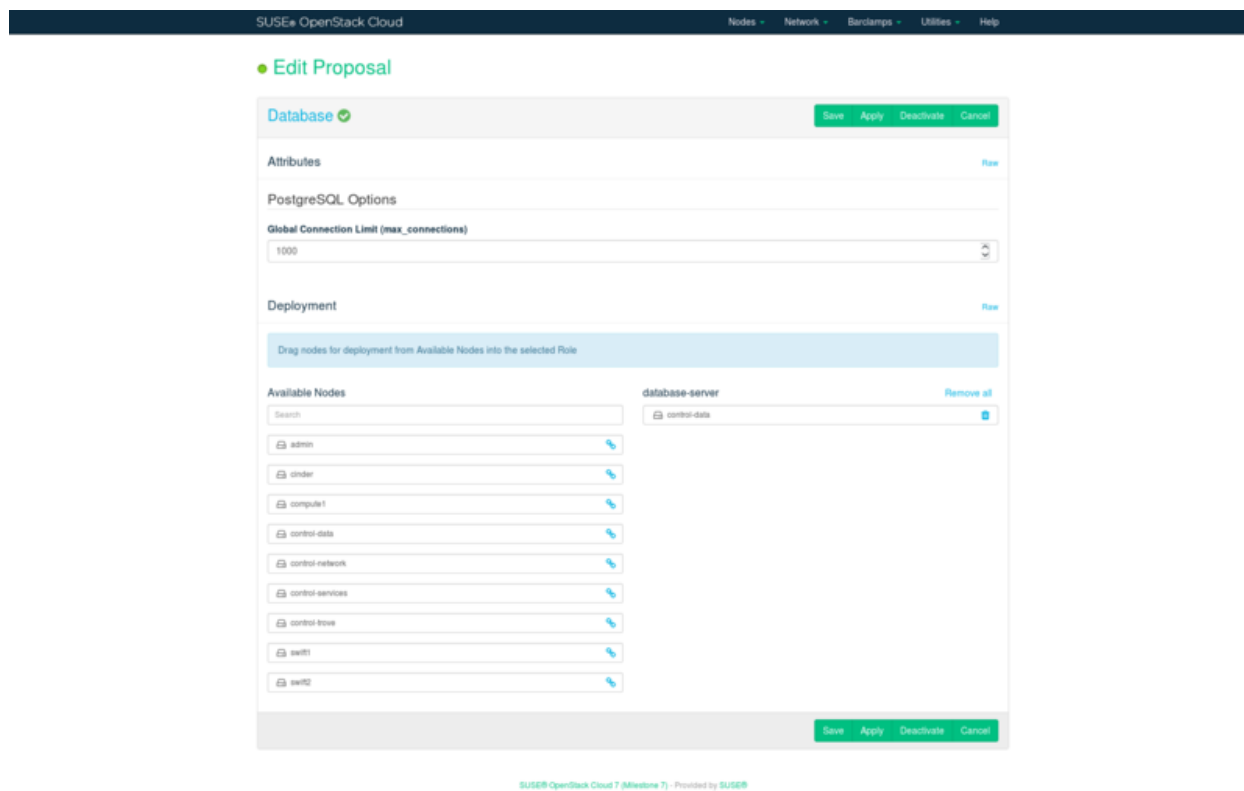


FIGURE 10.3: THE DATABASE BARCLAMP

## 10.2.1 HA Setup for the Database

To make the database highly available, deploy it on a cluster instead of a single Control Node. This also requires shared storage for the cluster that hosts the database data. To achieve this, either set up a cluster with DRBD support (see [Section 10.1, “Deploying Pacemaker \(Optional, HA Setup Only\)”](#)) or use “traditional” shared storage like an NFS share. It is recommended to use a dedicated cluster to deploy the database together with RabbitMQ, since both components require shared storage.

Deploying the database on a cluster makes an additional *High Availability* section available in the *Attributes* section of the proposal. Configure the *Storage Mode* in this section. There are two options:

### DRBD

This option requires a two-node cluster that has been set up with DRBD. Also specify the *Size to Allocate for DRBD Device (in Gigabytes)*. The suggested value of 50 GB should be sufficient.



## Shared Storage

Use a shared block device or an NFS mount for shared storage. Concordantly with the mount command, you need to specify three attributes: *Name of Block Device or NFS Mount Specification* (the mount point), the *Filesystem Type* and the *Mount Options*. Refer to [man 8 mount](#) for details on file system types and mount options.

### ! Important: NFS Export Options for Shared Storage

To use an NFS share as shared storage for a cluster, export it on the NFS server with the following options:

```
rw,async,insecure,no_subtree_check,no_root_squash
```

In case mounting the NFS share on the cluster nodes fails, change the export options and re-apply the proposal. However, before doing so, you need to clean up the respective resources on the cluster nodes as described in [http://www.suse.com/documentation/sle-ha-12/book\\_sleha/data/sec\\_ha\\_config\\_crm.html#sec\\_ha\\_manual\\_config\\_cleanup](http://www.suse.com/documentation/sle-ha-12/book_sleha/data/sec_ha_config_crm.html#sec_ha_manual_config_cleanup).

### ! Important: Ownership of a Shared NFS Directory

The shared NFS directory that is used for the PostgreSQL database needs to be owned by the same user ID and group ID as of the postgres user on the HA database cluster.

To get the IDs, log in to one of the HA database cluster machines and issue the following commands:

```
id -g postgres
getent group postgres | cut -d: -f3
```

The first command returns the numeric user ID, the second one the numeric group ID. Now log in to the NFS server and change the ownership of the shared NFS directory, for example:

```
chown UID.GID /exports/cloud/db
```

Replace UID and GID by the respective numeric values retrieved above.





## Warning: Re-Deploying SUSE OpenStack Cloud with Shared Storage

When re-deploying SUSE OpenStack Cloud and reusing a shared storage hosting database files from a previous installation, the installation may fail due to the old database being used. Always delete the old database that is to be used from the shared storage before re-deploying SUSE OpenStack Cloud.

## 10.3 Deploying RabbitMQ

The RabbitMQ messaging system enables services to communicate with the other nodes via Advanced Message Queue Protocol (AMQP). Deploying it is mandatory. RabbitMQ needs to be installed on a Control Node. RabbitMQ can be made highly available by deploying it on a cluster. It is recommended not to change the default values of the proposal's attributes.

### *Virtual Host*

Name of the default virtual host to be created and used by the RabbitMQ server (default\_vhost configuration option in rabbitmq.config).

### *Port*

Port the RabbitMQ server listens on (tcp\_listeners configuration option in rabbitmq.config).

### *User*

RabbitMQ default user (default\_user configuration option in rabbitmq.config).



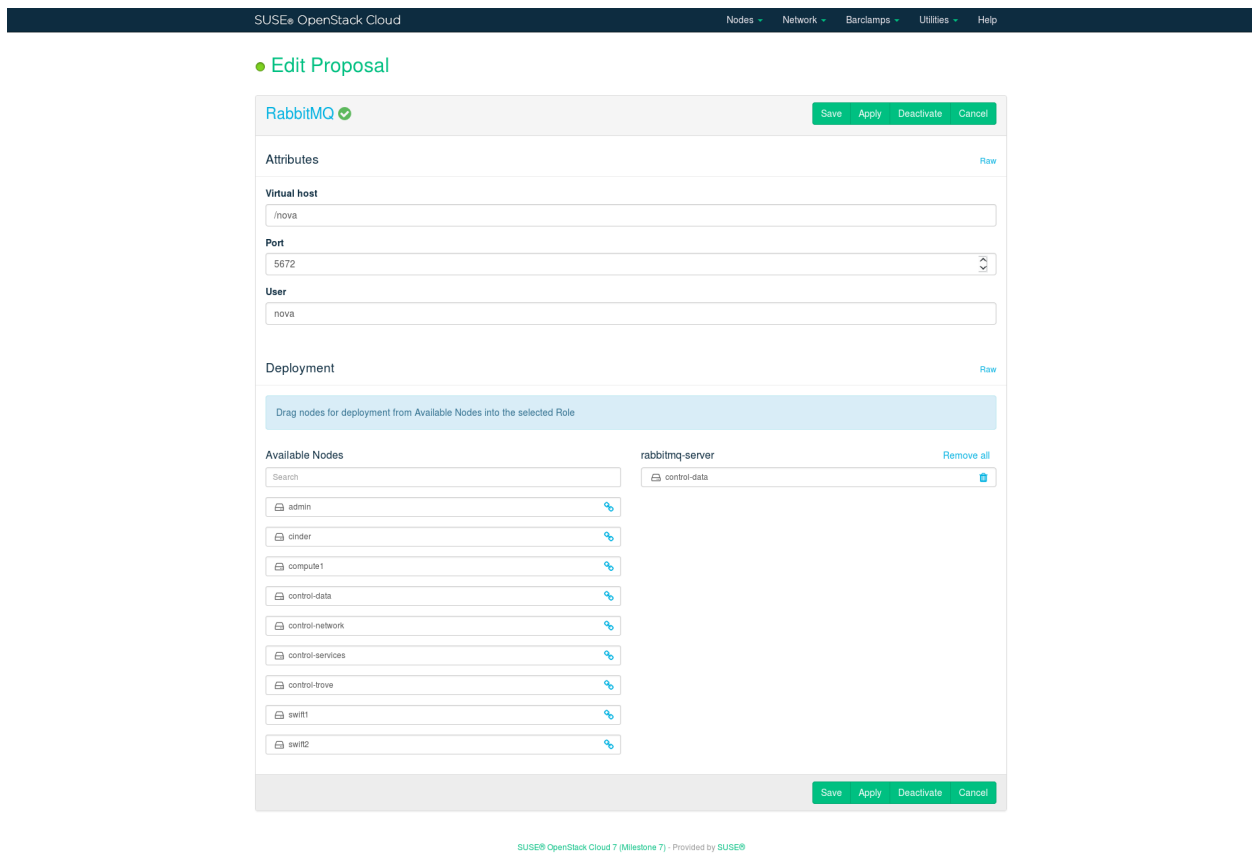


FIGURE 10.4: THE RABBITMQ BARCLAMP

### 10.3.1 HA Setup for RabbitMQ

To make RabbitMQ highly available, deploy it on a cluster instead of a single Control Node. This also requires shared storage for the cluster that hosts the RabbitMQ data. To achieve this, either set up a cluster with DRBD support (see [Section 10.1, “Deploying Pacemaker \(Optional, HA Setup Only\)”](#)) or use “traditional” shared storage like an NFS share. It is recommended to use a dedicated cluster to deploy RabbitMQ together with the database, since both components require shared storage.



Deploying RabbitMQ on a cluster makes an additional *High Availability* section available in the *Attributes* section of the proposal. Configure the *Storage Mode* in this section. There are two options:

#### **DRBD**

This option requires a two-node cluster that has been set up with DRBD. Also specify the *Size to Allocate for DRBD Device (in Gigabytes)*. The suggested value of 50 GB should be sufficient.

#### **Shared Storage**

Use a shared block device or an NFS mount for shared storage. Concordantly with the mount command, you need to specify three attributes: *Name of Block Device or NFS Mount Specification* (the mount point), the *Filesystem Type* and the *Mount Options*.



### **Important: NFS Export Options for Shared Storage**

An NFS share for use as a shared storage for a cluster needs to be exported on the NFS server with the following options:

```
rw,async,insecure,no_subtree_check,no_root_squash
```

In case mounting the NFS share on the cluster nodes fails, change the export options and re-apply the proposal. Before doing so, however, you need to clean up the respective resources on the cluster nodes as described in [http://www.suse.com/documentation/sle-ha-12/book\\_sleha/data/sec\\_ha\\_config\\_crm.html#sec\\_ha\\_manual\\_config\\_cleanup](http://www.suse.com/documentation/sle-ha-12/book_sleha/data/sec_ha_config_crm.html#sec_ha_manual_config_cleanup).

## **10.4 Deploying Keystone**

*Keystone* is another core component that is used by all other OpenStack components. It provides authentication and authorization services. *Keystone* needs to be installed on a Control Node. *Keystone* can be made highly available by deploying it on a cluster. You can configure the following parameters of this barclamp:

#### **Algorithm for Token Generation**

Set the algorithm used by *Keystone* to generate the tokens. You can choose between Fernet (the default) or UUID. Note that for performance and security reasons it is strongly recommended to use Fernet.



### ***Region Name***

Allows to customize the region name that crowbar is going to manage.

### ***Default Credentials: Default Tenant***

Tenant for the users. Do not change the default value of openstack.

### ***Default Credentials: Administrator User Name/Password***

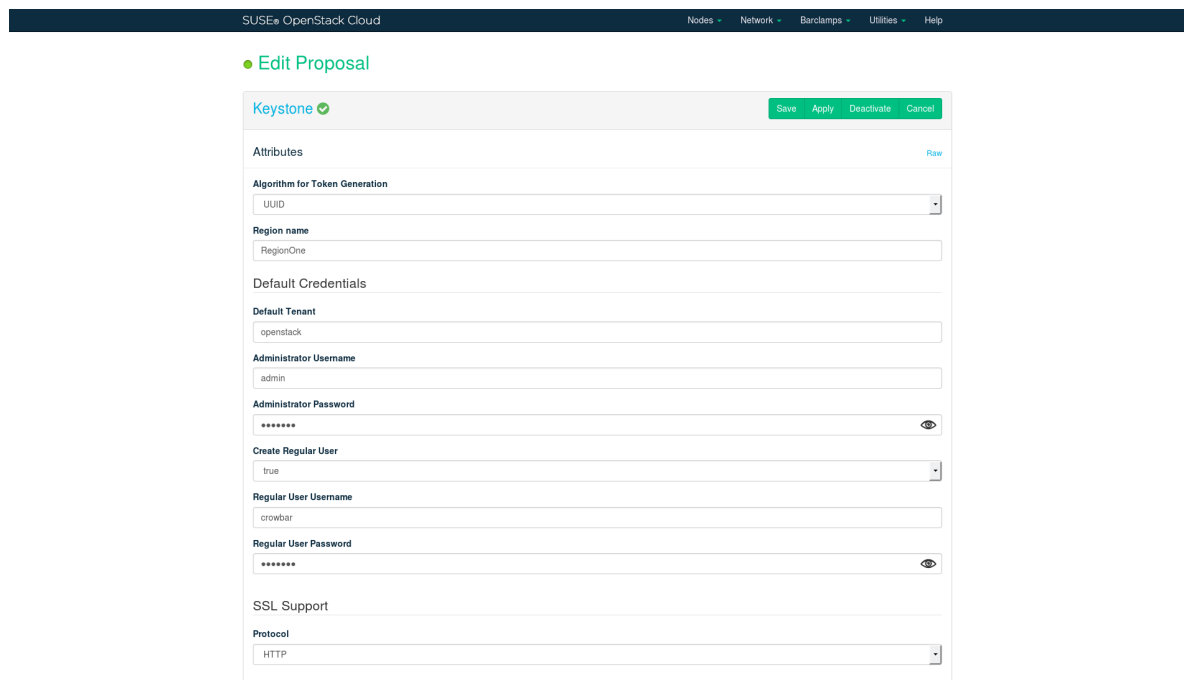
User name and password for the administrator.

### ***Default Credentials: Create Regular User***

Specify whether a regular user should be created automatically. Not recommended in most scenarios, especially in an LDAP environment.

### ***Default Credentials: Regular User Username/Password***

User name and password for the regular user. Both the regular user and the administrator accounts can be used to log in to the SUSE OpenStack Cloud Dashboard. However only the administrator can manage Keystone users and access.



The screenshot shows the SUSE OpenStack Cloud dashboard with a dark blue header containing navigation links: Nodes, Network, Barclamps, Utilities, and Help. Below the header, a green 'Edit Proposal' link is visible. The main content area is a form titled 'Keystone' with a green checkmark icon and buttons for 'Save', 'Apply', 'Deactivate', and 'Cancel'. The form is organized into sections: 'Attributes' (with a 'Raw' link), 'Algorithm for Token Generation' (set to 'UUID'), 'Region name' (set to 'RegionOne'), 'Default Credentials' (containing 'Default Tenant' set to 'openstack', 'Administrator Username' set to 'admin', and 'Administrator Password' masked with asterisks), 'Create Regular User' (set to 'true'), 'Regular User Username' (set to 'crowbar'), 'Regular User Password' masked with asterisks, and 'SSL Support' (with 'Protocol' set to 'HTTP').

**FIGURE 10.5: THE KEYSTONE BARCLAMP**



## SSL Support: Protocol

When sticking with the default value *HTTP*, public communication will not be encrypted. Choose *HTTPS* to use SSL for encryption. See [Section 2.3, “SSL Encryption”](#) for background information and [Section 9.4.6, “Enabling SSL”](#) for installation instructions. The following additional configuration options will become available when choosing *HTTPS*:

### *Generate (self-signed) certificates*

When set to true, self-signed certificates are automatically generated and copied to the correct locations. This setting is for testing purposes only and should never be used in production environments!

### *SSL Certificate File / SSL (Private) Key File*

Location of the certificate key pair files.

### *SSL Certificate is insecure*

Set this option to true when using self-signed certificates to disable certificate checks. This setting is for testing purposes only and should never be used in production environments!

### *SSL CA Certificates File*

Specify the absolute path to the CA certificate here. This option can only be changed if *Require Client Certificate* was set to true.



The screenshot shows a configuration window titled "SSL Support". It contains several settings, each with a label and a text input field or a dropdown menu. The settings are: "Protocol" (dropdown menu showing "HTTPS"), "Generate (self-signed) certificates (implies insecure)" (dropdown menu showing "false"), "SSL Certificate File" (text input field showing "/etc/keystone/ssl/certs/signing\_cert.pem"), "SSL (Private) Key File" (text input field showing "/etc/keystone/ssl/private/signing\_key.pem"), "SSL Certificate is insecure (for instance, self-signed)" (dropdown menu showing "false"), and "SSL CA Certificates File" (text input field showing "/etc/keystone/ssl/certs/ca.pem").

**FIGURE 10.6: THE SSL DIALOG**



## 10.4.1 LDAP Authentication with Keystone

By default Keystone uses an SQL database back-end store for authentication. LDAP can be used in addition to the default or as an alternative. Using LDAP requires the Control Node on which Keystone is installed to be able to contact the LDAP server. See [Appendix D, The Network Barclamp Template File](#) for instructions on how to adjust the network setup.

### 10.4.1.1 Using LDAP for Authentication

To configure LDAP as an alternative to the SQL database back-end store, you need to open the Keystone barclamp *Attribute* configuration in *Raw* mode. Search for the *ldap* section.

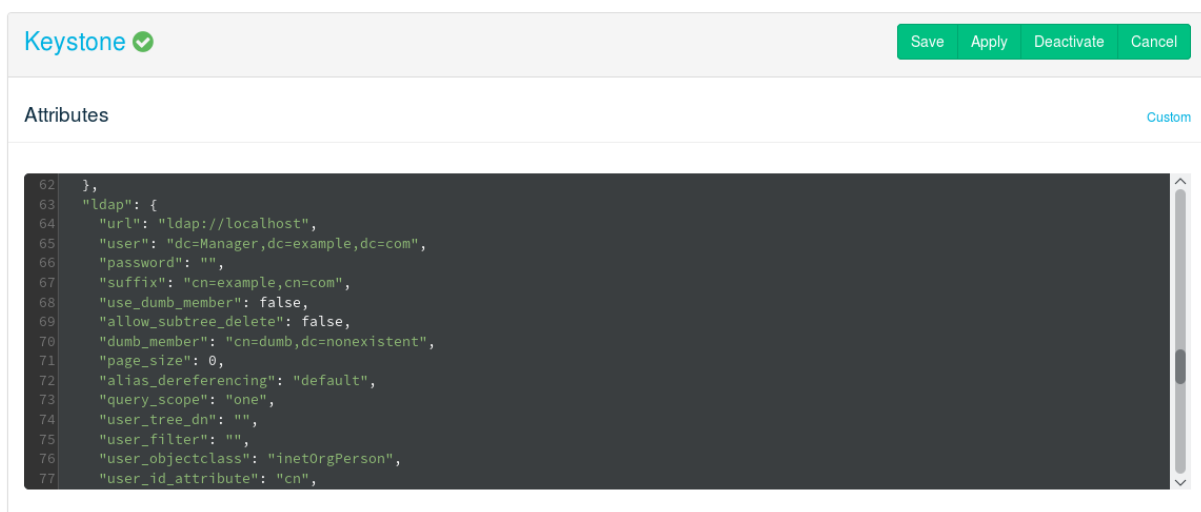


FIGURE 10.7: THE KEYSTONE BARCLAMP: RAW MODE

Adjust the settings according to your LDAP setup. The default configuration does not include all attributes that can be set. You'll find a complete list of options is available in the file `/opt/dell/chef/data_bags/crowbar/bc-template-keystone.schema` on the Administration Server (search for `ldap`). There are three types of attribute values: strings (for example, the value for `url: "ldap://localhost"`), bool (for example, the value for `use_dumb_member: false`) and integer (for example, the value for `page_size: 0`). Attribute names and string values always need to be quoted with double quotes; bool and integer values must not be quoted.



### Important: Using LDAP over SSL (ldaps) Is Recommended

In a production environment, it is recommended to use LDAP over SSL (ldaps), otherwise passwords will be transferred as plain text.



### 10.4.1.2 Using Hybrid Authentication

The Hybrid LDAP back-end allows to create a mixed LDAP/SQL setup. This is especially useful when an existing LDAP server should be used to authenticate cloud users. The system and service users (administrators and operators) needed to set up and manage SUSE OpenStack Cloud will be managed in the local SQL database. Assignments of users to projects and roles will also be stored in the local database.

In this scenario the LDAP Server can be read-only for SUSE OpenStack Cloud installation and no Schema modifications are required. Therefore managing LDAP users from within SUSE OpenStack Cloud is not possible and needs to be done using your established tools for LDAP user management. All user that are create with the Keystone command line client or the Horizon Web UI will be stored in the local SQL database.

To configure hybrid authentication, proceed as follows:

1. Open the Keystone barclamp *Attribute* configuration in *Raw* mode (see [Figure 10.7, “The Keystone Barclamp: Raw Mode”](#)).
2. Set the identity and assignment drivers to the hybrid back-end:

```
"identity": {  
  "driver": "hybrid"  
},  
"assignment": {  
  "driver": "hybrid"  
}
```

3. Adjust the settings according to your LDAP setup in the *ldap* section. Since the LDAP back-end is only used to acquire information on users (but not on projects and roles), only the user-related settings matter here. See the following example of settings that may need to be adjusted:

```
"ldap": {  
  "url": "ldap://localhost",  
  "user": "",  
  "password": "",  
  "suffix": "cn=example,cn=com",  
  "user_tree_dn": "cn=example,cn=com",  
  "query_scope": "one",  
  "user_id_attribute": "cn",  
  "user_enabled_emulation_dn": "",
```



```

"tls_req_cert": "demand",
"user_attribute_ignore": "tenant_id,tenants",
"user_objectclass": "inetOrgPerson",
"user_mail_attribute": "mail",
"user_filter": "",
"use_tls": false,
"user_allow_create": false,
"user_pass_attribute": "userPassword",
"user_enabled_attribute": "enabled",
"user_enabled_default": "True",
"page_size": 0,
"tls_cacertdir": "",
"tls_cacertfile": "",
"user_enabled_mask": 0,
"user_allow_update": true,
"group_allow_update": true,
"user_enabled_emulation": false,
"user_name_attribute": "cn"
"group_ad_nesting": false,
"use_pool": true,
"pool_size": 10,
"pool_retry_max": 3
}

```

To access the LDAP server anonymously, leave the values for *user* and *password* empty.

## 10.4.2 HA Setup for Keystone


Making Keystone highly available requires no special configuration—it is sufficient to deploy it on a cluster.

## 10.5 Deploying Ceph (optional)

Ceph adds a redundant block storage service to SUSE OpenStack Cloud. It lets you store persistent devices that can be mounted from instances. It offers high data security by storing the data redundantly on a pool of Storage Node. Therefore Ceph needs to be installed on at least three dedicated nodes. All Ceph nodes need to run SLES 12. For detailed information on




how to provide the required repositories, refer to [Section 5.2, “Update and Pool Repositories”](#). If deploying the optional Calamari server for Ceph management and monitoring, an additional node is required.

For more information on the Ceph project, visit <http://ceph.com/> .



### Tip: SUSE Enterprise Storage

SUSE Enterprise Storage is a robust cluster solution based on Ceph. Refer to <https://www.suse.com/documentation/ses-4/>  for more information.

The Ceph barclamp has the following configuration options:

#### *Disk Selection Method*

Choose whether to only use the first available disk or all available disks. “Available disks” are all disks currently not used by the system. Note that one disk (usually `/dev/sda`) of every block storage node is already used for the operating system and is not available for Ceph.

#### *Number of Replicas of an Object*

For data security, stored objects are not only stored once, but redundantly. Specify the number of copies that should be stored for each object with this setting. The number includes the object itself. If you for example want the object plus two copies, specify 3.

#### *SSL Support for RadosGW*

Choose whether to encrypt public communication (*HTTPS*) or not (*HTTP*). If choosing *HTTPS*, you need to specify the locations for the certificate key pair files. Note that both trusted and self-signed certificates are accepted.

#### *Calamari Credentials*

Calamari is a Web front-end for managing and analyzing the Ceph cluster. Provide administrator credentials (user name, password, e-mail address) in this section. When Ceph has been deployed you can log in to Calamari with these credentials. Deploying Calamari is optional—leave these text boxes empty when not deploying Calamari.



SUSE® OpenStack Cloud
Nodes - Network - Barclamps - Utilities - Help

Edit Proposal

Ceph ⓘ
Save Apply Delete Cancel

Attributes Raw

Disk selection method
All Available

Number of replicas of an object
0

Values: 0 - automatic, 1-6 - number of replicas

SSL Support for RadosGW

Protocol
HTTP

Calamari Credentials

Administrator Username
admin

Administrator Email Address
admin@example.com

Administrator Password
\*\*\*\*\*

SSL Support for Calamari

Protocol
HTTP

**FIGURE 10.8: THE CEPH BARCLAMP**

The Ceph component consists of the following different roles:

## ! Important: Dedicated Nodes

We do not recommend sharing one node by more Ceph components at the same time. For example, running a `ceph-mon` service on the same node as `ceph-osd` degrades the performance of all services hosted on the shared node. This also applies to other services, such as Calamari or RADOS Gateway.

### ceph-osd

The virtual block storage service. Install this role on all dedicated Ceph Storage Nodes (at least three).

### ceph-mon

Cluster monitor daemon for managing the storage map of the Ceph cluster. `ceph-mon` needs to be installed on at least three nodes.

### ceph-calamari

Sets up the Calamari Web interface which lets you manage the Ceph cluster. Deploying it is optional. The Web interface can be accessed via `http://IP-ADDRESS/` (where IP-ADDRESS is the address of the machine where `ceph-calamari` is deployed on).



### *ceph-radosgw*

The HTTP REST gateway for Ceph. Visit [https://www.suse.com/documentation/ses-4/book\\_storage\\_admin/data/cha\\_ceph\\_gw.html](https://www.suse.com/documentation/ses-4/book_storage_admin/data/cha_ceph_gw.html) for more detailed information.



#### Tip: RADOS Gateway HA Setup

If you need to set up more RADOS Gateways (and thus create a backup instance in case one RADOS Gateway node fails), set up RADOS Gateway on multiple nodes and put an HTTP load balancer in front of them. You can choose your preferred balancing solution, or use SUSE Linux Enterprise HA extension (refer to <https://www.suse.com/documentation/sle-ha-12/>).

### *ceph-mds*

The metadata server for the CephFS distributed file system. Install this role on one to three nodes to enable CephFS. A file system named `cephfs` will automatically be created, along with `cephfs_metadata` and `cephfs_data` pools. Refer to [https://www.suse.com/documentation/ses-3/book\\_storage\\_admin/data/cha\\_ceph\\_cephfs.html](https://www.suse.com/documentation/ses-3/book_storage_admin/data/cha_ceph_cephfs.html) for more details.



#### Important: Use Dedicated Nodes

Never deploy on a node that runs non-Ceph OpenStack components. The only services that may be deployed together on a Ceph node, are `ceph-osd`, `ceph-mon` and `ceph-radosgw`. However, we recommend running each Ceph service on a dedicated host for performance reasons. All Ceph nodes need to run SLES 12.



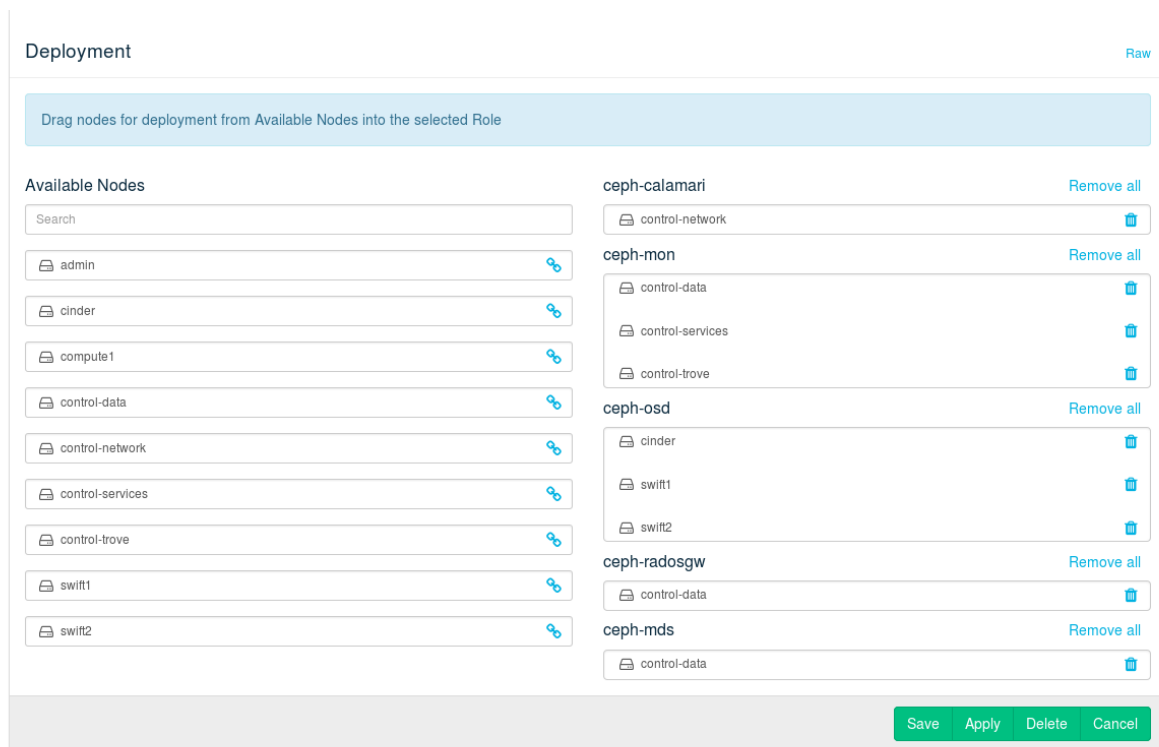


FIGURE 10.9: THE CEPH BARCLAMP: NODE DEPLOYMENT EXAMPLE

## 10.5.1 HA Setup for Ceph

Ceph is HA-enabled by design, so there is no need for a special HA setup.

## 10.6 Deploying Swift (optional)

Swift adds an object storage service to SUSE OpenStack Cloud that lets you store single files such as images or snapshots. It offers high data security by storing the data redundantly on a pool of Storage Nodes—therefore Swift needs to be installed on at least two dedicated nodes.

To be able to properly configure Swift it is important to understand how it places the data. Data is always stored redundantly within the hierarchy. The Swift hierarchy in SUSE OpenStack Cloud is formed out of zones, nodes, hard disks, and logical partitions. Zones are physically separated clusters, for example different server rooms each with its own power supply and



network segment. A failure of one zone must not affect another zone. The next level in the hierarchy are the individual Swift storage nodes (on which *swift-storage* has been deployed) followed by the hard disks. Logical partitions come last.

Swift automatically places three copies of each object on the highest hierarchy level possible. If three zones are available, the each copy of the object will be placed in a different zone. In a one zone setup with more than two nodes, the object copies will each be stored on a different node. In a one zone setup with two nodes, the copies will be distributed on different hard disks. If no other hierarchy element fits, logical partitions are used.

The following attributes can be set to configure Swift:

#### ***Allow Public Containers***

Allows to enable public access to containers if set to true.

#### **Enable Object Versioning**

If set to true, a copy of the current version is archived, each time an object is updated.

#### ***Zones***

Number of zones (see above). If you do not have different independent installations of storage nodes, set the number of zones to 1.

#### **Create 2^X Logical Partitions**

Partition power. The number entered here is used to compute the number of logical partitions to be created in the cluster. The number you enter is used as a power of 2 ( $2^X$ ). It is recommended to use a minimum of 100 partitions per disk. To measure the partition power for your setup, do the following: Multiply the number of disks from all Swift nodes with 100 and then round up to the nearest power of two. Keep in mind that the first disk of each node is not used by Swift, but rather for the operating system.

**Example:** 10 Swift nodes with 5 hard disks each. Four hard disks on each node are used for Swift, so there is a total of forty disks. Multiplied by 100 gives 4000. The nearest power of two, 4096, equals  $2^{12}$ . So the partition power that needs to be entered is 12.





## Important: Value Cannot be Changed After the Proposal Has Been Deployed

Changing the number of logical partition after Swift has been deployed is not supported. Therefore the value for the partition power should be calculated from the maximum number of partitions this cloud installation is likely going to need at any point in time.

### Minimum Hours before Partition is reassigned

This option sets the number of hours before a logical partition is considered for relocation. 24 is the recommended value.

### Replicas

The number of copies generated for each object. Set this value to 3, the tested and recommended value.

### Replication interval (in seconds)

Time (in seconds) after which to start a new replication process.

### Debug

Shows debugging output in the log files when set to true.

### SSL Support: Protocol

Choose whether to encrypt public communication (*HTTPS*) or not (*HTTP*). If choosing *HTTPS*, you have two choices. You can either *Generate (self-signed) certificates* or provide the locations for the certificate key pair files. Using self-signed certificates is for testing purposes only and should never be used in production environments!



FIGURE 10.10: THE SWIFT BARCLAMP

Apart from the general configuration described above, the Swift barclamp lets you also activate and configure *Additional Middlewares*. The features these middleware provide can be used via the Swift command line client only. The Ratelimit and S3 middleware certainly provide for the most interesting features, whereas it is recommended to only enable further middleware for specific use-cases.

### S3 Middleware

Provides an S3 compatible API on top of Swift.

### StaticWeb

Enables to serve container data as a static Web site with an index file and optional file listings. See <http://docs.openstack.org/developer/swift/middleware.html#staticweb> for details.

This middleware requires to set *Allow Public Containers* to true.



### **TempURL**

Enables to create URLs to provide time limited access to objects. See <http://docs.openstack.org/developer/swift/middleware.html#tempurl> for details.

### **FormPOST**

Enables to upload files to a container via Web form. See <http://docs.openstack.org/developer/swift/middleware.html#formpost> for details.

### **Bulk**

Enables the possibility to extract tar files into a swift account and to delete multiple objects or containers with a single request. See <http://docs.openstack.org/developer/swift/middleware.html#module-swift.common.middleware.bulk> for details.

### **Cross-domain**

Allows to interact with the Swift API via Flash, Java and Silverlight from an external network. See <http://docs.openstack.org/developer/swift/middleware.html#module-swift.common.middleware.crossdomain> for details.

### **Domain Remap**

Translates container and account parts of a domain to path parameters that the Swift proxy server understands. Can be used to create short URLs that are easy to remember, for example by rewriting home.tux.example.com/\$R00T/tux/home/myfile to home.tux.example.com/myfile. See [http://docs.openstack.org/developer/swift/middleware.html#module-swift.common.middleware.domain\\_remap](http://docs.openstack.org/developer/swift/middleware.html#module-swift.common.middleware.domain_remap) for details.

### **Ratelimit**

Ratelimit enables you to throttle resources such as requests per minute to provide denial of service protection. See <http://docs.openstack.org/developer/swift/middleware.html#module-swift.common.middleware.ratelimit> for details.

The Swift component consists of four different roles. Deploying *swift-dispersion* is optional:

#### **swift-storage**

The virtual object storage service. Install this role on all dedicated Swift Storage Nodes (at least two), but not on any other node.



### **Warning: swift-storage Needs Dedicated Machines**

Never install the swift-storage service on a node that runs other OpenStack components.



### *swift-ring-compute*

The ring maintains the information about the location of objects, replicas, and devices. It can be compared to an index, that is used by various OpenStack components to look up the physical location of objects. *swift-ring-compute* must only be installed on a single node; it is recommended to use a Control Node.

### *swift-proxy*

The Swift proxy server takes care of routing requests to Swift. Installing a single instance of *swift-proxy* on a Control Node is recommended. The *swift-proxy* role can be made highly available by deploying it on a cluster.

### *swift-dispersion*

Deploying *swift-dispersion* is optional. The Swift dispersion tools can be used to test the health of the cluster. It creates a heap of dummy objects (using 1% of the total space available). The state of these objects can be queried using the *swift-dispersion-report* query. *swift-dispersion* needs to be installed on a Control Node.

Deployment Raw

Drag nodes for deployment from Available Nodes into the selected Role

**Available Nodes**

Search

admin

cinder

compute1

control-data

control-network

control-services

control-trove

swift1

swift2

**swift-storage** Remove all

swift1

swift2

**swift-ring-compute** Remove all

control-services

**swift-proxy** Remove all

control-services

**swift-dispersion** Remove all

control-services

Save Apply Deactivate Cancel

FIGURE 10.11: THE SWIFT BARCLAMP: NODE DEPLOYMENT EXAMPLE



## 10.6.1 HA Setup for Swift

Swift replicates by design, so there is no need for a special HA setup. Make sure to fulfill the requirements listed in [Section 2.6.4.1, “Swift—Avoiding Points of Failure”](#).

## 10.7 Deploying Glance

Glance provides discovery, registration, and delivery services for virtual disk images. An image is needed to start an instance—it is its pre-installed root-partition. All images you want to use in your cloud to boot instances from, are provided by Glance. Glance must be deployed onto a Control Node. Glance can be made highly available by deploying it on a cluster.

There are a lot of options to configure Glance. The most important ones are explained below—for a complete reference refer to <http://github.com/crowbar/crowbar/wiki/Glance--barclamp> [↗](#).

### Important: Glance API Versions

As of SUSE OpenStack Cloud 7, the Glance API v1 is no longer enabled by default. Instead, Glance API v2 is used by default.

If you need to re-enable API v1 for compatibility reasons:

1. Switch to the *Raw* view of the Glance barclamp.
2. Search for the `enable_v1` entry and set it to `true`:

```
"enable_v1": true
```

In new installations, this entry is set to `false` by default. When upgrading from an older version of SUSE OpenStack Cloud it is set to `true` by default.

3. Apply your changes.

### *Image Storage: Default Storage Store*

Choose whether to use Swift or Ceph (*Rados*) to store the images. If you have deployed neither of these services, the images can alternatively be stored in an image file on the Control Node (*File*). If you have deployed Swift or Ceph, it is recommended to use it for Glance as well.



If using VMware as a hypervisor, it is recommended to use it for storing images, too (VMWare). This will make starting VMware instances much faster.

Depending on the storage back-end, there are additional configuration options available:

## File Store Parameters

### *Image Store Directory*

Specify the directory to host the image file. The directory specified here can also be an NFS share. See [Section 9.4.3, “Mounting NFS Shares on a Node”](#) for more information.

## Swift Store Parameters

### *Swift Container*

Set the name of the container to use for the images in Swift.

## RADOS Store Parameters

### **RADOS User for CephX Authentication**

If using a SUSE OpenStack Cloud internal Ceph setup, the user you specify here is created in case it does not exist. If using an external Ceph cluster, specify the user you have set up for Glance (see [Section 9.4.4, “Using an Externally Managed Ceph Cluster”](#) for more information).

### **RADOS Pool for Glance images**

If using a SUSE OpenStack Cloud internal Ceph setup, the pool you specify here is created in case it does not exist. If using an external Ceph cluster, specify the pool you have set up for Glance (see [Section 9.4.4, “Using an Externally Managed Ceph Cluster”](#) for more information).

## VMWare Store Parameters

### *vCenter Host/IP Address*

Name or IP address of the vCenter server.



### *vCenter Username / vCenter Password*

vCenter login credentials.

### *Datastores for Storing Images*

A comma-separated list of datastores specified in the format:  
DATACENTER\_NAME : DATASTORE\_NAME

### *Path on the datastore, where the glance images will be stored*

Specify an absolute path here.

### *SSL Support: Protocol*

Choose whether to encrypt public communication (*HTTPS*) or not (*HTTP*). If choosing *HTTPS*, refer to *SSL Support: Protocol* for configuration details.

### *Caching*

Enable and configure image caching in this section. By default, image caching is disabled. Learn more about Glance's caching feature at <http://docs.openstack.org/developer/glance/cache.html>.

### *Logging: Verbose Logging*

Shows debugging output in the log files when set to *true*.



Glance ✓

Save Apply Deactivate Cancel

Attributes Raw

Image Storage

Default Storage Store

Swift

Expose Backend Store Location

false

File Store Parameters

Image Store Directory

/var/lib/glance/images

Swift Store Parameters

Swift Container

glance

RADOS Store Parameters

RADOS user for CephX authentication

glance

FIGURE 10.12: THE GLANCE BARCLAMP

### 10.7.1 HA Setup for Glance

Glance can be made highly available by deploying it on a cluster. It is also strongly recommended to do so for the image data, too. The recommended way to achieve this is to use Swift or an external Ceph cluster for the image repository. If using a directory on the node instead (file storage back-end), you should set up shared storage on the cluster for it.

## 10.8 Deploying Cinder

Cinder, the successor of Nova Volume, provides volume block storage. It adds persistent storage to an instance that will persist until deleted (contrary to ephemeral volumes that will only persist while the instance is running).



Cinder can provide volume storage by using different back-ends such as local file, one or more local disks, Ceph (RADOS), VMware or network storage solutions from EMC, EqualLogic, Fujitsu or NetApp. Since SUSE OpenStack Cloud 5, Cinder supports using several back-ends simultaneously. It is also possible to deploy the same network storage back-end multiple times and therefore use different installations at the same time.

The attributes that can be set to configure Cinder depend on the back-end. The only general option is *SSL Support: Protocol* (see *SSL Support: Protocol* for configuration details).



### Tip: Adding or Changing a Back-End

When first opening the Cinder barclamp, the default proposal—*Raw Devices*— is already available for configuration. To optionally add a back-end, go to the section *Add New Cinder Back-End* and choose a *Type Of Volume* from the drop-down box. Optionally, specify the *Name for the Backend*. This is recommended when deploying the same volume type more than once. Existing back-end configurations (including the default one) can be deleted by clicking the trashcan icon if no longer needed. Note that at least one back-end must be configured.

## Raw devices (local disks)

### *Disk Selection Method*

Choose whether to only use the *First Available* disk or *All Available* disks. “Available disks” are all disks, currently not used by the system. Note that one disk (usually /dev/sda) of every block storage node is already used for the operating system and is not available for Cinder.

### *Name of Volume*

Specify a name for the Cinder volume.

## EMC (EMC<sup>2</sup> Storage)

### *IP address of the ECOM server / Port of the ECOM server*

IP address and Port of the ECOM server.

### *User Name / Password for accessing the ECOM server*

Login credentials for the ECOM server.



***VMAX port groups to expose volumes managed by this backend***

VMAX port groups that expose volumes managed by this back-end.

***Serial number of the VMAX Array***


Unique VMAX array serial number.

***Pool name within a given array***

Unique pool name within a given array.

***FAST Policy name to be used***

Name of the FAST Policy to be used. When specified, volumes managed by this back-end are managed as under FAST control.

For more information on the EMC driver refer to the OpenStack documentation at <http://docs.openstack.org/liberty/config-reference/content/emc-vmax-driver.html> .

## *EqualLogic*

EqualLogic drivers are included as a technology preview and are not supported.

## *Fujitsu ETERNUS DX*

***Connection Protocol***

Select the protocol used to connect, either *FibreChannel* or *iSCSI*.

***IP / Port for SMI-S***

IP address and port of the ETERNUS SMI-S Server.

***Username / Password for SMI-S***

Login credentials for the ETERNUS SMI-S Server.

***Snapshot (Thick/RAID Group) Pool Name***

Storage pool (RAID group) in which the volumes are created. Make sure to have created that RAID group on the server in advance. If a RAID group that does not exist is specified, the RAID group is created by using unused disk drives. The RAID level is automatically determined by the ETERNUS DX Disk storage system.



## Hitachi HUSVM

For information on configuring the Hitachi HUSVM back-end, refer to <http://docs.openstack.org/newton/config-reference/block-storage/drivers/hitachi-storage-volume-driver.html> .

## NetApp

### ***Storage Family Type/Storage Protocol***

SUSE OpenStack Cloud can either use “Data ONTAP” in *7-Mode* or in *Clustered Mode*. In *7-Mode* vFiler will be configured, in *Clustered Mode* vServer will be configured. The *Storage Protocol* can either be set to *iSCSI* or *NFS*. Choose the driver and the protocol your NetApp is licensed for.

### ***Server host name***

The management IP address for the 7-Mode storage controller or the cluster management IP address for the clustered Data ONTAP.

### ***Transport Type***

Transport protocol for communicating with the storage controller or clustered Data ONTAP. Supported protocols are HTTP and HTTPS. Choose the protocol your NetApp is licensed for.

### ***Server port***

The port to use for communication. Port 80 is usually used for HTTP, 443 for HTTPS.

### ***User Name/Password for Accessing NetApp***

Login credentials.

### ***The vFiler Unit Name for provisioning OpenStack volumes (netapp\_vfiler)***

The vFiler unit to be used for provisioning of OpenStack volumes. This setting is only available in *7-Mode*.

### ***Restrict provisioning on iSCSI to these volumes (netapp\_volume\_list)***

Provide a list of comma-separated volumes names to be used for provisioning. This setting is only available when using iSCSI as storage protocol.



## NFS

### List of NFS Exports

A list of accessible physical file systems on an NFS server.

### Mount Options

Additional options for mounting NFS exports.

## RADOS (Ceph)

### *Use Ceph Deployed by Crowbar*

Select *true* if you have deployed Ceph with SUSE OpenStack Cloud. In case you are using an external Ceph cluster (see [Section 9.4.4, “Using an Externally Managed Ceph Cluster”](#) for setup instructions), select *false*.

### *RADOS pool for Cinder volumes*

Name of the pool used to store the Cinder volumes.

### *RADOS user (Set Only if Using CephX authentication)*

Ceph user name.

## VMware Parameters

### *vCenter Host/IP Address*

Host name or IP address of the vCenter server.

### *vCenter Username / vCenter Password*

vCenter login credentials.

### *vCenter Cluster Names for Volumes*

Provide a comma-separated list of cluster names.

### *Folder for Volumes*

Path to the directory used to store the Cinder volumes.

### *CA file for verifying the vCenter certificate*

Absolute path to the vCenter CA certificate.



*vCenter SSL Certificate is insecure (for instance, self-signed)*

Default value: `false` (the CA truststore is used for verification). Set this option to `true` when using self-signed certificates to disable certificate checks. This setting is for testing purposes only and must not be used in production environments!

## *Local file*

### *Volume File Name*

Absolute path to the file to be used for block storage.

### *Maximum File Size (GB)*

Maximum size of the volume file. Make sure not to overcommit the size, since it will result in data loss.

### *Name of Volume*

Specify a name for the Cinder volume.



### Note: Using *Local File* for Block Storage

Using a file for block storage is not recommended for production systems, because of performance and data security reasons.

## *Other driver*

Lets you manually pick and configure a driver. Only use this option for testing purposes, it is not supported.



Cinder ✓

Save Apply Deactivate Cancel

Attributes [Raw](#)

Cinder Backends

Backend: default	
------------------	--

Raw Devices Parameters

**Disk selection method**

First Available

**Name of Volume**

cinder-volumes

Add new Cinder Backend

**Type of Volume**

Raw Devices

**Name for Backend**

Add Backend

SSL Support

**Protocol**

HTTP

FIGURE 10.13: THE CINDER BARCLAMP

The Cinder component consists of two different roles:

#### *cinder-controller*

The Cinder controller provides the scheduler and the API. Installing *cinder-controller* on a Control Node is recommended.

#### *cinder-volume*

The virtual block storage service. It can be installed on a Control Node. However, it is recommended to deploy it on one or more dedicated nodes supplied with sufficient networking capacity to handle the increased in network traffic.



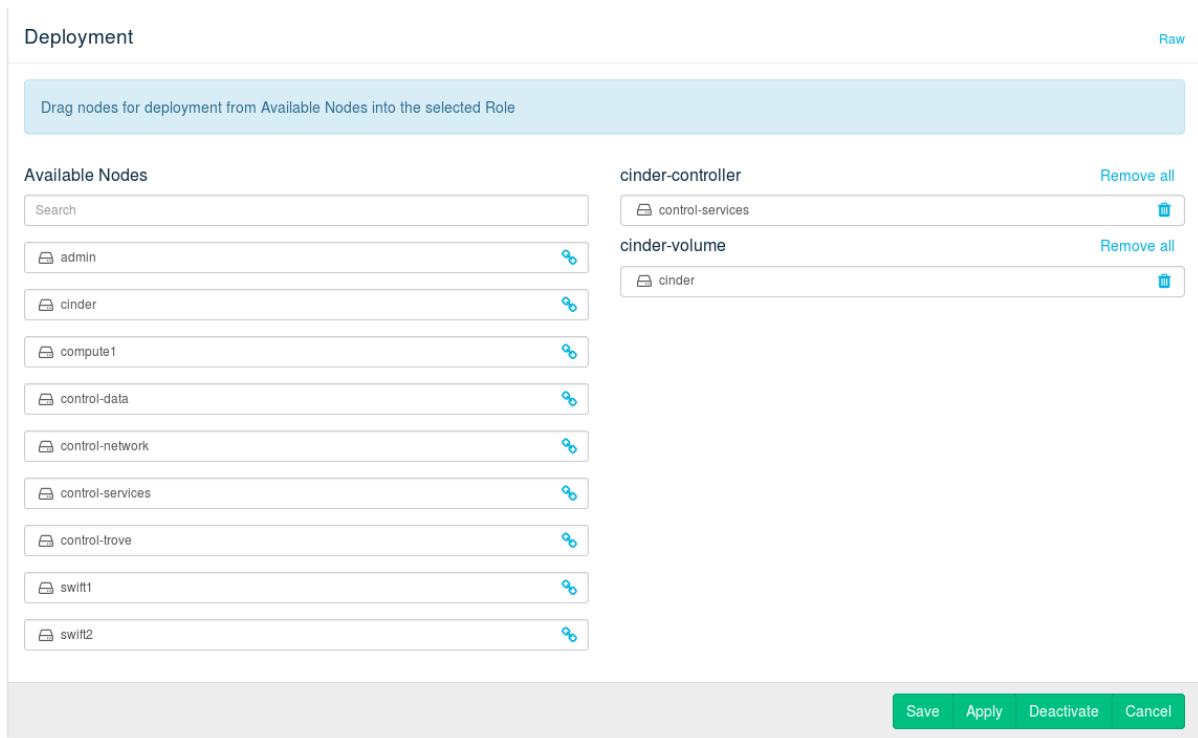


FIGURE 10.14: THE CINDER BARCLAMP: NODE DEPLOYMENT EXAMPLE

### 10.8.1 HA Setup for Cinder

While the *cinder-controller* role can be deployed on a cluster, deploying *cinder-volume* on a cluster is not supported. Therefore it is generally recommended to deploy *cinder-volume* on several nodes—this ensures the service continues to be available even when a node fails. In addition with Ceph or a network storage solution, such a setup minimizes the potential downtime.

If using Ceph or a network storage is not an option, you need to set up a shared storage directory (for example, with NFS), mount it on all cinder volume nodes and use the *Local File* back-end with this shared directory. Using *Raw Devices* is not an option, since local disks cannot be shared.

## 10.9 Deploying Neutron

Neutron provides network connectivity between interface devices managed by other OpenStack components (most likely Nova). The service works by enabling users to create their own networks and then attach interfaces to them.




Neutron must be deployed on a Control Node. You first need to choose a core plug-in—*ml2* or *vmware*. Depending on your choice, more configuration options will become available.

The *vmware* option lets you use an existing VMWare NSX installation. Using this plugin is not a prerequisite for the VMWare vSphere hypervisor support. However, it is needed when wanting to have security groups supported on VMWare compute nodes. For all other scenarios, choose *ml2*.

The only global option that can be configured is *SSL Support*. Choose whether to encrypt public communication (*HTTPS*) or not (*HTTP*). If choosing *HTTPS*, refer to [SSL Support: Protocol](#) for configuration details.

## ml2 (Modular Layer 2)

### Modular Layer 2 Mechanism Drivers

Select which mechanism driver(s) shall be enabled for the *ml2* plugin. It is possible to select more than one driver by holding the  key while clicking. Choices are:

***openvswitch***. Supports GRE, VLAN and VLANX networks (to be configured via the *Modular Layer 2 type drivers* setting).

***linuxbridge***. Supports VLANs only. Requires to specify the *Maximum Number of VLANs*.

***cisco\_nexus***. Enables Neutron to dynamically adjust the VLAN settings of the ports of an existing Cisco Nexus switch when instances are launched. It also requires *openvswitch* which will automatically be selected. With *Modular Layer 2 type drivers*, *vlan* must be added. This option also requires to specify the *Cisco Switch Credentials*. See [Appendix H, Using Cisco Nexus Switches with Neutron](#) for details.

### Use Distributed Virtual Router Setup

With the default setup, all intra-Compute Node traffic flows through the network Control Node. The same is true for all traffic from floating IPs. In large deployments the network Control Node can therefore quickly become a bottleneck. When this option is set to *true*, network agents will be installed on all compute nodes. This will de-centralize the network traffic, since Compute Nodes will be able to directly “talk” to each other. Distributed Virtual Routers (DVR) require the *openvswitch* driver and will not work with the *linuxbridge* driver. HyperV Compute Nodes will not be supported—network traffic for these nodes will be routed via the Control Node on which *neutron-network* is deployed. For details on DVR refer to <https://wiki.openstack.org/wiki/Neutron/DVR>.



## Modular Layer 2 Type Drivers

This option is only available when having chosen the *openvswitch* or the *cisco\_nexus* mechanism drivers. Options are *vlan*, *gre* and *vxlan*. It is possible to select more than one driver by holding the `Ctrl` key while clicking.

When multiple type drivers are enabled, you need to select the *Default Type Driver for Provider Network*, that will be used for newly created provider networks. This also includes the *nova\_fixed* network, that will be created when applying the Neutron proposal. When manually creating provider networks with the `neutron` command, the default can be overwritten with the `--provider:network_type type` switch. You will also need to set a *Default Type Driver for Tenant Network*. It is not possible to change this default when manually creating tenant networks with the `neutron` command. The non-default type driver will only be used as a fallback.

Depending on your choice of the type driver, more configuration options become available.

*gre*. Having chosen *gre*, you also need to specify the start and end of the tunnel ID range.

*vlan*. The option *vlan* requires you to specify the *Maximum number of VLANs*.

*vxlan*. Having chosen *vxlan*, you also need to specify the start and end of the VNI range.

### ! Important: Drivers for HyperV Compute Nodes

HyperV Compute Nodes do not support *gre* and *vxlan*. If your environment includes a heterogeneous mix of Compute Nodes including HyperV nodes, make sure to select *vlan*. This can be done in addition to the other drivers.

### ! Important: Drivers for the VMware Compute Node

Neutron must not be deployed with the *openvswitch with gre* plug-in. See [Appendix G, VMware vSphere Installation Instructions](#) for details.

## z/VM Configuration

### xCAT Host/IP Address

Host name or IP address of the xCAT Management Node.



**xCAT Username/Password**

xCAT login credentials.

**rdev list for physnet1 vswitch uplink (if available)**

List of rdev addresses that should be connected to this vswitch.

**xCAT IP Address on Management Network**

IP address of the xCAT management interface.

**Net Mask of Management Network**

Net mask of the xCAT management interface.

## vmware

This plug-in requires to configure access to the VMWare NSX service.

***VMWare NSX User Name/Password***

Login credentials for the VMWare NSX server. The user needs to have administrator permissions on the NSX server.

***VMWare NSX Controllers***

Enter the IP address and the port number (IP-ADDRESS:PORT) of the controller API endpoint. If the port number is omitted, port 443 will be used. You may also enter multiple API endpoints (comma-separated), provided they all belong to the same controller cluster. When multiple API endpoints are specified, the plugin will load balance requests on the various API endpoints.

***UUID of the NSX Transport Zone/Gateway Service***

The UUIDs for the transport zone and the gateway service can be obtained from the NSX server. They will be used when networks are created.



The screenshot shows the Neutron Barclamp configuration window. At the top, there's a header with the 'Neutron' logo and a green checkmark, and a row of buttons: 'Save', 'Apply', 'Deactivate', and 'Cancel'. Below the header, the 'Attributes' section is visible with a 'Raw' link. The 'DHCP Domain' field contains 'openstack.local'. The 'Networking Plugin' section shows 'Plugin' set to 'ml2'. Under 'Modular Layer 2 mechanism drivers', a list contains 'openvswitch' (selected), 'linuxbridge', and 'cisco\_nexus'. Under 'Modular Layer 2 type drivers', a list contains 'gre' (selected), 'vlan', and 'vxlan'. The 'Use Distributed Virtual Router setup' field is set to 'true'.

**FIGURE 10.15: THE NEUTRON BARCLAMP**

The Neutron component consists of two different roles:

#### ***neutron-server***

*neutron-server* provides the scheduler and the API. It needs to be installed on a Control Node.

#### ***neutron-network***

This service runs the various agents that manage the network traffic of all the cloud instances. It acts as the DHCP and DNS server and as a gateway for all cloud instances. It is recommend to deploy this role on a dedicated node supplied with sufficient network capacity.



FIGURE 10.16: THE NEUTRON BARCLAMP

## 10.9.1 Using Infoblox IPAM Plug-in

In the Neutron barclamp, you can enable support for the infoblox IPAM plug-in and configure it. For configuration, the `infoblox` section contains the subsections `grids` and `grid_defaults`.

### grids

This subsection must contain at least one entry. For each entry, the following parameters are required:

- `admin_user_name`
- `admin_password`
- `grid_master_host`
- `grid_master_name`
- `data_center_name`

You can also add multiple entries to the `grids` section. However, the upstream infoblox agent only supports a single grid currently.



## grid\_defaults

This subsection contains the default settings that are used for each grid (unless you have configured specific settings within the grids section).

For detailed information on all infoblox-related configuration settings, see <https://github.com/openstack/networking-infoblox/blob/master/doc/source/installation.rst>.

Currently, all configuration options for infoblox are only available in the raw mode of the Neutron barclamp. To enable support for the infoblox IPAM plug-in and configure it, proceed as follows:

1. *Edit* the Neutron barclamp proposal or create a new one.

2. Click *Raw* and search for the following section:

```
"use_infoblox": false,
```

3. To enable support for the infoblox IPAM plug-in, change this entry to:

```
"use_infoblox": true,
```

4. In the grids section, configure at least one grid by replacing the example values for each parameter with real values.
5. If you need specific settings for a grid, add some of the parameters from the grid\_defaults section to the respective grid entry and adjust their values. Otherwise Crowbar applies the default setting to each grid when you save the barclamp proposal.
6. Save your changes and apply them.

## 10.9.2 HA Setup for Neutron

Neutron can be made highly available by deploying *neutron-server* and *neutron-network* on a cluster. While *neutron-server* may be deployed on a cluster shared with other services, it is strongly recommended to use a dedicated cluster solely for the *neutron-network* role.



## 10.10 Deploying Nova

Nova provides key services for managing the SUSE OpenStack Cloud, sets up the Compute Nodes. SUSE OpenStack Cloud currently supports KVM, Xen and Microsoft Hyper V and VMWare vSphere. The unsupported QEMU option is included to enable test setups with virtualized nodes. The following attributes can be configured for Nova:

### *Scheduler Options: Virtual RAM to Physical RAM allocation ratio*

Set the “overcommit ratio” for RAM for instances on the Compute Nodes. A ratio of 1.0 means no overcommitment. Changing this value is not recommended.

### *Scheduler Options: Virtual CPU to Physical CPU allocation ratio*

Set the “overcommit ratio” for CPUs for instances on the Compute Nodes. A ratio of 1.0 means no overcommitment.

### *Scheduler Options: Virtual Disk to Physical Disk allocation ratio*

Set the “overcommit ratio” for virtual disks for instances on the Compute Nodes. A ratio of 1.0 means no overcommitment.

### *Scheduler Options: Reserved Memory for Nova Compute hosts (MB)*

Amount of reserved host memory that is not used for allocating VMs by Nova Compute.

### *Live Migration Support: Enable Libvirt Migration*

Allows to move KVM and Xen instances to a different Compute Node running the same hypervisor (cross hypervisor migrations are not supported). Useful when a Compute Node needs to be shut down or rebooted for maintenance or when the load of the Compute Node is very high. Instances can be moved while running (Live Migration).



### **Warning: Libvirt Migration and Security**

Enabling the libvirt migration option will open a TCP port on the Compute Nodes that allows access to all instances from all machines in the admin network. Ensure that only authorized machines have access to the admin network when enabling this option.

### *Live Migration Support: Setup Shared Storage*

Sets up a directory /var/lib/nova/instances on the Control Node on which *nova-controller* is running. This directory is exported via NFS to all compute nodes and will host a copy of the root disk of *all* Xen instances. This setup is required for live migration of



Xen instances (but not for KVM) and is used to provide central handling of instance data. Enabling this option is only recommended if Xen live migration is required—otherwise it should be disabled.



### **Warning: Do Not Set Up Shared Storage When instances are Running**

Setting up shared storage in a SUSE OpenStack Cloud where instances are running will result in connection losses to all running instances. It is strongly recommended to set up shared storage when deploying SUSE OpenStack Cloud. If it needs to be done at a later stage, make sure to shut down all instances prior to the change.

#### ***KVM Options: Enable Kernel Samepage Merging***

Kernel SamePage Merging (KSM) is a Linux Kernel feature which merges identical memory pages from multiple running processes into one memory region. Enabling it optimizes memory usage on the Compute Nodes when using the KVM hypervisor at the cost of slightly increasing CPU usage.

#### ***z/VM Configuration: xCAT Host/IP Address***

IP address of the xCAT management interface.

#### ***z/VM Configuration: xCAT Username/Password***

xCAT login credentials.

#### ***z/VM Configuration: z/VM disk pool for ephemeral disks***

Name of the disk pool for ephemeral disks.

#### ***z/VM Configuration: z/VM disk pool type for ephemeral disks (ECKD or FBA)***

Choose disk pool type for ephemeral disks.

#### ***z/VM Configuration: z/VM Host Managed By xCAT MN***

z/VM host managed by xCAT Management Node.

#### ***z/VM Configuration: User profile for creating a z/VM userid***

User profile to be used for creating a z/VM userid.

#### ***z/VM Configuration: Default zFCP SCSI Disk Pool***

Default zFCP SCSI disk pool.

#### ***z/VM Configuration: The xCAT MN node name***

Name of the xCAT Management Node.



### *z/VM Configuration: The xCAT MN node public SSH key*

Public SSH key of the xCAT Management Node.

### VMware vCenter Settings

Setting up VMware support is described in a separate section. See [Appendix G, VMware vSphere Installation Instructions](#).

### SSL Support: Protocol

Choose whether to encrypt public communication (*HTTPS*) or not (*HTTP*). If choosing *HTTPS*, refer to [SSL Support: Protocol](#) for configuration details.

### VNC Settings: Keymap

Change the default VNC keymap for instances. By default, `en-us` is used. Enter the value in lowercase, either as a two character code (such as `de` or `jp`) or, as a five character code such as `de-ch` or `en-uk`, if applicable.

### VNC Settings: NoVNC Protocol

After having started an instance you can display its VNC console in the OpenStack Dashboard (Horizon) via the browser using the noVNC implementation. By default this connection is not encrypted and can potentially be eavesdropped.

Enable encrypted communication for noVNC by choosing *HTTPS* and providing the locations for the certificate key pair files.

### *Logging: Verbose Logging*

Shows debugging output in the log files when set to *true*.



### Note: Custom Vendor Data for Instances

You can pass custom vendor data to all VMs via Nova's metadata server. For example, information about a custom SMT server can be used by the SUSE guest images to automatically configure the repositories for the guest.

1. To pass custom vendor data, switch to the *Raw* view of the Nova barclamp.
2. Search for the following section:

```
"metadata": {  
  "vendordata": {  
    "json": "{}"  
  }  
}
```



```
}
```

3. As value of the `json` entry, enter valid JSON data. For example:

```
"metadata": {  
  "vendordata": {  
    "json": "{\"CUSTOM_KEY\": \"CUSTOM_VALUE\"}"  
  }  
}
```

The string needs to be escaped because the barclamp file is in JSON format, too.

Use the following command to access the custom vendor data from inside a VM:

```
curl -s http://METADATA_SERVER/openstack/latest/vendor_data.json
```

The IP address of the metadata server is always the same from within a VM. For more details, see <https://www.suse.com/communities/blog/vms-get-access-metadata-neutron/>.



Nova
Save Apply Deactivate Cancel

Attributes
Raw

Scheduler Options

Virtual RAM to Physical RAM allocation ratio

Virtual CPU to Physical CPU allocation ratio

Virtual Disk to Physical Disk allocation ratio

Reserved Memory for Nova Compute hosts (MB)

Live Migration Support

Enable Libvirt Migration

Set up Shared Storage on nova-controller for Nova instances

Shared Storage for Nova instances has been manually configured

FIGURE 10.17: THE NOVA BARCLAMP

The Nova component consists of eight different roles:

#### *nova-controller*

Distributing and scheduling the instances is managed by the *nova-controller*. It also provides networking and messaging services. *nova-controller* needs to be installed on a Control Node.

#### *nova-compute-kvm / nova-compute-qemu / nova-compute-vmware / nova-compute-xen / nova-compute-zvm*

Provides the hypervisors (KVM, QEMU, VMware vSphere, Xen, and z/VM) and tools needed to manage the instances. Only one hypervisor can be deployed on a single compute node. To use different hypervisors in your cloud, deploy different hypervisors to different Compute Nodes. A *nova-compute-\** role needs to be installed on every Compute Node. However, not all hypervisors need to be deployed.



Each image that will be made available in SUSE OpenStack Cloud to start an instance is bound to a hypervisor. Each hypervisor can be deployed on multiple Compute Nodes (except for the VMWare vSphere role, see below). In a multi-hypervisor deployment you should make sure to deploy the `nova-compute-*` roles in a way, that enough compute power is available for each hypervisor.



### Note: Re-assigning Hypervisors

Existing `nova-compute-*` nodes can be changed in a production SUSE OpenStack Cloud without service interruption. You need to “evacuate” the node, re-assign a new `nova-compute` role via the Nova barclamp and *Apply* the change. `nova-compute-vmware` can only be deployed on a single node.



### Important: Deploying VMware vSphere (vmware)

VMware vSphere is not supported “natively” by SUSE OpenStack Cloud—it rather delegates requests to an existing vCenter. It requires preparations at the vCenter and post install adjustments of the Compute Node. See [Appendix G, VMware vSphere Installation Instructions](#) for instructions. `nova-compute-vmware` can only be deployed on a single Compute Node.



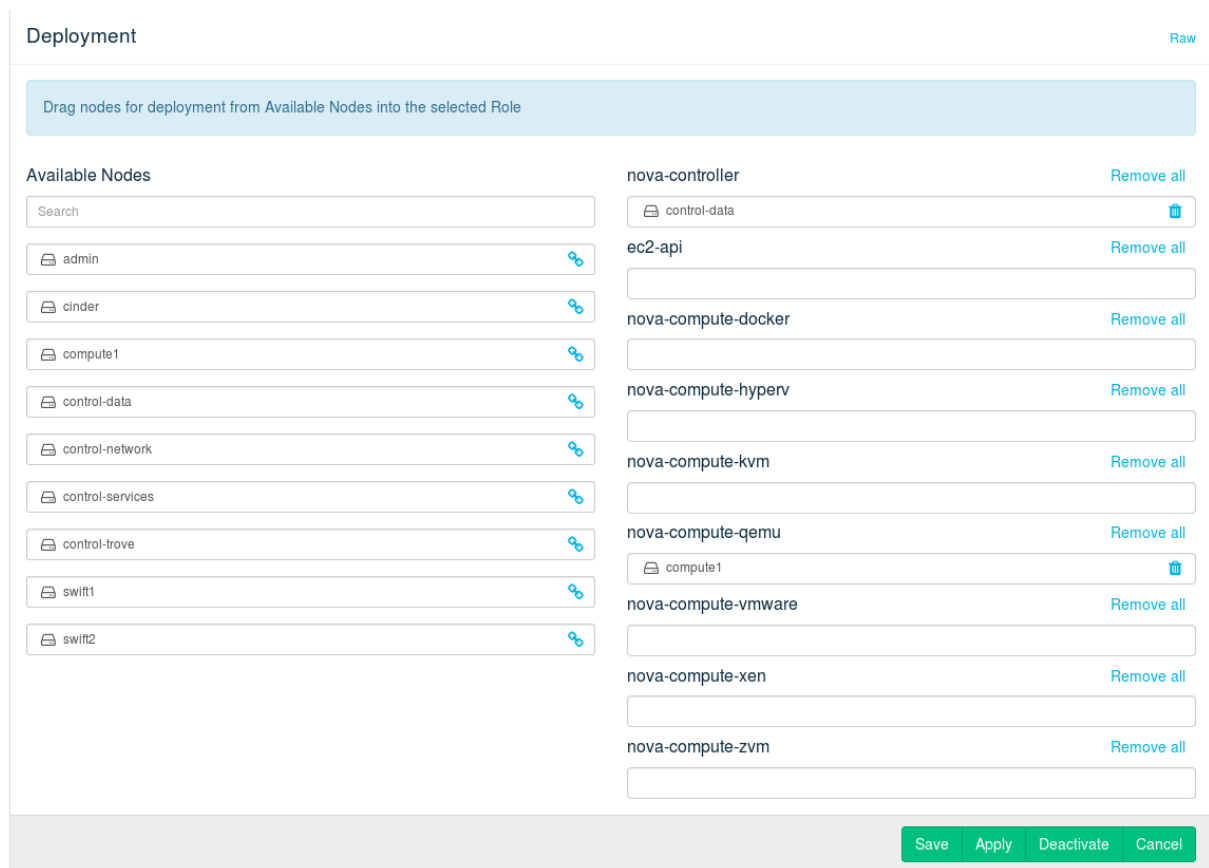


FIGURE 10.18: THE NOVA BARCLAMP: NODE DEPLOYMENT EXAMPLE WITH TWO KVM NODES

## 10.10.1 HA Setup for Nova

Making *nova-controller* highly available requires no special configuration—it is sufficient to deploy it on a cluster.

To enable High Availability for Compute Nodes, deploy the following roles to one or more clusters with remote nodes:

- nova-compute-kvm
- nova-compute-qemu
- nova-compute-xen

The cluster to which you deploy the roles above can be completely independent of the one to which the role nova-controller is deployed.





### Tip: Shared Storage

It is recommended to use shared storage for the `/var/lib/nova/instances` directory. If an external NFS server is used, enable the following option in the Nova barclamp proposal: *Shared Storage for Nova instances has been manually configured*.

## 10.11 Deploying Horizon (OpenStack Dashboard)

The last component that needs to be deployed is Horizon, the OpenStack Dashboard. It provides a Web interface for users to start and stop instances and for administrators to manage users, groups, roles, etc. Horizon should be installed on a Control Node. To make Horizon highly available, deploy it on a cluster.

The following attributes can be configured:

### Session Timeout

Timeout (in minutes) after which a user is been logged out automatically. The default value is set to four hours (240 minutes).



### Note: Timeouts Larger than Four Hours

Every Horizon session requires a valid Keystone token. These tokens also have a lifetime of four hours (14400 seconds). Setting the Horizon session timeout to a value larger than 240 will therefore have no effect, and you will receive a warning when applying the barclamp.

To successfully apply a timeout larger than four hours, you first need to adjust the Keystone token expiration accordingly. To do so, open the Keystone barclamp in *Raw* mode and adjust the value of the key `token_expiration`. Note that the value has to be provided in *seconds*. When the change is successfully applied, you can adjust the Horizon session timeout (in *minutes*). Note that extending the Keystone token expiration may cause scalability issues in large and very busy SUSE OpenStack Cloud installations.



### ***User Password Validation: Regular expression used for password validation***

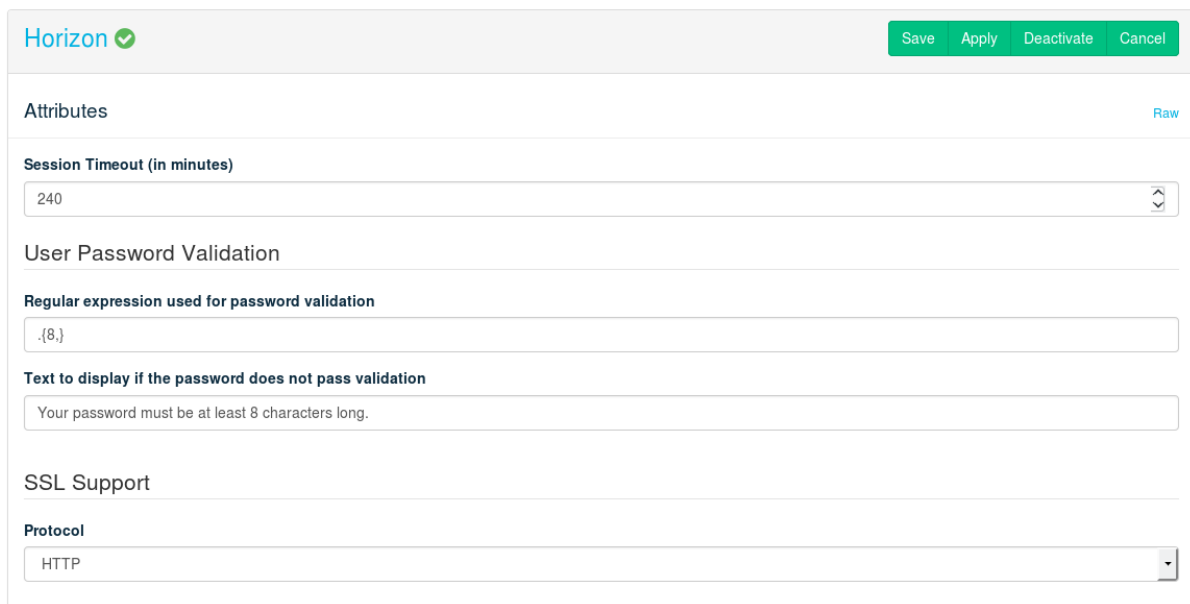
Specify a regular expression with which to check the password. The default expression ( `.{8,}` ) tests for a minimum length of 8 characters. The string you enter is interpreted as a Python regular expression (see <http://docs.python.org/2.7/library/re.html#module-re> <sup>↗</sup> for a reference).

### ***User Password Validation: Text to display if the password does not pass validation***

Error message that will be displayed in case the password validation fails.

### **SSL Support: Protocol**

Choose whether to encrypt public communication (*HTTPS*) or not (*HTTP*). If choosing *HTTPS*, you have two choices. You can either *Generate (self-signed) certificates* or provide the locations for the certificate key pair files and,—optionally— the certificate chain file. Using self-signed certificates is for testing purposes only and should never be used in production environments!



The screenshot shows the Horizon Barclamp configuration interface. At the top, there's a header with the 'Horizon' logo and a green checkmark, and a row of buttons: 'Save', 'Apply', 'Deactivate', and 'Cancel'. Below the header, the 'Attributes' section is visible, with a 'Raw' link on the right. The 'Session Timeout (in minutes)' is set to 240. The 'User Password Validation' section contains a 'Regular expression used for password validation' field with the value '.{8,}', and a 'Text to display if the password does not pass validation' field with the value 'Your password must be at least 8 characters long.'. The 'SSL Support' section shows the 'Protocol' dropdown menu set to 'HTTP'.


**FIGURE 10.19: THE HORIZON BARCLAMP**

## **10.11.1 HA Setup for Horizon**

Making Horizon highly available requires no special configuration—it is sufficient to deploy it on a cluster.



## 10.12 Deploying Heat (Optional)

Heat is a template-based orchestration engine that enables you to, for example, start workloads requiring multiple servers or to automatically restart instances if needed. It also brings auto-scaling to SUSE OpenStack Cloud by automatically starting additional instances if certain criteria are met. For more information about Heat refer to the OpenStack documentation at <http://docs.openstack.org/developer/heat/> .

Heat should be deployed on a Control Node. To make Heat highly available, deploy it on a cluster.

The following attributes can be configured for Heat:

### *Verbose Logging*

Shows debugging output in the log files when set to *true*.

### SSL Support: Protocol

Choose whether to encrypt public communication (*HTTPS*) or not (*HTTP*). If choosing *HTTPS*, refer to *SSL Support: Protocol* for configuration details.



Heat
Save Apply Deactivate Cancel

Attributes
Raw

Verbose Logging

true

Debug

false

SSL Support

Protocol

HTTP

Deployment
Raw

Drag nodes for deployment from Available Nodes into the selected Role

Available Nodes

Search

admin

cinder

compute1

control-data

control-network

control-services

control-trove

swift1

swift2

heat-server

Remove all

control-data

Save Apply Deactivate Cancel

FIGURE 10.20: THE HEAT BARCLAMP

## 10.12.1 Enabling Identity Trusts Authorization (Optional)

Heat uses Keystone Trusts to delegate a subset of user roles to the Heat engine for deferred operations (see [Steve Hardy's blog \(http://hardysteven.blogspot.de/2014/04/heat-auth-model-updates-part-1-trusts.html\)](http://hardysteven.blogspot.de/2014/04/heat-auth-model-updates-part-1-trusts.html) for details ). It can either delegate all user roles or only



those specified in the `trusts_delegated_roles` setting. Consequently, all roles listed in `trusts_delegated_roles` need to be assigned to a user, otherwise the user will not be able to use Heat.

The recommended setting for `trusts_delegated_roles` is `Member`, since this is the default role most users are likely to have. This is also the default setting when installing SUSE OpenStack Cloud from scratch.

On installations where this setting is introduced through an upgrade, `trusts_delegated_roles` will be set to `heat_stack_owner`. This is a conservative choice to prevent breakage in situations where unprivileged users may already have been assigned the `heat_stack_owner` role to enable them to use Heat but lack the `Member` role. As long as you can ensure that all users who have the `heat_stack_owner` role also have the `Member` role, it is both safe and recommended to change `trusts_delegated_roles` to `Member`, since the latter is the default role assigned by our hybrid LDAP back-end among others.

To view or change the `trusts_delegated_role` setting you need to open the Heat barclamp and click *Raw* in the *Attributes* section. Search for the `trusts_delegated_roles` setting and modify the list of roles as desired.

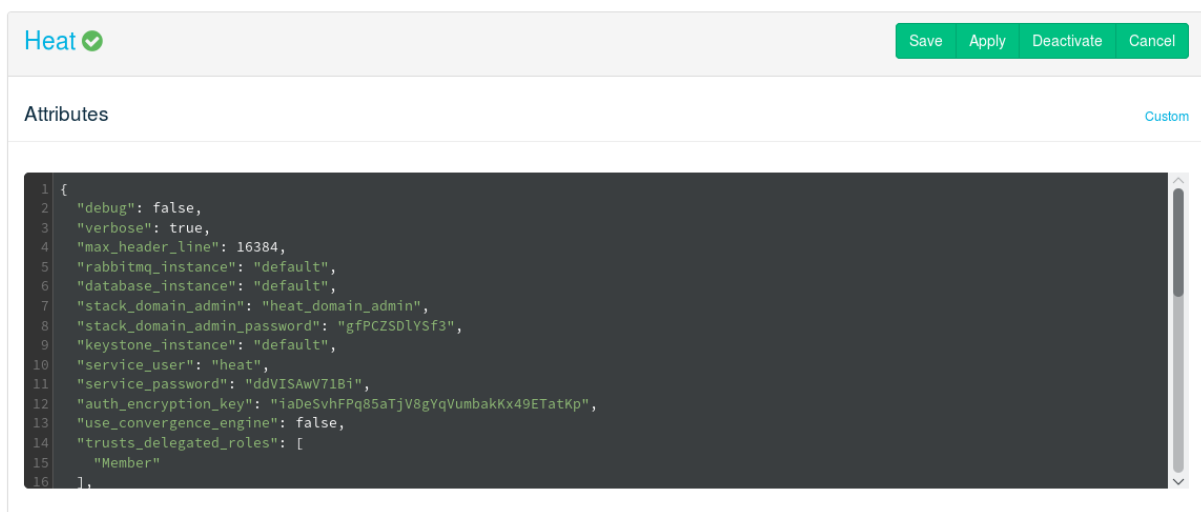


FIGURE 10.21: THE HEAT BARCLAMP: RAW MODE





### Warning: Empty Value

An empty value for `trusts_delegated_roles` will delegate *all* of user roles to Heat. This may create a security risk for users who are assigned privileged roles, such as `admin`, because these privileged roles will also be delegated to the Heat engine when these users create Heat stacks.

## 10.12.2 HA Setup for Heat

Making Heat highly available requires no special configuration—it is sufficient to deploy it on a cluster.

## 10.13 Deploying Ceilometer (Optional)

Ceilometer collects CPU and networking data from SUSE OpenStack Cloud. This data can be used by a billing system to enable customer billing. Deploying Ceilometer is optional.

For more information about Ceilometer refer to the OpenStack documentation at <http://docs.openstack.org/developer/ceilometer/>.



### Important: Ceilometer Restrictions

As of SUSE OpenStack Cloud 7 data measuring is only supported for KVM, Xen and Windows instances. Other hypervisors and SUSE OpenStack Cloud features such as object or block storage will not be measured.

The following attributes can be configured for Ceilometer:

#### Interval used for CPU/disk/network/other meter updates (in seconds)

Specify an interval in seconds after which Ceilometer performs an update of the specified meter.

#### Evaluation interval for threshold alarms (in seconds)

Set the interval after which to check whether to raise an alarm because a threshold has been exceeded. For performance reasons, do not set a value lower than the default (60s).



## Use MongoDB instead of standard database

Ceilometer collects a large amount of data, which is written to a database. In a production system it is recommended to use a separate database for Ceilometer rather than the standard database that is also used by the other SUSE OpenStack Cloud components. MongoDB is optimized to write a lot of data. As of SUSE OpenStack Cloud 7, MongoDB is only included as a technology preview and not supported.

## How long are metering/event samples kept in the database (in days)

Specify how long to keep the data. -1 means that samples are kept in the database forever.

## Verbose Logging

Shows debugging output in the log files when set to *true*.

The screenshot shows the Ceilometer configuration interface. At the top, there is a header with the Ceilometer logo and a warning icon, and buttons for Save, Apply, Delete, and Cancel. Below the header, there is a section titled 'Attributes' with a 'Raw' link. The main configuration area contains several settings, each with a label and a value field with up/down arrows:

- Interval used for CPU meter updates (in seconds): 600
- Interval used for disk meter updates (in seconds): 600
- Interval used for network meter updates (in seconds): 600
- Interval used for other meter updates (in seconds): 600
- Evaluation interval for threshold alarms (in seconds): 600
- Use MongoDB instead of standard database: false
- How long are metering samples kept in the database (in days): 30
- How long are event samples kept in the database (in days): 30
- Verbose Logging: true

Below the 'Use MongoDB instead of standard database' setting, there is a yellow warning box that says: 'MongoDB support is included as a technology preview.'

Below the 'How long are metering samples kept in the database (in days)' setting, there is a blue link that says: '-1 means that samples are kept in the database forever'.

Below the 'How long are event samples kept in the database (in days)' setting, there is a blue link that says: '-1 means that samples are kept in the database forever'.

FIGURE 10.22: THE CEILOMETER BARCLAMP



The Ceilometer component consists of five different roles:

### *ceilometer-server*

The Ceilometer API server role. This role needs to be deployed on a Control Node. Ceilometer collects approximately 200 bytes of data per hour and instance. Unless you have a very huge number of instances, there is no need to install it on a dedicated node.

### *ceilometer-polling*

The polling agent listens to the message bus to collect data. It needs to be deployed on a Control Node. It can be deployed on the same node as *ceilometer-server*.

### *ceilometer-agent*

The compute agents collect data from the compute nodes. They need to be deployed on all KVM and Xen compute nodes in your cloud (other hypervisors are currently not supported).

### *ceilometer-swift-proxy-middleware*

An agent collecting data from the Swift nodes. This role needs to be deployed on the same node as *swift-proxy*.

Deployment Raw

Drag nodes for deployment from Available Nodes into the selected Role

**Available Nodes**

Search

- admin
- cinder
- compute1
- control-data
- control-network
- control-services
- control-trove
- swift1
- swift2

**ceilometer-server** Remove all

- control-data

**ceilometer-central** Remove all

- control-data

**ceilometer-agent** Remove all

- compute1

**ceilometer-agent-hyperv** Remove all

- 

**ceilometer-swift-proxy-middleware** Remove all

- control-services

Save Apply Delete Cancel

FIGURE 10.23: THE CEILOMETER BARCLAMP: NODE DEPLOYMENT



## 10.13.1 HA Setup for Ceilometer

Making Ceilometer highly available requires no special configuration—it is sufficient to deploy the roles *ceilometer-server* and *ceilometer-polling* on a cluster. The cluster needs to consist of an odd number of nodes, otherwise the Ceilometer deployment will fail.

## 10.14 Deploying Manila

Manila provides coordinated access to shared or distributed file systems, similar to what Cinder does for block storage. These file systems can be shared between instances in SUSE OpenStack Cloud.

Manila uses different back-ends. As of SUSE OpenStack Cloud 7 currently supported back-ends include *Hitachi HNAS*, *NetApp Driver*, and *CephFS*. Two more back-end options, *Generic Driver* and *Other Driver* are available for testing purposes and are not supported.



### Note: Limitations for CephFS Backend

Manila uses some CephFS features that are currently *not* supported by the SUSE Linux Enterprise 12 SP2 CephFS kernel client:

- RADOS namespaces
- MDS path restrictions
- Quotas

As a result, to access CephFS shares provisioned by Manila, you must use `ceph-fuse`. For details, see [http://docs.openstack.org/developer/manila/devref/cephfs\\_native\\_driver.html](http://docs.openstack.org/developer/manila/devref/cephfs_native_driver.html).

When first opening the Manila barclamp, the default proposal *Generic Driver* is already available for configuration. To replace it, first delete it by clicking the trashcan icon and then choose a different back-end in the section *Add new Manila Backend*. Select a *Type of Share* and—optionally—provide a *Name for Backend*. Activate the back-end with *Add Backend*. Note that at least one back-end must be configured.



The attributes that can be set to configure Cinder depend on the back-end:

## *Back-end: Generic*

The generic driver is included as a technology preview and is not supported.

## *Hitachi HNAS*

### *Specify which EVS this backend is assigned to*

Provide the name of the Enterprise Virtual Server that the selected back-end is assigned to.

### *Specify IP for mounting shares*

IP address for mounting shares.

### *Specify file-system name for creating shares*

Provide a file-system name for creating shares.

### *HNAS management interface IP*

IP address of the HNAS management interface for communication between Manila controller and HNAS.

### *HNAS username Base64 String*

HNAS username Base64 String required to perform tasks like creating file-systems and network interfaces.

### *HNAS user password*

HNAS user password. Required only if private key is not provided.

### *RSA/DSA private key*

RSA/DSA private key necessary for connecting to HNAS. Required only if password is not provided.

### *The time to wait for stalled HNAS jobs before aborting*

Time in seconds to wait before aborting stalled HNAS jobs.



## Back-end: Netapp

### *Name of the Virtual Storage Server (vserver)*

Host name of the Virtual Storage Server.

### *Server Host Name*

The name or IP address for the storage controller or the cluster.

### *Server Port*

The port to use for communication. Port 80 is usually used for HTTP, 443 for HTTPS.

### *User name/Password for Accessing NetApp*

Login credentials.

### *Transport Type*

Transport protocol for communicating with the storage controller or cluster. Supported protocols are HTTP and HTTPS. Choose the protocol your NetApp is licensed for.

## Back-end: CephFS

### Use Ceph deployed by Crowbar

Set to true to use Ceph deployed with Crowbar.

## Back-end: Manual

Lets you manually pick and configure a driver. Only use this option for testing purposes, it is not supported.



Manila
Save Apply Delete Cancel

Attributes
Raw

Share backends

Backend: default

Generic backend Parameters

The generic driver can be used for testing but is not supported.

Service instance user

root

Service instance password

Name or UUID of the service instance VM

Service network name or IP

Tenant network name or IP

Add new Manila Backend

Type of Share

Generic

Name for Backend

Add Backend

**FIGURE 10.24: THE MANILA BARCLAMP**

The Manila component consists of two different roles:

#### *manila-server*

The Manila server provides the scheduler and the API. Installing it on a Control Node is recommended.

#### *manila-share*

The shared storage service. It can be installed on a Control Node, but it is recommended to deploy it on one or more dedicated nodes supplied with sufficient disk space and networking capacity, since it will generate a lot of network traffic.



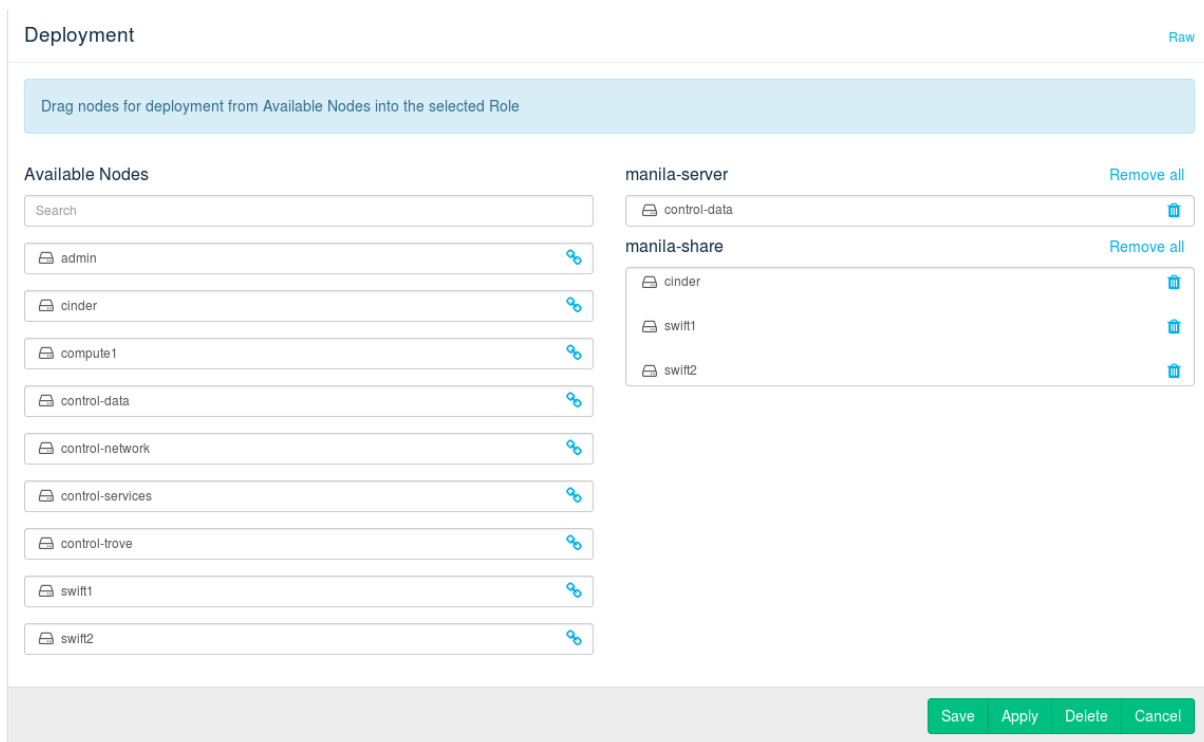


FIGURE 10.25: THE MANILA BARCLAMP: NODE DEPLOYMENT EXAMPLE

### 10.14.1 HA Setup for Manila

While the *manila-server* role can be deployed on a cluster, deploying *manila-share* on a cluster is not supported. Therefore it is generally recommended to deploy *manila-share* on several nodes—this ensures the service continues to be available even when a node fails.

## 10.15 Deploying Trove (Optional)

Trove is a Database-as-a-Service for SUSE OpenStack Cloud. It provides database instances which can be used by all instances. With Trove being deployed, SUSE OpenStack Cloud users no longer need to deploy and maintain their own database applications. For more information about Trove; refer to the OpenStack documentation at <http://docs.openstack.org/developer/trove/>.



## Important: Technology Preview

Trove is only included as a technology preview and not supported.

Trove should be deployed on a dedicated Control Node.

The following attributes can be configured for Trove:

### *Enable Trove Volume Support*

When enabled, Trove will use a Cinder volume to store the data.

### *Logging: Verbose*

Increases the amount of information that is written to the log files when set to *true*.

### *Logging: Debug*

Shows debugging output in the log files when set to *true*.



Trove

Save
Apply
Delete
Cancel

Trove is included as a technology preview.

Attributes
Raw

Enable Trove Volume Support
false

Logging

Verbose
true

Debug
false

Deployment
Raw

Drag nodes for deployment from Available Nodes into the selected Role

Available Nodes

Search

admin

cinder

compute1

control-data

control-network

control-services

control-trove

swift1

swift2

trove-server

control-trove

Remove all

Save
Apply
Delete
Cancel

FIGURE 10.26: THE TROVE BARCLAMP

## 10.15.1 HA Setup for Trove

An HA Setup for Trove is currently not supported.



## 10.16 Deploying Tempest (Optional)

Tempest is an integration test suite for SUSE OpenStack Cloud written in Python. It contains multiple integration tests for validating your SUSE OpenStack Cloud deployment. For more information about Tempest refer to the OpenStack documentation at <http://docs.openstack.org/developer/tempest/>.



### Important: Technology Preview

Tempest is only included as a technology preview and not supported.

Tempest may be used for testing whether the intended setup will run without problems. It should not be used in a production environment.

Tempest should be deployed on a Control Node.

The following attributes can be configured for Tempest:

#### *Choose User name / Password*

Credentials for a regular user. If the user does not exist, it will be created.

#### *Choose Tenant*

Tenant to be used by Tempest. If it does not exist, it will be created. It is safe to stick with the default value.

#### *Choose Tempest Admin User name/Password*

Credentials for an admin user. If the user does not exist, it will be created.



Tempest

Save

Apply

Delete

Cancel

Tempest is not supported.

Attributes

Raw

Tempest user and a tenant that will be created for test run

Choose username

tempest-user-ugL9YBLsU79Y

Choose password

.....

Choose tenant

tempest-tenant-2hcWhkMUwZKr

Choose Tempest admin username

tempest-adm-DI6Z1P8QveZ8

Choose Tempest admin password

.....

Deployment

Raw

Drag nodes for deployment from Available Nodes into the selected Role

Available Nodes

Search

admin

cinder

compute1

control-data

control-network

control-services

control-trove

swift1

swift2

tempest

Remove all

control-data

Save

Apply

Delete

Cancel

FIGURE 10.27: THE TEMPEST BARCLAMP





## Tip: Running Tests

To run tests with Tempest, log in to the Control Node on which Tempest was deployed. Change into the directory `/var/lib/openstack-tempest-test`. To get an overview of available commands, run:

```
./run_tempest.sh --help
```

To serially invoke a subset of all tests (“the gating smoketests”) to help validate the working functionality of your local cloud instance, run the following command. It will save the output to a log file `tempest_CURRENT_DATE.log`.

```
./run_tempest.sh --no-virtual-env -serial --smoke 2>&1 \  
| tee "tempest_$(date +%Y-%m-%d_%H%M%S).log"
```

## 10.16.1 HA Setup for Tempest

Tempest cannot be made highly available.

## 10.17 Deploying Magnum (Optional)

Magnum is an OpenStack project which offers container orchestration engines for deploying and managing containers as first class resources in OpenStack.

For more information about Magnum, see the OpenStack documentation at <http://docs.openstack.org/developer/magnum/>.

For information on how to deploy a Kubernetes cluster (either from command line or from the Horizon Dashboard), see the *Supplement to Administrator Guide and End User Guide*. It is available from <https://www.suse.com/documentation/cloud>.

The following *Attributes* can be configured for Magnum:

### **Logging: Verbose**

Increases the amount of information that is written to the log files when set to *true*.

### **Logging: Debug**

Shows debugging output in the log files when set to *true*.



### Trustee Domain: Domain Name

Domain name to use for creating trustee for bays.

### Certificate Manager: Plugin

To store certificates, either use the *Barbican* OpenStack service, a local directory (*Local*), or the *Magnum Database* (*x590keypair*).

The screenshot shows the 'Edit Proposal' form for the Magnum barclamp in the SUSE OpenStack Cloud interface. The top navigation bar includes 'Nodes', 'Network', 'Barclamps', 'Utilities', and 'Help'. The form is titled 'Magnum' and has buttons for 'Save', 'Apply', 'Delete', and 'Cancel'. It contains several sections: 'Attributes' with a 'Raw' link, 'Logging' with a 'Verbose' dropdown set to 'true' and a 'Debug' dropdown set to 'false', 'Trustee Domain' with a 'Domain Name' text input containing 'magnum', and 'Certificate Manager' with a 'Plugin' dropdown set to 'Local'.

FIGURE 10.28: THE MAGNUM BARCLAMP

The Magnum barclamp consists of the following roles: *magnum-server*. It can either be deployed on a Control Node or on a cluster—see [Section 10.17.1, “HA Setup for Magnum”](#). When deploying the role onto a Control Node, additional RAM is required for the Magnum server. It is recommended to only deploy the role to a Control Node that has 16 GB RAM.

## 10.17.1 HA Setup for Magnum

Making Magnum highly available requires no special configuration. It is sufficient to deploy it on a cluster.



## 10.18 Deploying Barbican (Optional)

Barbican is a component designed for storing secrets in a secure and standardized manner protected by Keystone authentication. Secrets include SSL certificates and passwords used by various OpenStack components.

Barbican settings can be configured in Raw mode only. To do this, open the Barbican barclamp *Attribute* configuration in *Raw* mode.

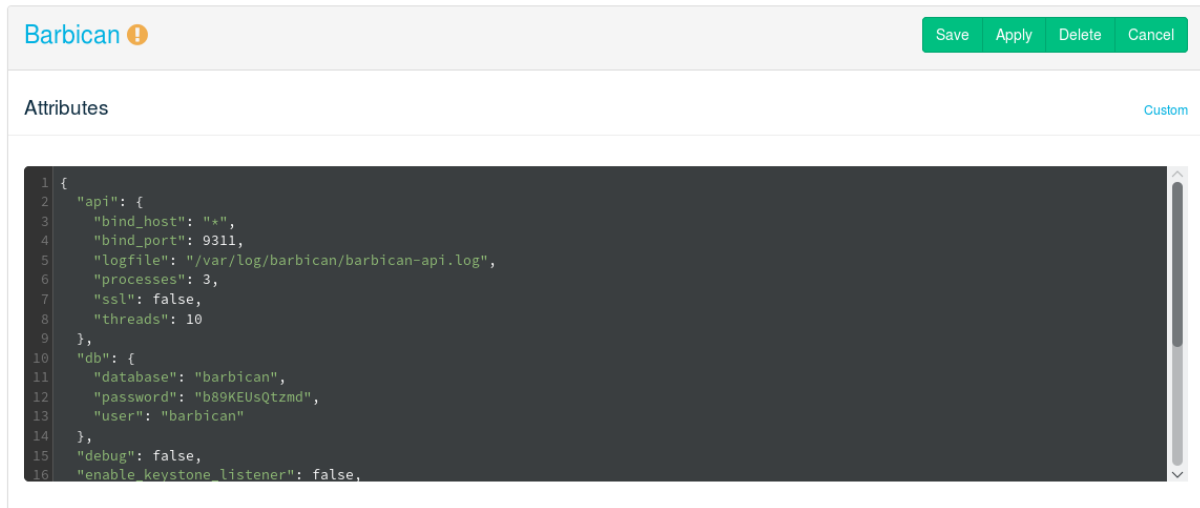


FIGURE 10.29: THE BARBICAN BARCLAMP: RAW MODE

When configuring Barbican, pay particular attention to the following settings:

- bind\_host Bind host for the Barbican API service
- bind\_port Bind port for the Barbican API service
- processes Number of API processes to run in Apache
- ssl Enable or disable SSL
- threads Number of API worker threads
- debug Enable or disable debug logging
- enable\_keystone\_listener Enable or disable the Keystone listener services
- kek An encryption key (fixed-length 32-byte Base64-encoded value) for Barbican's simple\_crypto plugin. If left unspecified, the key will be generated automatically.





## Note: Existing Encryption Key

If you plan to restore and use the existing Barbican database after a full reinstall (including a complete wipe of the Crowbar node), make sure to save the specified encryption key beforehand. You will need to provide it after the full reinstall in order to access the data in the restored Barbican database.

## 10.18.1 HA Setup for Barbican

To make Barbican highly available, assign the *barbican-controller* role to the Controller Cluster.

## 10.19 Deploying Sahara

Sahara provides users with simple means to provision data processing frameworks (such as Hadoop, Spark, and Storm) on OpenStack. This is accomplished by specifying configuration parameters such as the framework version, cluster topology, node hardware details, etc.

### Logging: Verbose

Set to true to increase the amount of information written to the log files.

#### ● Edit Proposal

The screenshot shows the 'Sahara' barclamp interface. At the top, there's a header bar with the title 'Sahara' and a warning icon, and buttons for 'Save', 'Apply', 'Delete', and 'Cancel'. Below the header, there's a section titled 'Attributes' with a 'Raw' link. Underneath, the 'Logging' section is expanded, showing a 'Verbose' checkbox that is checked, with the value 'true' displayed in a text input field.

FIGURE 10.30: THE SAHARA BARCLAMP

## 10.19.1 HA Setup for Sahara

Making Sahara highly available requires no special configuration. It is sufficient to deploy it on a cluster.



## 10.20 How to Proceed

With a successful deployment of the OpenStack Dashboard, the SUSE OpenStack Cloud installation is finished. To be able to test your setup by starting an instance one last step remains to be done—uploading an image to the Glance component. Refer to the *Supplement to Administrator Guide and End User Guide*, chapter *Manage images* for instructions. Images for SUSE OpenStack Cloud can be built in SUSE Studio. Refer to the *Supplement to Administrator Guide and End User Guide*, section *Building Images with SUSE Studio*.

Now you can hand over to the cloud administrator to set up users, roles, flavors, etc.—refer to the *Administrator Guide* for details. The default credentials for the OpenStack Dashboard are user name admin and password crowbar.



## IV Maintenance and Support

11 SUSE OpenStack Cloud Maintenance **191**

12 Troubleshooting and Support **208**



# 11 SUSE OpenStack Cloud Maintenance

## 11.1 Keeping the Nodes Up-to-date

Keeping the nodes in SUSE OpenStack Cloud up-to-date requires an appropriate setup of the update and pool repositories and the deployment of either the *Updater* barclamp or the SUSE Manager barclamp. For details, see [Section 5.2, “Update and Pool Repositories”](#), [Section 9.4.1, “Deploying Node Updates with the Updater Barclamp”](#), and [Section 9.4.2, “Configuring Node Updates with the SUSE Manager Client Barclamp”](#).

If one of those barclamps is deployed, patches are installed on the nodes. Installing patches that do not require a reboot of a node does not come with any service interruption. If a patch (for example, a kernel update) requires a reboot after the installation, services running on the machine that is rebooted will not be available within SUSE OpenStack Cloud. Therefore it is strongly recommended to install those patches during a maintenance window.



### Note: No Maintenance Mode

As of SUSE OpenStack Cloud 7 it is not possible to put SUSE OpenStack Cloud into “Maintenance Mode”.

### CONSEQUENCES WHEN REBOOTING NODES

#### Administration Server

While the Administration Server is offline, it is not possible to deploy new nodes. However, rebooting the Administration Server has no effect on starting instances or on instances already running.

#### Control Nodes

The consequences a reboot of a Control Node has, depends on the services running on that node:

**Database, Keystone, RabbitMQ, Glance, Nova:** No new instances can be started.

**Swift:** No object storage data is available. If Glance uses Swift, it will not be possible to start new instances.



Cinder, Ceph: No block storage data is available.

Neutron: No new instances can be started. On running instances the network will be unavailable.

Horizon. Horizon will be unavailable. Starting and managing instances can be done with the command line tools.

### Compute Nodes

Whenever a Compute Node is rebooted, all instances running on that particular node will be shut down and must be manually restarted. Therefore it is recommended to “evacuate” the node by migrating instances to another node, before rebooting it.

## 11.2 Service Order on SUSE OpenStack Cloud Start-up or Shutdown

In case you need to restart your complete SUSE OpenStack Cloud (after a complete shut down or a power outage), the nodes and services need to be started in the following order:

### SERVICE ORDER ON START-UP

1. Control Node/Cluster on which the Database is deployed
2. Control Node/Cluster on which RabbitMQ is deployed
3. Control Node/Cluster on which Keystone is deployed
4. For Swift:
  - a. Storage Node on which the swift-storage role is deployed
  - b. Storage Node on which the swift-proxy role is deployed
5. For Ceph:
  - a. Storage Node on which the ceph-mon role is deployed
  - b. Storage Node on which the ceph-osd role is deployed
  - c. Storage Node on which the ceph-radosgw and ceph-mds roles are deployed (if deployed on different nodes: in either order)



6. Any remaining Control Node/Cluster. The following additional rules apply:

- The Control Node/Cluster on which the neutron-server role is deployed needs to be started before starting the node/cluster on which the neutron-l3 role is deployed.
- The Control Node/Cluster on which the nova-controller role is deployed needs to be started before starting the node/cluster on which Heat is deployed.

7. Compute Nodes

If multiple roles are deployed on a single Control Node, the services are automatically started in the correct order on that node. If you have more than one node with multiple roles, make sure they are started as closely as possible to the order listed above.

If you need to shut down SUSE OpenStack Cloud, the nodes and services need to be terminated in reverse order than on start-up:

**SERVICE ORDER ON SHUT-DOWN**

1. Compute Nodes

2. Control Node/Cluster on which Heat is deployed

3. Control Node/Cluster on which the nova-controller role is deployed

4. Control Node/Cluster on which the neutron-l3 role is deployed

5. All Control Node(s)/Cluster(s) on which neither of the following services is deployed: Database, RabbitMQ, and Keystone.

6. For Swift:

- a. Storage Node on which the swift-proxy role is deployed
- b. Storage Node on which the swift-storage role is deployed

7. For Ceph:

- a. Storage Node on which the ceph-radosgw and ceph-mds roles are deployed (if deployed on different nodes: in either order)
- b. Storage Node on which the ceph-osd role is deployed
- c. Storage Node on which the ceph-mon role is deployed



8. Control Node/Cluster on which Keystone is deployed
9. Control Node/Cluster on which RabbitMQ is deployed
10. Control Node/Cluster on which the Database is deployed

## 11.3 Upgrading from SUSE OpenStack Cloud 6 to SUSE OpenStack Cloud 7

Upgrading from SUSE OpenStack Cloud 6 to SUSE OpenStack Cloud 7 can either be done via a Web interface or from the command line. Starting with SUSE OpenStack Cloud 7, a “non-disruptive” update is supported, when the requirements listed at [Non-Disruptive Upgrade Requirements](#) are met. The non-disruptive upgrade guarantees a fully functional SUSE OpenStack Cloud operation during the upgrade procedure. The only feature that is not supported during the non-disruptive upgrade procedure is the deployment of additional nodes.

If the requirements for a non-disruptive upgrade are not met, the upgrade procedure will be done in “normal mode”. When live-migration is set up, instances will be migrated to another node, before the respective Compute Node will get updated to ensure continuous operation. However, you will not be able to access instances during the upgrade of the Control Nodes.

### 11.3.1 Requirements

When starting the upgrade process, several checks are performed to determine whether the SUSE OpenStack Cloud is in an upgradeable state and whether a non-disruptive update would be supported:

#### GENERAL UPGRADE REQUIREMENTS

- All nodes need to have the latest SUSE OpenStack Cloud 6 updates *and* the latest SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 12 SP2 updates installed. If this is not the case, refer to [Section 9.4.1, “Deploying Node Updates with the Updater Barclamp”](#) for instructions on how to update.
- All allocated nodes need to be turned on and have to be in state “ready”.
- All barclamp proposals need to have been successfully deployed. In case a proposal is in state “failed”, the upgrade procedure will refuse to start. Fix the issue or—if possible—remove the proposal.



- In case the pacemaker barclamp is deployed, all clusters need to be in a healthy state.
- The `dns-server` role must be applied to the Administration Server.
- The following repositories need to be available on a server that is accessible from the Administration Server. The HA repositories are only needed if you have an HA setup. It is recommended to use the same server that also hosts the respective repositories of the current version.

SUSE-OpenStack-Cloud-7-Pool

SUSE-OpenStack-Cloud-7-Update

SLES12-SP2-Pool

SLES12-SP2-Update

SLE-HA12-SP2-Pool (for HA setups only)

SLE-HA12-SP2-Update (for HA setups only)

Do not add these repositories to the SUSE OpenStack Cloud repository configuration, yet. This needs to be done during the upgrade procedure.

#### NON-DISRUPTIVE UPGRADE REQUIREMENTS

- All Control Nodes need to be set up highly available.
- Live-migration support needs to be configured and enabled for the Compute Nodes. The amount of free resources (CPU and RAM) on the Compute Nodes needs to be sufficient to evacuate the nodes one by one.

## 11.3.2 Upgrading from the Web Interface

TO BE DONE

## 11.3.3 Upgrading from the Command line

The upgrade procedure on the command line is performed by using the program `crowbarctl`. For general help, run `crowbarctl help`. To get help on a certain subcommand, run `crowbarctl COMMAND help`.

To review the process of the upgrade procedure, you may call `crowbarctl upgrade status` at any time. Steps may have three states: `pending`, `running`, and `passed`.



1. To start the upgrade procedure from the command line, log in to the Administration Server
2. Perform the preliminary checks to determine whether the upgrade requirements are met:

```
crowbarctl upgrade prechecks
```

The command's result is shown in a table. Make sure the column *Errors* does not contain any entries. If not, make sure to fix the errors and restart the **precheck** command afterwards. Do not proceed before all checks are passed.

```
crowbarctl upgrade prechecks
```

Check ID	Passed	Required	Errors	Help
network_checks	true	true		
cloud_healthy	true	true		
maintenance_updates_installed	true	true		
compute_status	true	false		
ha_configured	true	false		
clusters_healthy	true	true		

Depending on the outcome of the checks, it is automatically decided whether the upgrade procedure will continue in non-disruptive or in normal mode.

3. Prepare the nodes by transitioning them into the “upgrade” state and stopping the chef daemon:

```
crowbarctl upgrade prepare
```

Depending of the size of your SUSE OpenStack Cloud deployment, this step may take some time. Use the command **crowbarctl upgrade status** to monitor the status of the process named **steps.prepare.status**. It needs to be in state **passed** before you proceed:

```
crowbarctl upgrade status
```

Status	Value
current_step	backup_crowbar
current_substep	
current_node	
remaining_nodes	
upgraded_nodes	



crowbar_backup		
openstack_backup		
steps.prechecks.status	passed	
steps.prepare.status	passed	
steps.backup_crowbar.status	pending	
steps.repocheck_crowbar.status	pending	
steps.admin.status	pending	
steps.database.status	pending	
steps.repocheck_nodes.status	pending	
steps.services.status	pending	
steps.backup_openstack.status	pending	
steps.nodes.status	pending	
+-----+-----+		

4. Create a backup of the existing Administration Server installation. In case something goes wrong during the upgrade procedure of the Administration Server you can restore the original state from this backup with the command **`crowbarctl backup restore NAME`**

```
crowbarctl upgrade backup crowbar
```

To list all existing backups including the one you have just created, run the following command:

```
crowbarctl backup list
```

+-----+-----+-----+-----+
Name   Created   Size   Version
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
crowbar_upgrade_1486116507   2017-02-03T10:08:30.721Z   209 KB   3.0
+-----+-----+-----+-----+

5. This step prepares the upgrade of the Administration Server by checking the availability of the update and pool repositories for SUSE OpenStack Cloud 7 and SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 12 SP2. Run the following command:

```
crowbarctl upgrade repocheck crowbar
```

+-----+-----+
Status   Value
+-----+-----+
os.available   false
os.repos   SLES12-SP2-Pool
SLES12-SP2-Updates
os.errors.x86_64.missing   SLES12-SP2-Pool
SLES12-SP2-Updates



openstack.available	false
openstack.repos	SUSE-OpenStack-Cloud-7-Pool
	SUSE-OpenStack-Cloud-7-Updates
openstack.errors.x86_64.missing	SUSE-OpenStack-Cloud-7-Pool
	SUSE-OpenStack-Cloud-7-Updates

All four required repositories are reported as missing, because they have not yet been added to the Crowbar configuration. To add them to the Administration Server proceed as follows.

Note that this step is for setting up the repositories for the Administration Server, not for the nodes in SUSE OpenStack Cloud (this will be done in a subsequent step).

- a. Start **yast repositories** and proceed with *Continue*. Replace the repositories SLES12-SP1-Pool and SLES12-SP1-Updates with the respective SP2 repositories. If you prefer to use zypper over YaST, you may alternatively make the change using **zypper mr**.
- b. Next, replace the SUSE-OpenStack-Cloud-6 update and pool repositories with the respective SUSE OpenStack Cloud 7 versions.

Once the repository configuration on the Administration Server has been updated, run the command to check the repositories again. If the configuration is correct, the result should look like the following:

```
crowbarctl upgrade repocheck crowbar
```

Status	Value
os.available	true
os.repos	SLES12-SP2-Pool
	SLES12-SP2-Updates
openstack.available	true
openstack.repos	SUSE-OpenStack-Cloud-7-Pool
	SUSE-OpenStack-Cloud-7-Updates



6. Now that the repositories are available, the Administration Server itself will be upgraded. The update will run in the background using **zypper dup**. Once all packages have been upgraded, the Administration Server will be rebooted and you will be logged out. To start the upgrade run:

```
crowbarctl upgrade admin
```

7. Starting with SUSE OpenStack Cloud 7, Crowbar uses a PostgreSQL database to store its data. With this step, the database is created on the Administration Server. Alternatively a database on a remote host can be used.

To create the database on the Administration Server proceed as follows:

- a. Login to the Administration Server.
- b. To create the database on the Administration Server with the default credentials (crowbar/crowbar) for the database, run

```
crowbarctl upgrade database new
```

To use a different user name and password, run the following command instead:

```
crowbarctl upgrade database new \  
--db-username=USERNAME --db-password=PASSWORD
```

- c. To connect to an existing PostgreSQL database, use the following command rather than creating a new database:

```
crowbarctl upgrade database connect --db-username=USERNAME \  
--db-password=PASSWORD --database=DBNAME \  
--host=IP_or_FQDN --port=PORT
```

8. After the Administration Server has been successfully updated, the Control Nodes and Compute Nodes will be upgraded. At first the availability of the repositories used to provide packages for the SUSE OpenStack Cloud nodes is tested.

Note that the configuration for these repositories differs from the one for the Administration Server that was already done in a previous step. In this step the repository locations are made available to Crowbar rather than to libzypp on the Administration Server. To check the repository configuration run the following command:

```
crowbarctl upgrade repocheck nodes
```



Status	Value
ha.available	false
ha.repos	SLES12-SP2-HA-Pool
	SLES12-SP2-HA-Updates
ha.errors.x86_64.missing	SLES12-SP2-HA-Pool
	SLES12-SP2-HA- Updates
os.available	false
os.repos	SLES12-SP2-Pool
	SLES12-SP2-Updates
os.errors.x86_64.missing	SLES12-SP2-Pool
	SLES12-SP2-Updates
openstack.available	false
openstack.repos	SUSE-OpenStack-Cloud-7-Pool
	SUSE-OpenStack-Cloud-7-Updates
openstack.errors.x86_64.missing	SUSE-OpenStack-Cloud-7-Pool
	SUSE-OpenStack-Cloud-7-Updates

To update the locations for the listed repositories, start **yast crowbar** and proceed as described in [Section 7.4, "Repositories"](#).

Once the repository configuration for Crowbar has been updated, run the command to check the repositories again to determine, whether the current configuration is correct.

```
crowbarctl upgrade repocheck nodes
```

Status	Value
ha.available	true
ha.repos	SLE12-SP2-HA-Pool
	SLE12-SP2-HA-Updates
os.available	true
os.repos	SLES12-SP2-Pool
	SLES12-SP2-Updates
openstack.available	true
openstack.repos	SUSE-OpenStack-Cloud-7-Pool
	SUSE-OpenStack-Cloud-7-Updates





## Important: Product Media Repository Copies

To PXE boot new nodes, an additional SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 12 SP2 repository—a copy of the installation system—is required. Although not required during the upgrade procedure, it is recommended to set up this directory now. Refer to [Section 5.1, “Copying the Product Media Repositories”](#) for details. If you had also copied the SUSE OpenStack Cloud 6 installation media (optional), you may also want to provide the SUSE OpenStack Cloud 7 the same way.

Once the upgrade procedure has been successfully finished, you may delete the previous copies of the installation media in `/srv/tftpboot/suse-12.1/x86_64/install` and `/srv/tftpboot/suse-12.1/x86_64/repos/Cloud`.

9. To ensure the status of the nodes does not change during the upgrade process, the majority of the OpenStack services will be stopped on the nodes now. As a result, the OpenStack API will no longer be accessible. The instances, however, will continue to run and will also be accessible. Run the following command:

```
crowbarctl upgrade services
```

This step takes a while to finish. Monitor the process by running **`crowbarctl upgrade status`**. Do not proceed before `steps.services.status` is set to `passed`.

10. The last step before upgrading the nodes is to make a backup of the OpenStack PostgreSQL database. The database dump will be stored on the Administration Server and can be used to restore the database in case something goes wrong during the upgrade.

```
crowbarctl upgrade backup openstack
```

11. The final step of the upgrade procedure is upgrading the nodes. To start the process, enter:

```
crowbarctl upgrade nodes all
```

The upgrade process runs in the background and can be queried with **`crowbarctl upgrade status`**. Depending on the size of your SUSE OpenStack Cloud it may take several hours, especially when performing a non-disruptive update. In that case, the Compute Nodes are updated one-by-one after instances have been live-migrated to other nodes.



Instead of upgrading all nodes you may also upgrade the Control Nodes first and individual Compute Nodes afterwards. Refer to `crowbarctl upgrade nodes --help` for details.

## 11.4 Upgrading to an HA Setup

There are a few issues to pay attention to when making an existing SUSE OpenStack Cloud deployment highly available (by setting up HA clusters and moving roles to these clusters). To make existing services highly available, proceed as follows. Note that moving to an HA setup cannot be done without SUSE OpenStack Cloud service interruption, because it requires OpenStack components to be restarted.

### Important: Teaming Network Mode is Required for HA

Teaming network mode is required for an HA setup of SUSE OpenStack Cloud. If you are planning to move your cloud to an HA setup at a later point in time, make sure to deploy SUSE OpenStack Cloud with teaming network mode from the beginning. Otherwise a migration to an HA setup is not supported.

1. Make sure to have read the sections *Section 1.5, “HA Setup”* and *Section 2.6, “High Availability”* of this manual and taken any appropriate action.
2. Make the HA repositories available on the Administration Server as described in *Section 5.2, “Update and Pool Repositories”*. Run the command `chef-client` afterward.
3. Set up your cluster(s) as described in *Section 10.1, “Deploying Pacemaker (Optional, HA Setup Only)”*.
4. To move a particular role from a regular control node to a cluster, you need to stop the associated service(s) before re-deploying the role on a cluster:
  - a. Log in to each node on which the role is deployed and stop its associated service(s) (a role can have multiple services). Do so by running the service's start/stop script with the stop argument, for example:

```
rcopenstack-keystone stop
```



See *Appendix C, Roles and Services in SUSE OpenStack Cloud* for a list of roles, services and start/stop scripts.

- b. The following roles need additional treatment:

database-server (Database barclamp)

1. Stop the database on the node the Database barclamp is deployed with the command:

```
rcpostgresql stop
```

2. Copy `/var/lib/pgsql` to a temporary location on the node, for example:

```
cp -ax /var/lib/pgsql /tmp
```

3. Redeploy the Database barclamp to the cluster. The original node may also be part of this cluster.

4. Log in to a cluster node and run the following command to determine which cluster node runs the `postgresql` service:

```
crm_mon -l
```

5. Log in to the cluster node running `postgresql`.

6. Stop the `postgresql` service:

```
crm resource stop postgresql
```

7. Copy the data backed up earlier to the cluster node:

```
rsync -av --delete  
NODE_WITH_BACKUP:/tmp/pgsql/ /var/lib/pgsql/
```

8. Restart the `postgresql` service:

```
crm resource start postgresql
```

Copy the content of `/var/lib/pgsql/data/` from the original database node to the cluster node with DRBD or shared storage.



### keystone-server (Keystone barclamp)

If using Keystone with PKI tokens, the PKI keys on all nodes need to be re-generated. This can be achieved by removing the contents of `/var/cache/*/keystone-signing/` on the nodes. Use a command similar to the following on the Administration Server as `root`:

```
for NODE in NODE1
    NODE2 NODE3; do
    ssh $NODE rm /var/cache/*/keystone-signing/*
done
```

5. Go to the barclamp featuring the role you want to move to the cluster. From the left side of the *Deployment* section, remove the node the role is currently running on. Replace it with a cluster from the *Available Clusters* section. Then apply the proposal and verify that application succeeded via the Crowbar Web interface. You can also check the cluster status via Hawk or the `crm` / `crm_mon` CLI tools.
6. Repeat these steps for all roles you want to move to cluster. See [Section 2.6.2.1, “Control Node\(s\)—Avoiding Points of Failure”](#) for a list of services with HA support.

### ! Important: SSL Certificates

Moving to an HA setup also requires to create SSL certificates for nodes in the cluster that run services using SSL. Certificates need to be issued for the generated names (see [Important: Proposal Name](#)) and for all public names you have configured in the cluster.

### ! Important: Service Management on the Cluster

After a role has been deployed on a cluster, its services are managed by the HA software. You must *never* manually start or stop an HA-managed service or configure it to start on boot. Services may only be started or stopped by using the cluster management tools Hawk or the `crm` shell. See [http://www.suse.com/documentation/sle-ha-12/book\\_sleha/data/sec\\_ha\\_config\\_basics\\_resources.html](http://www.suse.com/documentation/sle-ha-12/book_sleha/data/sec_ha_config_basics_resources.html) [↗](#) for more information.



## 11.5 Backing Up and Restoring the Administration Server

Backing Up and Restoring the Administration Server can either be done via the Crowbar Web interface or on the Administration Server's command line via the `crowbarctl backup` command. Both tools provide the same functionality.

### 11.5.1 Backup and Restore via the Crowbar Web interface

To use the Web interface for backing up and restoring the Administration Server, go to the Crowbar Web interface on the Administration Server, for example <http://192.168.124.10/>. Log in as user `crowbar`. The password is `crowbar` by default, if you have not changed it. Go to *Utilities > Backup & Restore*.

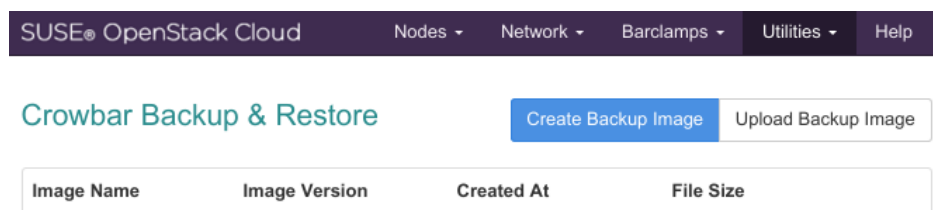


FIGURE 11.1: **BACKUP AND RESTORE: INITIAL PAGE VIEW**

To create a backup, click the respective button. Provide a descriptive name (allowed characters are letters, numbers, dashes and underscores) and confirm with *Create Backup*. Alternatively, you can upload a backup, for example from a previous installation.

Existing backups are listed with name and creation date. For each backup, three actions are available:

#### **Download**

Download a copy of the backup file. The TAR archive you receive with this download can be uploaded again via *Upload Backup Image*.

#### **Restore**

Restore the backup.



## Delete

Delete the backup.

SUSE® OpenStack Cloud					
Nodes ▾ Network ▾ Barclamps ▾ Utilities ▾ Help					
Crowbar Backup & Restore					
<a href="#">Create Backup Image</a> <a href="#">Upload Backup Image</a>					
Image Name	Image Version	Created At	File Size		
Initial_Installation	3.0	February 01, 2016 12:06	309 KB	<a href="#">Download</a>	<a href="#">Restore</a> <a href="#">Delete</a>
Cloud_Services_Deployed	3.0	February 02, 2016 16:04	618 KB	<a href="#">Download</a>	<a href="#">Restore</a> <a href="#">Delete</a>

FIGURE 11.2: **BACKUP AND RESTORE: LIST OF BACKUPS**

## 11.5.2 Backup and Restore via the Command Line

Backing up and restoring the Administration Server from the command line can be done with the command **crowbarctl backup**. For getting general help, run the command **crowbarctl --help backup**, help on a subcommand is available by running **crowbarctl SUBCOMMAND --help**. The following commands for creating and managing backups exist:

### **crowbarctl backup create NAME**

Create a new backup named NAME. It will be stored at /var/lib/crowbar/backup.

### **crowbarctl backup [--yes] NAME**

Restore the backup named NAME. You will be asked for confirmation before any existing proposals will get overwritten. If using the option --yes, confirmations are tuned off and the restore is forced.

### **crowbarctl backup delete NAME**

Delete the backup named NAME.

### **crowbarctl backup download NAME [FILE]**

Download the backup named NAME. If you specify the optional [FILE], the download is written to the specified file. Otherwise it is saved to the current working directory with an automatically generated file name. If specifying - for [FILE], the output is written to STDOUT.



### **crowbarctl backup list**

List existing backups. You can optionally specify different output formats and filters—refer to **crowbarctl backup list --help** for details.

### **crowbarctl backup upload FILE**

Upload a backup from FILE.



## 12 Troubleshooting and Support

Find solutions for the most common pitfalls and technical details on how to create a support request for SUSE OpenStack Cloud here.

### 12.1 FAQ

If your problem is not mentioned here, checking the log files on either the Administration Server or the OpenStack nodes may help. A list of log files is available at [Appendix A, Log Files](#).

#### 12.1.1 Admin Node Deployment

**Q:** *What to do if the initial SUSE OpenStack Cloud Crowbar installation on the Administration Server fails?*

**A:** Check the installation routine's log file at [/var/log/crowbar/install.log](#) for error messages.

**Q:** *What to do if the initial SUSE OpenStack Cloud Crowbar installation on the Administration Server fails while deploying the IPMI/BMC network?*

**A:** As of SUSE OpenStack Cloud 7, it is assumed that each machine can be accessed directly via IPMI/BMC. However, this is not the case on certain blade hardware, where several nodes are accessed via a common adapter. Such a hardware setup causes an error on deploying the IPMI/BMC network. You need to disable the IPMI deployment running the following command:

```
/opt/dell/bin/json-edit -r -a "attributes.ipmi.bmc_enable" \  
-v "false" /opt/dell/chef/data_bags/crowbar/bc-template-ipmi.json
```

Re-run the SUSE OpenStack Cloud Crowbar installation after having disabled the IPMI deployment.



**Q:** Why am I not able to reach the Administration Server from outside the admin network via the bastion network?

**A:** If `route -n` shows no gateway for the bastion network, check the value of the following entries in `/etc/crowbar/network.json`: `"router_pref":` and `"router_pref":`. Make sure the value for the bastion network's `"router_pref":` is set to a *lower* value than `"router_pref":` for the admin network.

If the router preference is set correctly, `route -n` shows a gateway for the bastion network. In case the Administration Server is still not accessible via its admin network address (for example, `192.168.124.10`), you need to disable route verification (`rp_filter`). Do so by running the following command on the Administration Server:

```
echo 0 > /proc/sys/net/ipv4/conf/all/rp_filter
```

If this setting solves the problem, make it permanent by editing `/etc/sysctl.conf` and setting the value for `net.ipv4.conf.all.rp_filter` to `0`.

**Q:** Can I change the host name of the Administration Server?

**A:** No, after you have run the SUSE OpenStack Cloud Crowbar installation you cannot change the host name anymore. Services like Crowbar, Chef, and the RabbitMQ will fail when having changed the host name.

**Q:** What to do when browsing the Chef Web UI gives a `Tampered with cookie error`?

**A:** You probably have an old cookie in your browser from a previous Chef installation on the same IP. Remove the cookie named `_chef_server_session_id` and try again.

**Q:** How to make custom software repositories from an external server (for example a remote SMT or SUSE Manager server) available for the nodes?

**A:** Custom repositories need to be added using the YaST Crowbar module:

1. Start the YaST Crowbar module and switch to the *Repositories* tab:  
`YaST > Miscellaneous > Crowbar > Repositories`.

2. Choose *Add Repositories*

3. Enter the following data:

**Name**

A unique name to identify the repository.



#### *URL*

Link or path to the repository.

#### *Ask On Error*

Access errors to a repository are silently ignored by default. To ensure that you get notified of these errors, set the Ask On Error flag.

#### *Target Platform/Architecture*

Currently only repositories for *SLE 12 SP2* on the *x86\_64* architecture are supported. Make sure to select both options.

4. Save your settings selecting *OK*.

## 12.1.2 OpenStack Node Deployment

**Q:** *How can I log in to a node as root?*

**A:** By default you cannot directly log in to a node as root, because the nodes were set up without a root password. You can only log in via SSH from the Administration Server. You should be able to log in to a node with ssh root@NAME where NAME is the name (alias) of the node.

If name resolution does not work, go to the Crowbar Web interface and open the *Node Dashboard*. Click the name of the node and look for its *admin (eth0) IP Address*. Log in to that IP address via SSH as user root.

**Q:** *What to do if a node refuses to boot or boots into a previous installation?*

**A:** Make sure to change the boot order in the BIOS of the node, so that the first boot option is to boot from the network/boot using PXE.

**Q:** *What to do if a node hangs during hardware discovery after the very first boot using PXE into the "SLEShammer" image?*

**A:** The root login is enabled at a very early state in discovery mode, so chances are high that you can log in for debugging purposes as described in [Q:](#). If logging in as root does not work, you need to set the root password manually. This can either be done by setting the password via the Kernel command line as explained in [Q:](#), or by creating a hook as explained below:



1. Create a directory on the Administration Server named /updates/discovering-pre


```
mkdir /updates/discovering-pre
```

2. Create a hook script setpw.hook in the directory created in the previous step:

```
cat > /updates/discovering-pre/setpw.hook <<EOF
#!/bin/sh
echo "root:linux" | chpasswd
EOF
```

3. Make the script executable:

```
chmod a+x /updates/discovering-pre/setpw.hook
```

If you are still cannot log in, you very likely hit a bug in the discovery image. Report it at <http://bugzilla.suse.com/> .

**Q:** *How to provide Kernel Parameters for the SLEShammer Discovery Image?*

**A:** Kernel Parameters for the SLEShammer Discovery Image can be provided via the Provisioner barclamp. The following example shows how to set a root password:

1. Open a browser and point it to the Crowbar Web interface available on the Administration Server, for example <http://192.168.124.10/>. Log in as user crowbar. The password is crowbar by default, if you have not changed it.
2. Open *Barclamps* > *Crowbar* and click *Edit* in the *Provisioner* row.
3. Click *Raw* in the *Attributes* section and add the Kernel parameter(s) to the "discovery": { "append": "" } line, for example;

```
"discovery": {
  "append": "DISCOVERY_ROOT_PASSWORD=PASSWORD"
},
```

4. *Apply* the proposal without changing the assignments in the *Deployment* section.



**Q:** What to do when a deployed node fails to boot using PXE with the following error message: “Could not find kernel image: ../suse-12.2/install/boot/x86\_64/loader/linux”?

**A:** The installation repository on the Administration Server at `/srv/tftpboot/suse-12.2/install` has not been set up correctly to contain the SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 12 SP2 installation media. Review the instructions at [Section 5.1, “Copying the Product Media Repositories”](#).

**Q:** Why does my deployed node hang at `Unpacking initramfs` during boot when using PXE?

**A:** The node probably does not have enough RAM. You need at least 4 GB RAM for the deployment process to work.

**Q:** What to do if a node is reported to be in the state `Problem`? What to do if a node hangs at “Executing AutoYaST script: `/var/adm/autoinstall/init.d/crowbar_join`” after the installation has been finished?

**A:** Be patient—the AutoYaST script may take a while to finish. If it really hangs, log in to the node as `root` (see [Q:](#) for details). Check for error messages at the end of `/var/log/crowbar/crowbar_join/chef.log`. Fix the errors and restart the AutoYaST script by running the following command:

```
rccrowbar_join start
```

If successful, the node will be listed in state `Ready`, when the script has finished.

If that does not help or if the log does not provide useful information, proceed as follows:

1. Log in to the Administration Server and run the following command:

```
crowbar crowbar transition $NODE
```

`NODE` needs to be replaced by the alias name you have given to the node when having installed it. Note that this name needs to be prefixed with `$`.

2. Log in to the node and run `chef-client`.
3. Check the output of the command for failures and error messages and try to fix the cause of these messages.
4. Reboot the node.



If the node is in a state where login from the Administration Server is not possible, you need to create a `root` password for it as described in [Direct root Login](#). Now re-install the node by going to the node on the Crowbar Web interface and clicking *Reinstall*. After having been re-installed, the node will hang again, but now you can log in and check the log files to find the cause.

**Q:** *Where to find more information when applying a barclamp proposal fails?*

**A:** Check the Chef client log files on the Administration Server located at `/var/log/crowbar/chef-client/d*.log`. Further information is available from the Chef client log files located on the node(s) affected by the proposal (`/var/log/chef/client.log`), and from the log files of the service that failed to be deployed. Additional information may be gained from the Crowbar Web UI log files on the Administration Server. For a list of log file locations refer to [Appendix A, Log Files](#).

**Q:** *How to Prevent the Administration Server from Installing the OpenStack Nodes (Disable PXE and DNS Services)?*

**A:** By default, the OpenStack nodes are installed by booting a discovery image from the Administration Server using PXE. They get allocated and then boot via PXE into an automatic installation (see [Section 9.2, "Node Installation"](#) for details). To install the OpenStack nodes manually or with a custom provisioning tool, you need to disable the PXE boot service and the DNS service on the Administration Server.

As a consequence you also need to provide an external DNS server. Such a server needs to comply with the following requirements:

- It needs to handle all domain to IP requests for SUSE OpenStack Cloud.
- It needs to handle all IP to domain requests for SUSE OpenStack Cloud.
- It needs to forward unknown requests to other DNS servers.

To disable the PXE and DNS services when setting up the Administration Server, proceed as follows:

#### PROCEDURE 12.1: **DISABLING PXE/DNS WHEN SETTING UP THE ADMINISTRATION SERVER**

The following steps need to be performed *before* starting the SUSE OpenStack Cloud Crowbar installation.



1. Create the file `/etc/crowbar/dns.json` with the following content:

```
{
  "attributes": {
    "dns": {
      "nameservers": [ "DNS_SERVER", "DNS_SERVER2" ],
      "auto_assign_server": false
    }
  }
}
```

Replace `DNS_SERVER` and `DNS_SERVER2` with the IP address(es) of the external DNS server(s). Specifying more than one server is optional.

2. Create the file `/etc/crowbar/provisioner.json` with the following content:

```
{
  "attributes": {
    "provisioner": {
      "enable_pxe": false
    }
  }
}
```

3. If these files are present when the SUSE OpenStack Cloud Crowbar installation is started, the Administration Server will be set up using external DNS services and no PXE boot server.

In case you already have deployed SUSE OpenStack Cloud, proceed as follows to disable the DNS and PXE services on the Administration Server:

#### PROCEDURE 12.2: **DISABLING PXE/DNS ON AN ADMINISTRATION SERVER RUNNING CROWBAR**

1. Open a browser and point it to the Crowbar Web interface available on the Administration Server, for example `http://192.168.124.10/`. Log in as user `crowbar`. The password is `crowbar` by default, if you have not changed it.
2. Open *Barclamps* > *Crowbar* and click *Edit* in the *Provisioner* row.
3. Click *Raw* in the *Attributes* section and change the value for *enable\_pxe* to `false`:

```
"enable_pxe": false,
```



4. Apply the proposal without changing the assignments in the *Deployment* section.
5. Change to the *DNS* barclamp via *Barclamps* > *Crowbar* and click *Edit* in the *DNS* row.
6. Click *Raw* in the *Attributes* section. Change the value for *auto\_assign\_server* to false and add the address(es) for the external name server(s):

```
"auto_assign_server": false,  
"nameservers": [  
  "DNS_SERVER",  
  "DNS_SERVER2"  
],
```

Replace DNS\_SERVER and DNS\_SERVER2 with the IP address(es) of the external DNS server(s). Specifying more than one server is optional.

7. Save your changes, but do not apply them, yet!
8. In the *Deployment* section of the barclamp remove all nodes from the *dns-server* role, but do not change the assignments for the *dns-client* role.
9. Apply the barclamp.
10. When the DNS barclamp has been successfully applied, log in to the Administration Server and stop the DNS service:

```
systemctl stop named
```

Now that the PXE and DNS services are disabled you can install SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 12 SP2 on the OpenStack nodes. When a node is ready, add it to the pool of nodes as described in [Section 9.3, “Converting Existing SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 12 SP2 Machines Into SUSE OpenStack Cloud Nodes”](#).

**Q:** I have installed a new hard disk on a node that was already deployed. Why is it ignored by Crowbar?

**A:** When adding a new hard disk to a node that has already been deployed, it can take up to 15 minutes before the new disk is detected.



**Q:** How to install additional packages (for example a driver) when nodes are deployed?

**A:** SUSE OpenStack Cloud offers the possibility to install additional packages that are not part of the default scope of packages installed on the OpenStack nodes. This is for example required if your hardware is only supported by a third party driver. It is also useful if your setup requires to install additional tools that would otherwise need to be installed manually.

Prerequisite for using this feature is that the packages are available in a repository known on the Administration Server. Refer to [Q:](#) for details, if the packages you want to install are not part of the repositories already configured.

To add packages for installation on node deployment, proceed as follows:

1. Open a browser and point it to the Crowbar Web interface on the Administration Server, for example <http://192.168.124.10/>. Log in as user `crowbar`. The password is `crowbar` by default, if you have not changed it during the installation.
2. Go to *Barclamps* > *Crowbar* and click the *Edit* button for *Provisioner*.
3. Next click *Raw* in the *Attributes* page to open an editable view of the provisioner configuration.
4. Add the following JSON code *before* the last closing curly bracket (replace the `PACKAGE` placeholders with real package names):

```
"packages": {  
  "suse-12.2": ["PACKAGE_1", "PACKAGE_2"],  
}
```

Note that these packages will get installed on all OpenStack nodes. If the change to the Provisioner barclamp is made after nodes have already been deployed, the packages will be installed on the affected nodes with the next run of Chef or `crowbar-register`. Package names will be validated against the package naming guidelines to prevent script-injection.



### 12.1.3 Miscellaneous

**Q:** How to change the nova default configuration?

**A:** To change the nova default configuration, the respective Chef cookbook file needs to be adjusted. This file is stored on the Administration Server at /opt/dell/chef/cookbooks/nova/templates/default/nova.conf.erb. To activate changes to these files, the following command needs to be executed:

```
barclamp_install.rb --rpm /opt/dell/barclamps/openstack/
```

**Q:** How to change the Keystone credentials after the Keystone barclamp has been deployed?

**A:** To change the credentials for the Keystone administrator (admin) or the regular user (crowbar by default), proceed as follows:

1. Log in to the Control Node on which Keystone is deployed as user root via the Administration Server.
2. In a shell, source the OpenStack RC file for the project that you want to upload an image to. For details, refer to [Set environment variables using the OpenStack RC file \(http://docs.openstack.org/user-guide/common/cli\\_set\\_environment\\_variables\\_using\\_openstack\\_rc.html\)](http://docs.openstack.org/user-guide/common/cli_set_environment_variables_using_openstack_rc.html) in the OpenStack documentation.
3. Enter the following command to change the PASSWORD for the administrator or the regular user (USER):

```
keystone-manage bootstrap --bootstrap-password PASSWORD \  
--bootstrap-username USER
```

For a complete list of command line options, run **keystone-manage bootstrap --help**. Make sure to start the command with a **Space** to make sure the password does not appear in the command history.

4. Access the Keystone barclamp on the Crowbar Web interface by going to *Barclamps > OpenStack* and click *Edit* for the Keystone barclamp.
5. Enter the new password for the same user you specified on the command line before.



6. Activate the change by clicking *Apply*. When the proposal has been re-applied, the password has changed and can be used.

## 12.2 Support

Before contacting support to help you with a problem on SUSE OpenStack Cloud, it is strongly recommended that you gather as much information about your system and the problem as possible. For this purpose, SUSE OpenStack Cloud ships with a tool called **supportconfig**. It gathers system information such as the current kernel version being used, the hardware, RPM database, partitions, and other items. **supportconfig** also collects the most important log files, making it easier for the supporters to identify and solve your problem.

It is recommended to always run **supportconfig** on the Administration Server and on the Control Node(s). If a Compute Node or a Storage Node is part of the problem, run **supportconfig** on the affected node as well. For details on how to run **supportconfig**, see [http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles-12/book\\_sle\\_admin/data/cha\\_adm\\_support.html](http://www.suse.com/documentation/sles-12/book_sle_admin/data/cha_adm_support.html).

### 12.2.1 Applying PTFs (Program Temporary Fixes) Provided by the SUSE L3 Support

Under certain circumstances, the SUSE support may provide temporary fixes, the so-called PTFs, to customers with an L3 support contract. These PTFs are provided as RPM packages. To make them available on all nodes in SUSE OpenStack Cloud, proceed as follows.

1. Download the packages from the location provided by the SUSE L3 Support to a temporary location on the Administration Server.
2. Move the packages from the temporary download location to the following directories on the Administration Server:

“noarch” packages (\*.noarch.rpm):

/srv/tftpboot/suse-12.2/x86\_64/repos/PTF/rpm/noarch/  
/srv/tftpboot/suse-12.2/s390x/repos/PTF/rpm/noarch/

“x86\_64” packages (\*.x86\_64.rpm)

/srv/tftpboot/suse-12.2/x86\_64/repos/PTF/rpm/x86\_64/



"s390x" packages (`*.s390x.rpm`)

`/srv/tftpboot/suse-12.2/s390x/repos/PTF/rpm/s390x/`

3. Create or update the repository metadata:

```
createrepo-cloud-ptf
```

4. The repositories are now set up and are available for all nodes in SUSE OpenStack Cloud except for the Administration Server. In case the PTF also contains packages to be installed on the Administration Server, make the repository available on the Administration Server as well:

```
zypper ar -f /srv/tftpboot/suse-12.2/x86_64/repos/PTF PTF
```

5. To deploy the updates, proceed as described in [Section 9.4.1, "Deploying Node Updates with the Updater Barclamp"](#). Alternatively, run **zypper up** manually on each node.



# A Log Files

Find a list of log files below, sorted according to the nodes where they can be found.

## A.1 On the Administration Server

- Crowbar Web Interface: </var/log/crowbar/production.log>
- Chef server: </var/log/chef/server.log>
- Chef expander: </var/log/chef/expander.log>
- Chef client (for the Administration Server only): </var/log/chef/client.log>
- Upgrade log files (only available if the Administration Server has been upgraded from a previous version using **suse-cloud-upgrade**): [/var/log/crowbar/upgrade/\\*](/var/log/crowbar/upgrade/*)
- Apache SOLR (Chef's search server): </var/log/chef/solr.log>
- HTTP (AutoYaST) installation server for provisioner barclamp: [/var/log/apache2/provisioner-{access,error}\\_log](/var/log/apache2/provisioner-{access,error}_log)
- Log file from mirroring SMT repositories (optional): </var/log/smt/smt-mirror.log>
- Default SUSE log files: </var/log/messages>, </var/log/zypper.log> etc.
- Syslogs for all nodes: [/var/log/nodes/\\*.log](/var/log/nodes/*.log) (these are collected via remote syslogging)
- Other client node log files saved on the Administration Server:
  - [/var/log/crowbar/sledgehammer/d\\*.log](/var/log/crowbar/sledgehammer/d*.log): Initial Chef client run on nodes booted using PXE prior to discovery by Crowbar.
  - [/var/log/crowbar/chef-client/d\\*.log](/var/log/crowbar/chef-client/d*.log): Output from Chef client when proposals are applied to nodes. This is the first place to look if a barclamp proposal fails to apply.



## A.2 On All Other Crowbar Nodes

Logs for when the node registers with the Administration Server:

- /var/log/crowbar/crowbar\_join/errlog
- /var/log/crowbar/crowbar\_join/\$TOPIC.{log,err}: STDOUT/STDERR from running commands associated with \$TOPIC when the node joins the Crowbar cluster. \$TOPIC can be:
  - zypper: package management activity
  - ifup: network configuration activity
  - Chef: Chef client activity
  - time: starting of ntp client
- Chef client log: /var/log/chef/client.log
- Default SUSE log files: /var/log/messages, /var/log/zypper.log etc.

## A.3 On the Control Node(s)

On setups with multiple Control Nodes log files for certain services (such as keystone.log) are only available on the node where the respective service is deployed.

- /var/log/apache2/openstack-dashboard-\*: Logs for the OpenStack Dashboard
- /var/log/ceilometer/\*: Ceilometer log files.
- /var/log/cinder/\*: Cinder log files.
- /var/log/glance/\*: Glance; log files.
- /var/log/heat/\*: Heat log files.
- /var/log/keystone/\*: Keystone log files.
- /var/log/neutron/\*: Neutron log files.
- /var/log/nova/\*: various log files relating to Nova services.



- /var/log/rabbitmq/\*: RabbitMQ log files.
- /var/log/swift/\*: Swift log files.

## A.4 On Compute Nodes

/var/log/nova/nova-compute.log

## A.5 On Nodes with Ceph Barclamp

/var/log/ceph/\*.log



## B Repository Locations

The following tables show the locations of all repositories that can be used for SUSE OpenStack Cloud.

**TABLE B.1: SMT REPOSITORIES HOSTED ON THE ADMINISTRATION SERVER**

Repository	Directory
Mandatory Repositories	
SLES12-SP2-Pool	<u>/srv/www/htdocs/repo/SUSE/Products/SLE-SERVER/12-SP2/x86_64/product/</u>
SLES12-SP2-Updates	<u>/srv/www/htdocs/repo/SUSE/Updates/SLE-SERVER/12-SP2/x86_64/update/</u>
SUSE-OpenStack-Cloud-7-Pool	<u>/srv/www/htdocs/repo/SUSE/Products/OpenStack-Cloud/7/x86_64/product/</u>
SUSE-OpenStack-Cloud-7-Updates	<u>/srv/www/htdocs/repo/SUSE/Updates/OpenStack-Cloud/7/x86_64/update/</u>
Optional Repositories	
SLE-HA12-SP2-Pool	<u>/srv/www/htdocs/repo/SUSE/Products/SLE-HA/12-SP2/x86_64/product/</u>
SLE-HA12-SP2-Updates	<u>/srv/www/htdocs/repo/SUSE/Updates/SLE-HA/12-SP2/x86_64/update/</u>
SUSE-Enterprise-Storage-4-Pool	<u>/srv/www/htdocs/repo/SUSE/Products/Storage/4/x86_64/product/</u>
SUSE-Enterprise-Storage-4-Updates	<u>/srv/www/htdocs/repo/SUSE/Updates/Storage/4/x86_64/update/</u>



**TABLE B.2: SMT REPOSITORIES HOSTED ON A REMOTE SERVER**

Repository	URI
Mandatory Repositories	
SLES12-SP2-Pool	<a href="http://smt.example.com/repo/SUSE/Products/SLE-SERVER/12-SP2/x86_64/product/">http://smt.example.com/repo/SUSE/Products/SLE-SERVER/12-SP2/x86_64/product/</a>
SLES12-SP2-Updates	<a href="http://smt.example.com/repo/SUSE/Updates/SLE-SERVER/12-SP2/x86_64/update/">http://smt.example.com/repo/SUSE/Updates/SLE-SERVER/12-SP2/x86_64/update/</a>
SUSE-OpenStack-Cloud-7-Pool	<a href="http://smt.example.com/repo/SUSE/Products/OpenStack-Cloud/7/x86_64/product/">http://smt.example.com/repo/SUSE/Products/OpenStack-Cloud/7/x86_64/product/</a>
SUSE-OpenStack-Cloud-7-Updates	<a href="http://smt.example.com/repo/SUSE/Updates/OpenStack-Cloud/7/x86_64/update/">http://smt.example.com/repo/SUSE/Updates/OpenStack-Cloud/7/x86_64/update/</a>
Optional Repositories	
SLE-HA12-SP2-Pool	<a href="http://smt.example.com/repo/SUSE/Products/SLE-HA/12-SP2/x86_64/product/">http://smt.example.com/repo/SUSE/Products/SLE-HA/12-SP2/x86_64/product/</a>
SLE-HA12-SP2-Updates	<a href="http://smt.example.com/repo/SUSE/Updates/SLE-HA/12-SP2/x86_64/update/">http://smt.example.com/repo/SUSE/Updates/SLE-HA/12-SP2/x86_64/update/</a>
SUSE-Enterprise-Storage-4-Pool	<a href="http://smt.example.com/repo/SUSE/Products/Storage/4/x86_64/product/">http://smt.example.com/repo/SUSE/Products/Storage/4/x86_64/product/</a>
SUSE-Enterprise-Storage-4-Updates	<a href="http://smt.example.com/repo/SUSE/Updates/Storage/4/x86_64/update/">http://smt.example.com/repo/SUSE/Updates/Storage/4/x86_64/update/</a>

**TABLE B.3: SUSE MANAGER REPOSITORIES (CHANNELS)**

Repository	URL
Mandatory Repositories	
SLES12-SP2-Updates	<a href="http://manager.example.com/ks/dist/child/sles12-sp2-updates-x86_64/sles12-sp2-x86_64/">http://manager.example.com/ks/dist/child/sles12-sp2-updates-x86_64/sles12-sp2-x86_64/</a>



Repository	URL
SUSE-OpenStack-Cloud-7-Pool	<a href="http://manager.example.com/ks/dist/child/suse-openstack-cloud-7-pool-x86_64/sles12-sp2-x86_64/">http://manager.example.com/ks/dist/child/suse-openstack-cloud-7-pool-x86_64/sles12-sp2-x86_64/</a>
SUSE-OpenStack-Cloud-7--Updates	<a href="http://manager.example.com/ks/dist/child/suse-openstack-cloud-7-updates-x86_64/sles12-sp2-x86_64/">http://manager.example.com/ks/dist/child/suse-openstack-cloud-7-updates-x86_64/sles12-sp2-x86_64/</a>
Optional Repositories	
SLE-HA12-SP2-Pool	<a href="http://manager.example.com/ks/dist/child/sle-ha12-sp2-pool-x86_64/sles12-sp2-x86_64/">http://manager.example.com/ks/dist/child/sle-ha12-sp2-pool-x86_64/sles12-sp2-x86_64/</a>
SLE-HA12-SP2-Updates	<a href="http://manager.example.com/ks/dist/child/sle-ha12-sp2-updates-x86_64/sles12-sp2-x86_64/">http://manager.example.com/ks/dist/child/sle-ha12-sp2-updates-x86_64/sles12-sp2-x86_64/</a>
SUSE-Enterprise-Storage-4-Pool	<a href="http://manager.example.com/ks/dist/child/suse-enterprise-storage-2.1-pool-x86_64/sles12-sp2-x86_64/">http://manager.example.com/ks/dist/child/suse-enterprise-storage-2.1-pool-x86_64/sles12-sp2-x86_64/</a>
SUSE-Enterprise-Storage-4-Updates	<a href="http://manager.example.com/ks/dist/child/suse-enterprise-storage-4-updates-x86_64/sles12-sp2-x86_64/">http://manager.example.com/ks/dist/child/suse-enterprise-storage-4-updates-x86_64/sles12-sp2-x86_64/</a>

The following table shows the default repository locations that are recommended to use when manually copying, synchronizing our mounting the repositories. When choosing these locations, it is sufficient to set the repository location in YaST Crowbar to *Custom*. You do not need to specify a detailed location for each repository. Refer to [Section 5.2.4, “Alternative Ways to Make the Repositories Available”](#) and [Section 7.4, “Repositories”](#) for details.

**TABLE B.4: DEFAULT REPOSITORY LOCATIONS ON THE ADMINISTRATION SERVER**

Channel	Directory on the Administration Server
Mandatory Repositories	
SLES12-SP2-Pool	<a href="/srv/tftpboot/suse-12.2/x86_64/repos/SLES12-SP2-Pool/">/srv/tftpboot/suse-12.2/x86_64/repos/SLES12-SP2-Pool/</a>
SLES12-SP2-Updates	<a href="/srv/tftpboot/suse-12.2/x86_64/repos/SLES12-SP2-Updates/">/srv/tftpboot/suse-12.2/x86_64/repos/SLES12-SP2-Updates/</a>
SUSE-OpenStack-Cloud-7-Pool	<a href="/srv/tftpboot/suse-12.2/x86_64/repos/SUSE-OpenStack-Cloud-7-Pool/">/srv/tftpboot/suse-12.2/x86_64/repos/SUSE-OpenStack-Cloud-7-Pool/</a>



Channel	Directory on the Administration Server
SUSE-OpenStack-Cloud-7-Updates	<u>/srv/tftpboot/suse-12.2/x86_64/repos/SUSE-OpenStack-Cloud-7-Updates</u>
Optional Repositories	
SLE-HA12-SP2-Pool	<u>/srv/tftpboot/suse-12.2/x86_64/repos/SLE-HA12-SP2</u>
SLE-HA12-SP2-Updates	<u>/srv/tftpboot/suse-12.2/x86_64/repos/SLE-HA12-SP2-Updates</u>
SUSE-Enterprise-Storage-4-Pool	<u>/srv/tftpboot/suse-12.2/x86_64/repos/SUSE-Enterprise-Storage-4-Pool</u>
SUSE-Enterprise-Storage-4-Updates	<u>/srv/tftpboot/suse-12.2/x86_64/repos/SUSE-Enterprise-Storage-4-Updates</u>



## C Roles and Services in SUSE OpenStack Cloud

The following table lists all roles (as defined in the barclamps), and their associated services. As of SUSE OpenStack Cloud 7 this list is work in progress. Services can be manually started and stopped with the commands `systemctl start SERVICE` and `systemctl stop SERVICE`.

Role	Service
calamari	<u>cthulhu</u>
ceilometer-agent	<u>openstack-ceilometer-agent-compute</u>
ceilometer-polling	<u>openstack-ceilometer-agent-notification</u>
ceilometer-server	<u>openstack-ceilometer-alarm-evaluator</u>
ceilometer-swift-proxy-middleware	<u>openstack-ceilometer-alarm-notifier</u>
	<u>openstack-ceilometer-api</u>
	<u>openstack-ceilometer-collector</u>
	<u>openstack-ceilometer-polling</u>
ceph-mon	<u>ceph-mon@*</u>
ceph-osd	<u>ceph-osd@*</u>
ceph-radosgw	<u>ceph-radosgw@*</u>
cinder-controller	<u>openstack-cinder-api</u>
	<u>openstack-cinder-scheduler</u>
cinder-volume	<u>openstack-cinder-volume</u>
database-server	<u>postgresql</u>
glance-server	<u>openstack-glance-api</u>
	<u>openstack-glance-registry</u>



Role	Service
heat-server	<u><a href="#">openstack-heat-api-cfn</a></u>
	<u><a href="#">openstack-heat-api-cloudwatch</a></u>
	<u><a href="#">openstack-heat-api</a></u>
	<u><a href="#">openstack-heat-engine</a></u>
horizon	<u><a href="#">apache2</a></u>
keystone-server	<u><a href="#">openstack-keystone</a></u>
manila-server	<u><a href="#">openstack-manila-api</a></u>
	<u><a href="#">openstack-manila-scheduler</a></u>
manila-share	<u><a href="#">openstack-manila-share</a></u>
neutron-server	<u><a href="#">openstack-neutron</a></u>
nova-compute-*	<u><a href="#">openstack-nova-compute</a></u>
	<u><a href="#">openstack-neutron-openvswitch-agent</a></u> (when neutron is deployed with openvswitch)
nova-controller	<u><a href="#">openstack-nova-api</a></u>
	<u><a href="#">openstack-nova-cert</a></u>
	<u><a href="#">openstack-nova-conductor</a></u>
	<u><a href="#">openstack-nova-consoleauth</a></u>
	<u><a href="#">openstack-nova-novncproxy</a></u>
	<u><a href="#">openstack-nova-objectstore</a></u>
	<u><a href="#">openstack-nova-scheduler</a></u>
rabbitmq-server	<u><a href="#">rabbitmq-server</a></u>



Role	Service
swift-dispersion	none
swift-proxy	<a href="#">openstack-swift-proxy</a>
swift-ring-compute	none
swift-storage	<a href="#">openstack-swift-account-auditor</a>
	<a href="#">openstack-swift-account-reaper</a>
	<a href="#">openstack-swift-account-replicator</a>
	<a href="#">openstack-swift-account</a>
	<a href="#">openstack-swift-container-auditor</a>
	<a href="#">openstack-swift-container-replicator</a>
	<a href="#">openstack-swift-container-sync</a>
	<a href="#">openstack-swift-container-updater</a>
	<a href="#">openstack-swift-container</a>
	<a href="#">openstack-swift-object-auditor</a>
	<a href="#">openstack-swift-object-expirer</a>
	<a href="#">openstack-swift-object-replicator</a>
	<a href="#">openstack-swift-object-updater</a>
	<a href="#">openstack-swift-object</a>
trove-server	<a href="#">openstack-trove-api</a>
	<a href="#">openstack-trove-conductor</a>
	<a href="#">openstack-trove-taskmanager</a>



## D The Network Barclamp Template File

The Crowbar network barclamp provides two functions for the system. The first is a common role to instantiate network interfaces on the Crowbar managed systems. The other function is address pool management. While the addresses can be managed with the YaST Crowbar module, complex network setups require to manually edit the network barclamp template file `/etc/crowbar/network.json`. This section explains the file in detail. Settings in this file are applied to all nodes in SUSE OpenStack Cloud.



### Warning: No Network Changes After Completed the SUSE OpenStack Cloud Crowbar installation

After you have completed the SUSE OpenStack Cloud Crowbar installation, you cannot change the network setup anymore. If doing so, you would need to completely set up the Administration Server again.

The only exception from this rule is the interface map. This section can be changed at a later stage as well. See [Section D.3, "Interface Map"](#) for details.

## D.1 Editing `network.json`

The `network.json` is located in `/etc/crowbar/`. To edit it, open it in an editor of your choice. The template has the following general structure:

```
{
  "attributes" : {
    "network" : {
      "mode" : "VALUE",
      "start_up_delay" : VALUE,
      "teaming" : { "mode": VALUE }, ❶
      "enable_tx_offloading" : VALUE,
      "enable_rx_offloading" : VALUE,
      "interface_map" ❷ : [
        ...
      ],
      "conduit_map" ❸ : [
        ...
      ],
      "networks" ❹ : {
```



```

    ...
  },
}
}
}

```

- ❶ General attributes. Refer to [Section D.2, “Global Attributes”](#) for details.
- ❷ Interface map section. Defines the order in which the physical network interfaces are to be used. Refer to [Section D.3, “Interface Map”](#) for details.
- ❸ Network conduit section defining the network modes and the network interface usage. Refer to [Section D.4, “Network Conduits”](#) for details.
- ❹ Network definition section. Refer to [Section D.5, “Network Definitions”](#) for details.



### Note: Order of Elements

The order in which the entries in the `network.json` file appear may differ from the one listed above. Use your editor's search function to find certain entries.

## D.2 Global Attributes

The most important options to define in the global attributes section are the default values for the network and bonding modes. The following global attributes exist:

```

{
  "attributes" : {
    "network" : {
      "mode" : "single", ❶
      "start_up_delay" : 30, ❷
      "teaming" : { "mode": 5 }, ❸
      "enable_tx_offloading" : true, ❹
      "enable_rx_offloading" : true, ❹
      "interface_map" : [
        ...
      ],
      "conduit_map" : [
        ...
      ],
      "networks" : {
        ...
      }
    }
  }
}

```



```

    },
  }
}
}

```

- ❶ Network mode. Defines the configuration name (or name space) to be used from the `conduit_map` (see [Section D.4, “Network Conduits”](#)). This allows to define multiple configurations (single, dual, and team are preconfigured) and switch them by changing this parameter.
- ❷ Time (in seconds) the Chef-client waits for the network interfaces to become online before running into a time-out.
- ❸ Default bonding mode. For a list of available modes, see [Section 7.3, “Network Mode”](#).
- ❹ Turn on/off TX and RX checksum offloading. If set to `false`, disable offloading by running `ethtool -K` and adding the setting to the respective `ifcfg` configuration file. If set to `true`, use the defaults of the network driver. If the network driver supports TX and/or RX checksum offloading and enables it by default, it will be used.  
Checksum offloading is set to `true` in `network.json` by default. It is recommended to keep this setting. If you experience problems, such as package losses, try disabling this feature by setting the values to `false`.



### Important: Change of the Default Value


Starting with SUSE OpenStack Cloud the default value for TX and RX checksum offloading changed from `false` to `true`.

To check, which defaults a network driver uses, run `ethtool -k`, for example:

```

tux > sudo ethtool -k eth0 | grep checksumming
rx-checksumming: on
tx-checksumming: on

```

Note that if the output shows a value marked as `[fixed]`, this value cannot be changed. For more information on TX and RX checksum offloading refer to your hardware vendor's documentation. Detailed technical information can also be obtained from <https://www.kernel.org/doc/Documentation/networking/checksum-offloads.txt> .



## D.3 Interface Map

By default physical network interfaces are used in the order they appear under `/sys/class/net/`. If you want to apply a different order, you need to create an interface map where you can specify a custom order of the bus IDs. Interface maps are created for specific hardware configurations and are applied to all machines matching this configuration.

```
{
  "attributes" : {
    "network" : {
      "mode" : "single",
      "start_up_delay" : 30,
      "teaming" : { "mode": 5 },
      "enable_tx_offloading" : true ,
      "enable_rx_offloading" : true ,
      "interface_map" : [
        {
          "pattern" : "PowerEdge R610" ❶ ,
          "serial_number" : "0x02159F8E" ❷ ,
          "bus_order" : [ ❸
            "0000:00/0000:00:01",
            "0000:00/0000:00:03"
          ]
        }
        ...
      ],
      "conduit_map" : [
        ...
      ],
      "networks" : {
        ...
      }
    }
  }
}
```

- ❶ Hardware specific identifier. This identifier can be obtained by running the command `dmidecode -s system-product-name` on the machine you want to identify. You can log in to a node during the hardware discovery phase (when booting the SLEShammer image) via the Administration Server.



- ② Additional hardware specific identifier. This identifier can be used in case two machines have the same value for *pattern*, but different interface maps are needed. Specifying this parameter is optional (it is not included in the default `network.json` file). The serial number of a machine can be obtained by running the command `dmidecode -s system-serial-number` on the machine you want to identify.
- ③ Bus IDs of the interfaces. The order in which they are listed here defines the order in which Chef addresses the interfaces. The IDs can be obtained by listing the contents of `/sys/class/net/`.

### ! Important: PXE Boot Interface Must be Listed First

The physical interface used to boot the node via PXE must always be listed first.

### 📝 Note: Interface Map Changes Allowed After Having Completed the SUSE OpenStack Cloud Crowbar Installation

Contrary to all other sections in `network.json`, you can change interface maps after having completed the SUSE OpenStack Cloud Crowbar installation. However, nodes that are already deployed and affected by these changes need to be deployed again. Therefore it is not recommended to make changes to the interface map that affect active nodes.

If you change the interface mappings after having completed the SUSE OpenStack Cloud Crowbar installation you *must not* make your changes by editing `network.json`. You must rather use the Crowbar Web interface and open *Barclamps > Crowbar > Network > Edit*. Activate your changes by clicking *Apply*.

## D.3.1 Interface Map Example

### EXAMPLE D.1: CHANGING THE NETWORK INTERFACE ORDER ON A MACHINE WITH FOUR NICs

1. Get the machine identifier by running the following command on the machine to which the map should be applied:

```
~ # dmidecode -s system-product-name
AS 2003R
```



The resulting string needs to be entered on the *pattern* line of the map. It is interpreted as a Ruby regular expression (see <http://www.ruby-doc.org/core-2.0/Regexp.html> for a reference). Unless the pattern starts with `^` and ends with `$` a substring match is performed against the name return from the above commands.

2. List the interface devices in `/sys/class/net` to get the current order and the bus ID of each interface:

```
~ # ls -lgG /sys/class/net/ | grep eth
lrwxrwxrwx 1 0 Jun 19 08:43 eth0 -> ../../devices/pci0000:00/0000:00:1c.0/0000:09:00.0/net/eth0
lrwxrwxrwx 1 0 Jun 19 08:43 eth1 -> ../../devices/pci0000:00/0000:00:1c.0/0000:09:00.1/net/eth1
lrwxrwxrwx 1 0 Jun 19 08:43 eth2 -> ../../devices/pci0000:00/0000:00:1c.0/0000:09:00.2/net/eth2
lrwxrwxrwx 1 0 Jun 19 08:43 eth3 -> ../../devices/pci0000:00/0000:00:1c.0/0000:09:00.3/net/eth3
```

The bus ID is included in the path of the link target—it is the following string: `../../devices/pciBUS ID/net/eth0`

3. Create an interface map with the bus ID listed in the order the interfaces should be used. Keep in mind that the interface from which the node is booted using PXE must be listed first. In the following example the default interface order has been changed to `eth0`, `eth2`, `eth1` and `eth3`.

```
{
  "attributes" : {
    "network" : {
      "mode" : "single",
      "start_up_delay" : 30,
      "teaming" : { "mode": 5 },
      "enable_tx_offloading" : true,
      "enable_rx_offloading" : true,
      "interface_map" : [
        {
          "pattern" : "AS 2003R",
          "bus_order" : [
            "0000:00/0000:00:1c.0/0000:09:00.0",
            "0000:00/0000:00:1c.0/0000:09:00.2",
            "0000:00/0000:00:1c.0/0000:09:00.1",
            "0000:00/0000:00:1c.0/0000:09:00.3"
          ]
        }
      ],
      ...
    ],
    "conduit_map" : [
      ...
    ]
  }
}
```



```

    ],
    "networks" : {
        ...
    },
  },
}
}

```

## D.4 Network Conduits

Network conduits define mappings for logical interfaces—one or more physical interfaces bonded together. Each conduit can be identified by a unique name, the *pattern*. This pattern is also called “Network Mode” in this document.

Several network modes are already pre-defined. The most important ones are:

**single:** Only use the first interface for all networks. VLANs will be added on top of this single interface.

**dual:** Use the first interface as the admin interface and the second one for all other networks. VLANs will be added on top of the second interface.

**team:** Bond the first two or more interfaces. VLANs will be added on top of the bond.

See [Section 2.1.2, “Network Modes”](#) for detailed descriptions. Apart from these modes a fallback mode `".*/.*/.*"` is also pre-defined—it is applied in case no other mode matches the one specified in the global attributes section. These modes can be adjusted according to your needs. It is also possible to define a custom mode.

The mode name that is specified with `mode` in the global attributes section is deployed on all nodes in SUSE OpenStack Cloud. It is not possible to use a different mode for a certain node. However, you can define “sub” modes with the same name that only match the following machines:

- Machines with a certain number of physical network interfaces.
- Machines with certain roles (all Compute Nodes for example).

```

{
  "attributes" : {
    "network" : {
      "mode" : "single",
      "start_up_delay" : 30,
      "teaming" : { "mode": 5 },
    },
  },
}

```



```

    "enable_tx_offloading" : true,
    "enable_rx_offloading" : true,
    "interface_map" : [
        ...
    ],
    "conduit_map" : [
        {
            "pattern" : "team/.*/.*" ❶,
            "conduit_list" : {
                "intf2" ❷ : {
                    "if_list" : ["lg1","lg2"] ❸,
                    "team_mode" : 5 ❹
                },
                "intf1" : {
                    "if_list" : ["lg1","lg2"],
                    "team_mode" : 5
                },
                "intf0" : {
                    "if_list" : ["lg1","lg2"],
                    "team_mode" : 5
                }
            }
        },
        ...
    ],
    "networks" : {
        ...
    },
}
}
}

```

- ❶ This line contains the pattern definition for a mode. The value for pattern must have the following form:

```
MODE_NAME/NUMBER_OF_NICS/NODE_ROLE
```

It is interpreted as a Ruby regular expression (see <http://www.ruby-doc.org/core-2.0/Regexp.html> for a reference).

#### mode\_name

Name of the network mode. This string is used to reference the mode from the general attributes section.



## number\_of\_nics

Normally it is not possible to apply different network modes to different roles—you can only specify one mode in the global attributes section. However, it does not make sense to apply a network mode that bonds three interfaces on a machine with only two physical network interfaces. This option enables you to create modes for nodes with a given number of interfaces.

## node\_role

This part of the pattern lets you create matches for a certain node role. This enables you to create network modes for certain roles, for example the Compute Nodes (role: *nova-compute*) or the Swift nodes (role: *swift-storage*). See [Example D.3, “Network Modes for Certain Roles”](#) for the full list of roles.

- ② The logical network interface definition. Each conduit list must contain at least one such definition. This line defines the name of the logical interface. This identifier must be unique and will also be referenced in the network definition section. It is recommended to stick with the pre-defined naming scheme: intf0 for “Interface 0”, intf1 for “Interface 1”, etc. If you change the name (not recommended), you also need to change all references in the network definition section.
- ③ This line maps one or more *physical* interfaces to the logical interface. Each entry represents a physical interface. If more than one entry exists, the interfaces are bonded—either with the mode defined in the *team\_mode* attribute of this conduit section. Or, if that is not present, by the globally defined *teaming* attribute.

The physical interfaces definition needs to fit the following pattern:

`[Quantifier][Speed][Order]`

Valid examples are +1g2, 10g1 or ?1g2.

## Quantifier

Specifying the quantifier is optional. The following values may be entered:

- +: at least the speed specified afterwards (specified value or higher)
- : at most the speed specified afterwards (specified value or lower)
- ?: any speed (speed specified afterwards is ignored)

If no quantifier is specified, the exact speed specified is used.



## Speed

Specifying the interface speed is mandatory (even if using the `?` quantifier). The following values may be entered:

10m: 10 Mbit

100m: 100 Mbit

1g: 1 Gbit

10g: 10 Gbit

## Order

Position in the interface order. Specifying this value is mandatory. The interface order is defined by the order in which the interfaces appear in `/sys/class/net` (default) or, if existing, by an interface map. The order is also linked to the speed in this context:

1g1: the first 1Gbit interface

+1g1: the first 1Gbit or 10Gbit interface. Crowbar will take the first 1Gbit interface. Only if such an interface does not exist, it will take the first 10Gbit interface available.

?1g3: the third 1Gbit, 10Gbit, 100Mbit or 10Mbit interface. Crowbar will take the third 1Gbit interface. Only if such an interface does not exist, it will take the third 10Gbit interface, then the third 100Mbit or 10Mbit interface.





## Note: Ordering Numbers

Ordering numbers start with 1 rather than with 0.

Each interfaces that supports multiple speeds is referenced by multiple names—one for each speed it supports. A 10Gbit interface is therefore represented by four names: 10gX, 1gX, 100mX, 10mX, where X is the ordering number.


Ordering numbers always start with 1 and are assigned ascending for each speed, for example 1g1, 1g2, and 1g3. Numbering starts with the first physical interface. On systems with network interfaces supporting different maximum speeds, ordering numbers for the individual speeds differ, as the following example shows:

100Mbit (first interface): 100m1, 10m1

1Gbit (second interface): 1g1, 100m2, 10m2

10Gbit (third interface): 10g1, 1g2, 100m3, 10m3

In this example the pattern ?1g3 would match 100m3, since no third 1Gbit or 10Gbit interface exist.

- ④ The bonding mode to be used for this logical interface. Overwrites the default set in the global attributes section *for this interface*. See <https://www.kernel.org/doc/Documentation/networking/bonding.txt>  for a list of available modes. Specifying this option is optional—if not specified here, the global setting applies.

## D.4.1 Network Conduit Examples

### EXAMPLE D.2: NETWORK MODES FOR DIFFERENT NIC NUMBERS

The following example defines a network mode named my\_mode for nodes with 6, 3 and an arbitrary number of network interfaces. Since the first mode that matches is applied, it is important that the specific modes (for 6 and 3 NICs) are listed before the general one:

```
{
  "attributes" : {
    "network" : {
      "mode" : "single",
      "start_up_delay" : 30,
      "teaming" : { "mode": 5 },
```



```

    "enable_tx_offloading" : true,
    "enable_rx_offloading" : true,
    "interface_map" : [
        ...
    ],
    "conduit_map" : [
        {
            "pattern" : "my_mode/6/*.*",
            "conduit_list" : {
                ...
            }
        },
        {
            "pattern" : "my_mode/3/*.*",
            "conduit_list" : {
                ...
            }
        },
        {
            "pattern" : "my_mode/./.*",
            "conduit_list" : {
                ...
            }
        },
        ...
    ],
    "networks" : {
        ...
    },
}
}
}

```

#### EXAMPLE D.3: NETWORK MODES FOR CERTAIN ROLES

The following example defines network modes for Compute Nodes with four physical interfaces, the Administration Server (role crowbar), the Control Node, and a general mode applying to all other nodes.

```

{
  "attributes" : {
    "network" : {
      "mode" : "single",
      "start_up_delay" : 30,
      "teaming" : { "mode": 5 },
    }
  }
}

```



```

    "enable_tx_offloading" : true,
    "enable_rx_offloading" : true,
    "interface_map" : [
        ...
    ],
    "conduit_map" : [
        {
            "pattern" : "my_mode/4/nova-compute",
            "conduit_list" : {
                ...
            }
        },
        {
            "pattern" : "my_mode/.*/crowbar",
            "conduit_list" : {
                ...
            }
        },
        {
            "pattern" : "my_mode/.*/nova-controller",
            "conduit_list" : {
                ...
            }
        },
        {
            "pattern" : "my_mode/.*/.*",
            "conduit_list" : {
                ...
            }
        },
        ...
    ],
    "networks" : {
        ...
    },
}
}
}

```

The following values for node\_role can be used:

ceilometer-polling

ceilometer-server

ceph-calamari



ceph-mon  
ceph-osd  
ceph-radosgw  
cinder-controller  
cinder-volume  
crowbar  
database-server  
glance-server  
heat-server  
horizon-server  
keystone-server  
manila-server  
manila-share  
neutron-network  
neutron-server  
nova-controller  
nova-compute-\*  
rabbitmq-server  
trove-server  
swift-dispersion  
swift-proxy  
swift-ring-compute  
swift-storage

The role crowbar refers to the Administration Server.

#### EXAMPLE D.4: NETWORK MODES FOR CERTAIN MACHINES

Apart from the roles listed under *Example D.3, "Network Modes for Certain Roles"* each node in SUSE OpenStack Cloud has a unique role, which lets you create modes matching exactly one node. The role is named after the scheme crowbar-d FULLY QUALIFIED HOSTNAME. The FULLY QUALIFIED HOSTNAME in turn is composed of the following: the MAC address of the network interface used to boot the node via PXE, and the domain name configured on the Administration Server. Colons and periods are replaced with underscores. An example role name would be: crowbar-d1a-12-05-1e-35-49\_my\_cloud.

Network mode definitions for certain machines must be listed first in the conduit map. This prevents other, general rules which would also map from being applied.

```
{
```



```

    "attributes" : {
      "network" : {
        "mode" : "single",
        "start_up_delay" : 30,
        "teaming" : { "mode": 5 },
        "enable_tx_offloading" : true,
        "enable_rx_offloading" : true,
        "interface_map" : [
          ...
        ],
        "conduit_map" : [
          {
            "pattern" : "my_mode/.*/crowbar-d1a-12-05-1e-35-49_my_cloud",
            "conduit_list" : {
              ...
            }
          },
          ...
        ],
        "networks" : {
          ...
        }
      }
    }
  }
}

```

## D.5 Network Definitions

The network definitions contain IP address assignments, the bridge and VLAN setup and settings for the router preference. Each network is also assigned to a logical interface defined in the network conduit section. In the following the network definition is explained using the example of the admin network definition:

```

{
  "attributes" : {
    "network" : {
      "mode" : "single",
      "start_up_delay" : 30,
      "teaming" : { "mode": 5 },
      "enable_tx_offloading" : true,
      "enable_rx_offloading" : true,
      "interface_map" : [

```



```

    ...
  ],
  "conduit_map" : [
    ...
  ],
  "networks" : {
    "admin" : {
      "conduit" : "intf0" ❶,
      "add_bridge" : false ❷,
      "use_vlan" : false ❸,
      "vlan" : 100 ❹,
      "router_pref" : 10 ❺,
      "subnet" : "192.168.124.0" ❻,
      "netmask" : "255.255.255.0",
      "router" : "192.168.124.1",
      "broadcast" : "192.168.124.255",
      "ranges" : {
        "admin" : {
          "start" : "192.168.124.10",
          "end" : "192.168.124.11"
        },
        "switch" : {
          "start" : "192.168.124.241",
          "end" : "192.168.124.250"
        },
        "dhcp" : {
          "start" : "192.168.124.21",
          "end" : "192.168.124.80"
        },
        "host" : {
          "start" : "192.168.124.81",
          "end" : "192.168.124.160"
        }
      }
    },
    "nova_floating": {
      "add_ovs_bridge": false ❷,
      "bridge_name": "br-public" ❸,
      ....
    }
  },
  ...
},
}
}

```



```
}
```

- ❶ Logical interface assignment. The interface must be defined in the network conduit section and must be part of the active network mode.
- ❷ Bridge setup. Do not touch. Should be `false` for all networks.
- ❸ Create a VLAN for this network. Changing this setting is not recommended.
- ❹ ID of the VLAN. Change this to the VLAN ID you intend to use for the specific network if required. This setting can also be changed using the YaST Crowbar interface. The VLAN ID for the `nova-floating` network must always match the one for the `public network`.
- ❺ Router preference, used to set the default route. On nodes hosting multiple networks the router with the lowest `router_pref` becomes the default gateway. Changing this setting is not recommended.
- ❻ Network address assignments. These values can also be changed by using the YaST Crowbar interface.
- ❼ Openvswitch virtual switch setup. This attribute is maintained by Crowbar on a per-node level and should not be changed manually.
- ❽ Name of the openvswitch virtual switch. This attribute is maintained by Crowbar on a per-node level and should not be changed manually.

### ❗ Important: VLAN Settings

As of SUSE OpenStack Cloud 7, using a VLAN for the admin network is only supported on a native/untagged VLAN. If you need VLAN support for the admin network, it must be handled at switch level.

When deploying Compute Nodes with Microsoft Hyper-V or Windows Server, you must *not* use openvswitch with gre. Instead, use openvswitch with VLAN (recommended) or linuxbridge as a plugin for Neutron.

When changing the network configuration with YaST or by editing `/etc/crowbar/network.json` you can define VLAN settings for each network. For the networks `nova-fixed` and `nova-floating`, however, special rules apply:

**nova-fixed:** The `USE VLAN` setting will be ignored. However, VLANs will automatically be used if deploying Neutron with VLAN support (using the plugins `linuxbridge`, `openvswitch plus VLAN` or `cisco plus VLAN`). In this case, you need to specify a correct `VLAN ID` for this network.



**nova-floating:** When using a VLAN for nova-floating (which is the default), the *USE VLAN* and *VLAN ID* settings for *nova-floating* and *public* need to be the same. When not using a VLAN for nova-floating, it needs to use a different physical network interface than the nova\_fixed network.



## E Configuring Role Based Access Control (RBAC)

To limit users' access rights (or to define more fine-grained access rights), you can use Role Based Access Control (RBAC, only available with Keystone v3). In the example below, we will create a new role (`ProjectAdmin`). It allows users with this role to add and remove other users to the `Member` role on the same project.

To create a new role that can be assigned to a user-project pair, the following basic steps are needed:

1. Create a custom `policy.json` file for the Keystone component. On the node where the `keystone-server` role is deployed, copy the file to `/etc/keystone/CUSTOM_policy.json`. For details, see [Section E.1, "Editing `policy.json`"](#).
2. Create a custom `keystone_policy.json` file for the Horizon component. On the node where the `nova_dashboard-server` role is deployed, copy the custom `keystone_policy.json` file to `/srv/www/openstack-dashboard/openstack_dashboard/conf/` (default directory for policy files in Horizon). For details, see [Section E.2, "Editing `keystone\_policy.json`"](#).
3. Make the Keystone component aware of the `CUSTOM_policy.json` file by editing and reapplying the `Keystone` barclamp. For details, see [Section E.3, "Adjusting the `Keystone Barclamp Proposal`"](#).
4. Make the Horizon component aware of the `keystone_policy.json` file by editing and reapplying the `Horizon` barclamp. For details, see [Section E.4, "Adjusting the `Horizon Barclamp Proposal`"](#).

### E.1 Editing `policy.json`

The `policy.json` file is located in `/etc/keystone/` on the node where the `keystone-server` role is deployed.

1. Copy `/etc/keystone/policy.json` and save it under a different name, for example `CUSTOM_policy.json`.



## Important: Use Different File Name

If you use the same name as the original file, your custom file will be overwritten by the next package update.

2. To edit the file, open it in an editor of your choice.
3. To add the new role, enter the following two lines at the beginning of the file:

```
{
  "subadmin": "role:ProjectAdmin",
  "projectadmin": "rule:subadmin and project_id:%(target.project.id)s",
  [...]
```

4. Adjust the other rules in the file accordingly:

```
"identity:get_domain": "rule:admin_required or rule:subadmin",
[...]
```

```
"identity:get_project": "rule:admin_required or rule:projectadmin",
[...]
```

```
"identity:list_user_projects": "rule:admin_or_owner or rule:projectadmin",
[...]
```

```
"identity:update_project": "rule:admin_required or rule:projectadmin",
[...]
```

```
"identity:get_user": "rule:admin_required or rule:projectadmin",
"identity:list_users": "rule:admin_required or rule:subadmin",
[...]
```

```
"identity:list_groups": "rule:admin_required or rule:subadmin",
[...]
```

```
"identity:list_roles": "rule:admin_required or rule:subadmin",
[...]
```

```
"identity:list_grants": "rule:admin_required or (rule:subadmin and
project_id:%(target.project.id)s)",
  "identity:create_grant": "rule:admin_required or (rule:subadmin and
project_id:%(target.project.id)s and 'Member':%(target.role.name)s)",
  "identity:revoke_grant": "rule:admin_required or (rule:subadmin and
project_id:%(target.project.id)s and 'Member':%(target.role.name)s)",
  [...]
```

```
"identity:list_role_assignments": "rule:admin_required or rule:subadmin",
```

5. Save the changes.



6. On the node where the `keystone-server` role is deployed, copy the file to `/etc/keystone/CUSTOM_policy.json`. Usually, the `keystone-server` role is deployed to a Control Node (or to a cluster, if you use a High Availability setup).

## E.2 Editing `keystone_policy.json`

By default, the `keystone_policy.json` file is located in `/srv/www/openstack-dashboard/openstack_dashboard/conf/` on the node where the `nova_dashboard-server` role is deployed. It is similar (but not identical) to `policy.json` and defines which actions the user with a certain role is allowed to execute in Horizon. If the user is not allowed to execute a certain action, the OpenStack Dashboard will show an error message.

1. Copy `/srv/www/openstack-dashboard/openstack_dashboard/conf/keystone_policy.json` and save it under a different name, for example `CUSTOM_keystone_policy.json`.



### Important: Use Different File Name

If you use the same name as the original file, your custom file will be overwritten by the next package update.

2. To edit the file, open it in an editor of your choice.
3. To add the new role, enter the following two lines at the beginning of the file:

```
{
  "subadmin": "role:ProjectAdmin",
  "projectadmin": "rule:subadmin and project_id:%(target.project.id)s",
  [...]
```

4. Adjust the other rules in the file accordingly:

```
"identity:get_project": "rule:admin_required or rule:projectadmin",
[...]
```

```
"identity:list_user_projects": "rule:admin_or_owner or rule:projectadmin",
[...]
```

```
"identity:get_user": "rule:admin_required or rule:projectadmin",
"identity:list_users": "rule:admin_required or rule:subadmin",
[...]
```



```
"identity:list_roles": "rule:admin_required or rule:subadmin",  
[...]  
"identity:list_role_assignments": "rule:admin_required or rule:subadmin",
```

5. Save the changes and copy the file to `/srv/www/openstack-dashboard/openstack_dashboard/conf/CUSTOM_keystone_policy.json` on the node where the `nova_dashboard-server` role is deployed.

## E.3 Adjusting the *Keystone* Barclamp Proposal

1. Log in to the Crowbar Web interface.
2. Select *Barclamps* > *All barclamps*.
3. Go to the *Keystone* barclamp and click *Edit*.
4. In the *Attributes* section, click *Raw*. This shows the complete configuration file and allows you to edit it directly.
5. Adjust the `policy_file` parameter to point to the `CUSTOM_policy.json` file. For example:

```
{  
  [...]  
  "policy_file": "mypolicy.json",
```

6. Save and *Apply* the changes to the Keystone barclamp.

## E.4 Adjusting the *Horizon* Barclamp Proposal

1. Log in to the Crowbar Web interface.
2. Select *Barclamps* > *All barclamps*.
3. Go to the *Horizon* barclamp and click *Edit*.
4. In the *Attributes* section, click *Raw*. This shows the complete configuration file and allows you to edit it directly.



5. If needed, adjust the `policy_file_path` parameter to point to the directory where you copied the newly added `CUSTOM_keystone_policy.json` file. By default, its value is an empty string—this means that the default directory will be used.
6. Enter the new file's name as value of the `identity` parameter within the `policy_file` section (❶):

```
{
  "policy_file_path": "",
  "policy_file": {
    "identity": "mykeystone_policy.json", ❶
    "compute": "nova_policy.json",
    "volume": "cinder_policy.json",
    "image": "glance_policy.json",
    "orchestration": "heat_policy.json",
    "network": "neutron_policy.json",
    "telemetry": "ceilometer_policy.json"
  }
}
```

7. *Save and Apply* the changes to the Horizon barclamp.



## F Configuration Files for OpenStack Services

Typically, each OpenStack component comes with a configuration file, for example: /etc/nova/nova.conf.

These configuration files can still be used. However, to configure an OpenStack component and its different components and roles, it is now preferred to add custom configuration file snippets to a SERVICE.conf.d/ directory instead.

### F.1 Default Configuration Files

By default, a configuration snippet with a basic configuration for each OpenStack component is available in the following directory:

```
/etc/SERVICE/SERVICE.conf.d/010-SERVICE.conf
```

For example: /etc/nova/nova.conf.d/010-nova.conf

Those files should not be modified.

### F.2 Custom Configuration Files

To adjust or overwrite settings for the respective OpenStack component, add a custom configuration file to the same directory, /etc/SERVICE/SERVICE.conf.d/.

The same applies if you want to configure individual components or roles of an OpenStack component, like nova-api or nova-compute, for example. But in this case, add your custom configuration file to the following directory:

```
/etc/SERVICE/ROLE.conf.d/
```

For example: /etc/nova/nova-api.conf.d/

All custom configuration file must follow the rules listed in [Section F.3, “Naming Conventions for Custom Configuration Files”](#).



## F.3 Naming Conventions for Custom Configuration Files

Use the following rules for any configuration files you add:

- The file name must start with a 3-digit number and a dash. For example: /etc/nova/nova.conf.d/500-nova.conf
- The file must have the following file name extension: .conf
- For configuration management systems (for example: Crowbar, Salt), use numbers between 100 and 499.
- To override settings written by the configuration management system, use numbers starting from 500. They have higher priority.

## F.4 Processing Order of Configuration Files

The configuration files are processed in the following order:

- /etc/SERVICE/SERVICE.conf
- /etc/SERVICE/SERVICE.conf.d/\*.conf (in dictionary order)
- /etc/SERVICE/ROLE.conf.d/\*.conf (in dictionary order)

If conflicting values are set for the same parameter, the last configured value overwrites all previous ones. In particular, values defined in

```
/etc/SERVICE/SERVICE.conf.d/XXX-SERVICE.conf
```

overwrite configuration values in

```
/etc/SERVICE/SERVICE.conf
```

## F.5 For More Information

For details, also see /etc/SERVICE/README.config.



## G VMware vSphere Installation Instructions

SUSE OpenStack Cloud supports the Nova Compute VMware vCenter driver. It enables access to advanced features such as vMotion, High Availability, and Dynamic Resource Scheduling (DRS). However, VMware vSphere is not supported “natively” by SUSE OpenStack Cloud—it rather delegates requests to an existing vCenter. It requires preparations at the vCenter and post install adjustments of the Compute Node.

### G.1 Requirements

The following requirements must be met to successfully deploy a Nova Compute VMware node:

- VMware vSphere vCenter 5.1 or higher
- VMware vSphere ESXi nodes 5.1 or higher
- A separate Compute Node that acts as a proxy to vCenter is required. Minimum system requirements for this node are:

CPU: x86\_64 with 2 cores (4 recommended)

RAM: 2 GB (8 GB recommended)

Disk space: 4 GB (30 GB recommended)

See [Section G.3, “Finishing the Nova Compute VMware Node Installation”](#) for setup instructions.

- Neutron must not be deployed with the openvswitch with gre plug-in, a VLAN setup is required.
- Security groups are only supported when running VMWare NSX. You need to deploy Neutron with the *vmware* plug-in to have security group support. This is also a prerequisite for gre tunnel support.

### G.2 Preparing the VMware vCenter Server

SUSE OpenStack Cloud requires the VMware vCenter server to run version 5.1 or better. You need to create a single data center for SUSE OpenStack Cloud (multiple data centers are currently not supported):



1. Log in to the vCenter Server using the vSphere Web Client
2. Choose *Hosts and Clusters* and create a single *Datacenter*
3. Set up a *New Cluster* which has *DRS* enabled.
4. Set *Automation Level* to Fully Automated and *Migration Threshold* to Aggressive.
5. Create shared storage. Only shared storage is supported and data stores must be shared among all hosts in a cluster. It is recommended to remove data stores not intended for OpenStack from clusters being configured for OpenStack. Multiple data stores can be used per cluster.
6. Create a port group with the same name as the vmware.integration\_bridge value in nova.conf (default is br-int). All VM NICs are attached to this port group for management by the OpenStack networking plug-in. Assign the same VLAN ID as for the neutron network. On the default network setup this is the same VLAN ID as for the nova\_fixed network. Use *YaST > Miscellaneous > Crowbar > Networks* to look up the VLAN ID.

## G.3 Finishing the Nova Compute VMware Node Installation

Deploy Nova as described in [Section 10.10, “Deploying Nova”](#) on a single Compute Node and fill in the *VMWare vCenter Settings* attributes:

### ***vCenter IP Address***

IP address of the vCenter server.

### ***vCenter Username / vCenter Password***

vCenter login credentials.

### ***Cluster Names***

A comma-separated list of cluster names you have added on the vCenter server.

### ***Regex to match the name of a datastore***

Regular expression to match the name of a data store. If you have several data stores, this option allows you to specify the data stores to use with Nova Compute. For example, the value nas.\* selects all data stores that have a name starting with nas. If this option is



omitted, Nova Compute uses the first data store returned by the vSphere API. However, it is recommended not to use this option and to remove data stores that are not intended for OpenStack instead.

### ***VLAN Interface***

The physical interface that is to be used for VLAN networking. The default value of `vmnic0` references the first available interface (“eth0”). `vmnic1` would be the second interface (“eth1”).

### ***CA file for verifying the vCenter certificate***

Absolute path to the vCenter CA certificate.

### ***vCenter SSL Certificate is insecure (for instance, self-signed)***

Default value: `false` (the CA truststore is used for verification). Set this option to `true` when using self-signed certificates to disable certificate checks. This setting is for testing purposes only and must not be used in production environments!



The screenshot shows a configuration form titled "VMWare vCenter Settings". It contains several input fields: "vCenter IP Address", "vCenter Username", "vCenter Password" (with a toggle icon for visibility), "Cluster Names" (with a descriptive note "A comma-separated list of cluster names"), and "VLAN Interface" (which has "vmnic0" entered). The form is styled with a light gray background and rounded corners.

**FIGURE G.1: THE NOVA BARCLAMP: VMWARE CONFIGURATION**

## **G.4 Making the Nova Compute VMware Node Highly Available**

OpenStack does not support deploying multiple VMware Compute Nodes. As a workaround, set up an instance on the vSphere Cluster, register it with Crowbar and deploy the `nova-compute-vmware` role on this node:



1. Create an instance on the vSphere Cluster and install SLES 11 SP3.
2. Configure a network interface in a way that it can access the SUSE OpenStack Cloud admin network.
3. Enable the High-Availability flag in vCenter for this instance.
4. Follow the instructions at *Section 9.3, "Converting Existing SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 12 SP2 Machines Into SUSE OpenStack Cloud Nodes"* to register the instance with the Administration Server and add it to the pool of nodes available for deployment.
5. Deploy the `nova-compute-vmware` role on the new node as described in *Section 10.10, "Deploying Nova"* and *Section G.3, "Finishing the Nova Compute VMware Node Installation"*.



# H Using Cisco Nexus Switches with Neutron

## H.1 Requirements

The following requirements must be met to use Cisco Nexus switches with Neutron:

- Cisco Nexus series 3000, 5000 or 7000
- All Compute Nodes must be equipped with at least two network cards.
- The switch needs to have the XML management interface enabled. SSH access to the management interface must be enabled (refer to the switch's documentation for details).
- Enable VLAN trunking for all Neutron managed VLANs on the switch port to which the controller node running Neutron is connected to.
- Before deploying Neutron, check if VLAN configurations for Neutron managed VLANs already exist on the switch (for example, from a previous SUSE OpenStack Cloud deployment). If yes, delete them via the switch's management interface prior to deploying Neutron.
- When using the Cisco plugin, Neutron reconfigures the VLAN trunk configuration on all ports used for the `nova-fixed` traffic (the traffic between the instances). This requires to configure separate network interfaces exclusively used by `nova-fixed`. This can be achieved by adjusting `/etc/crowbar/network.json` (refer to [Appendix D, The Network Barclamp Template File](#)). The following example shows an appropriate configuration for dual mode, where `nova-fixed` has been mapped to conduit `intf1` and all other networks to other conduits. Configuration attributes not relevant in this context have been replaced with `...`.

### EXAMPLE H.1: EXCLUSIVELY MAPPING NOVA-FIXED TO CONDUIT INTF1 IN DUAL MODE

```
{
  "attributes" : {
    "network" : {
      "conduit_map" : [
        ...
      ],

```



```

    "mode" : "single",
    "networks" : {
        "nova_fixed" : {
            ...,
            "conduit" : "intf1"
        },
        "nova_floating" : {
            ...,
            "conduit" : "intf0"
        },
        "public" : {
            ...,
            "conduit" : "intf0"
        },
        "storage" : {
            ...,
            "conduit" : "intf0"
        },
        "os_sdn" : {
            ...,
            "conduit" : "intf0"
        },
        "admin" : {
            ...,
            "conduit" : "intf0"
        },
        "bmc" : {
            ...,
            "conduit" : "bmc"
        },
        "bmc_vlan" : {
            ...,
            "conduit" : "intf2"
        },
    },
    ...,
},
}
}

```

- Make a note of all switch ports to which the interfaces using the nova-fixed network on the Compute Nodes are connected. This information will be needed when deploying Neutron.



## H.2 Deploying Neutron with the Cisco Plugin

1. Create a Neutron barclamp proposal in the Crowbar Web interface.
2. As the *Plugin*, select m12.
3. As *Modular Layer 2 mechanism drive*, select cisco\_nexus.
4. In *Modular Layer2 tpye drivers*, select vlan.
5. In the *Cisco Switch Credentials* table, enter the *IP Address*, the *SSH Port* number and the login credentials for the switch's management interface. If you have multiple switches, open a new row in the table by clicking *Add* and enter the data for another switch.

The screenshot shows the 'Neutron' configuration page in the SUSE OpenStack Cloud interface. The page has a dark blue header with navigation links: Nodes, Network, Barclamps, Utilities, and Help. Below the header, the 'Neutron' title is followed by a green checkmark and four action buttons: Save, Apply, Deactivate, and Cancel. The configuration is organized into several sections: 'Attributes' (with a 'Raw' link), 'DHCP Domain' (text input: openstack.local), 'Networking Plugin' (dropdown: m12), 'Modular Layer 2 mechanism drivers' (list: openvswitch, linuxbridge, cisco\_nexus), 'Modular Layer 2 type drivers' (list: gre, vlan, vxlan), 'Use Distributed Virtual Router setup' (dropdown: true), 'VLAN' (text input: 2000), and 'Cisco Switch Credentials' (table). The table has columns for IP Address, Port, Username, and Password. A light blue message bar states 'Currently there are no switches assigned'. At the bottom, there are input fields for each column and an 'Add' button.

IP Address	Port	Username	Password
Currently there are no switches assigned			
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="password"/>

FIGURE H.1: THE NEUTRON BARCLAMP: CISCO PLUGIN



6. Choose whether to encrypt public communication (*HTTPS*) or not (*HTTP*). If choosing *HTTPS*, refer to *SSL Support: Protocol* for configuration details.
7. Choose a node for deployment and *Apply* the proposal.
8. Deploy Nova (see *Section 10.10, "Deploying Nova"*), Horizon (see *Section 10.11, "Deploying Horizon (OpenStack Dashboard)"*) and all other remaining barclamps.
9. When all barclamps have been deployed, return to the Neutron barclamp by choosing *Barclamps > OpenStack > Neutron > Edit*. The proposal now contains an additional table named *Assign Switch Ports*, listing all Compute Nodes.  
For each Compute Node enter the switch it is connected to and the port number from the notes you took earlier. The values need to be entered like the following: 1/13 or Eth1/20.
10. When you have entered the data for all Compute Nodes, re-apply the proposal.



### Important: Deploying Additional Compute Nodes

Whenever you deploy additional Compute Nodes to an active SUSE OpenStack Cloud deployment using the Cisco plugin with Neutron, update the Neutron barclamp proposal by entering their port data as described in the previous step.



### Note: Verifying the Setup

To verify if Neutron was correctly deployed, do the following:

1. Launch an instance (refer to the *End User Guide*, chapter *Launch and manage instances* for instructions).
2. Find out which VLAN was assigned to the network by running the command **`neutron net-show fixed`**. The result lists a *segmentation\_id* matching the VLAN.
3. Log in to the switch's management interface and list the VLAN configuration. If the setup was deployed correctly, the port of the Compute Node the instance is running on, is in trunk mode for the matching VLAN.



# I Crowbar Batch

This is the documentation for the `crowbar batch` subcommand.

## I.1 Description

`crowbar batch` provides a quick way of creating, updating, and applying Crowbar proposals. It can be used to:

- accurately capture the configuration of an existing Crowbar environment.
- drive Crowbar to build a complete new environment from scratch.
- capture one SUSE OpenStack Cloud environment and then reproduce it on another set of hardware (provided hardware and network configuration match to an appropriate extent).
- automatically update existing proposals.

As the name suggests, `crowbar batch` is intended to be run in “batch mode”, that is mostly unattended. It has two modes of operation:

### `crowbar batch export`

Exports a YAML file which describes existing proposals and how their parameters deviate from the default proposal values for that barclamp.

### `crowbar batch build`

Imports a YAML file in the same format as above. Uses it to build new proposals if they do not yet exist. Updates the existing proposals so that their parameters match those given in the YAML file.

## I.2 YAML file format

Here is an example YAML file. At the top-level, there is a proposals array, each entry of which is a hash representing a proposal:

```
proposals:
- barclamp: provisioner
```



```
# Proposal name defaults to 'default'.
attributes:
  shell_prompt: USER@ALIAS:CWD SUFFIX
- barclamp: database
# Default attributes are good enough, so we just need to assign
# nodes to roles:
deployment:
  elements:
    database-server:
      - "@@controller1@"
- barclamp: rabbitmq
deployment:
  elements:
    rabbitmq-server:
      - "@@controller1@"
```



### Note: Reserved Indicators in YAML

Note that the characters `@` and ``` are reserved indicators in YAML. They can appear anywhere in a string *except at the beginning*. Therefore a string such as `@@controller1@@` needs to be quoted using double quotes.

## 1.2.1 Top-level proposal attributes

### barclamp

Name of the barclamp for this proposal (required).

### name

Name of this proposal (optional; default is `default`). In **build** mode, if the proposal does not already exist, it will be created.

### attributes

An optional nested hash containing any attributes for this proposal which deviate from the defaults for the barclamp.

In **export** mode, any attributes set to the default values are excluded to keep the YAML as short and readable as possible.

In **build** mode, these attributes are deep-merged with the current values for the proposal. If the proposal did not already exist, batch build will create it first. The attributes are merged with the default values for the barclamp's proposal.



## **wipe\_attributes**

An optional array of paths to nested attributes which should be removed from the proposal. Each path is a period-delimited sequence of attributes; for example `pacemaker.stonith.sbd.nodes` would remove all SBD nodes from the proposal if it already exists. If a path segment contains a period, it should be escaped with a backslash, for example `segment-one.segment\ .two.segment_three`.

This removal occurs before the deep merge described above. For example, think of a YAML file which includes a Pacemaker barclamp proposal where the `wipe_attributes` entry contains `pacemaker.stonith.sbd.nodes`. A batch build with this YAML file ensures that only SBD nodes listed in the `attributes sibling` hash are used at the end of the run. In contrast, without the `wipe_attributes` entry, the given SBD nodes would be appended to any SBD nodes already defined in the proposal.

## **deployment**

A nested hash defining how and where this proposal should be deployed.

In **build** mode, this hash is deep-merged in the same way as the attributes hash, except that the array of elements for each Chef role is reset to the empty list before the deep merge. This behavior may change in the future.

## 1.2.2 Node Alias Substitutions

A string like `@@node@@` (where `node` is a node alias) will be substituted for the name of that node, no matter where the string appears in the YAML file. For example, if `controller1` is a Crowbar alias for node `d52-54-02-77-77-02.mycloud.com`, then `@@controller1@@` will be substituted for that host name. This allows YAML files to be reused across environments.

## 1.3 Options

In addition to the standard options available to every **crowbar** subcommand (run **crowbar batch --help** for a full list), there are some extra options specifically for **crowbar batch**:

**--include <barclamp[.proposal]>**

Only include the barclamp / proposals given.

This option can be repeated multiple times. The inclusion value can either be the name of a barclamp (for example, `pacemaker`) or a specifically named proposal within the barclamp (for example, `pacemaker.network_cluster`).



If it is specified, then only the barclamp / proposals specified are included in the build or export operation, and all others are ignored.

**--exclude <barclamp[.proposal]>**

This option can be repeated multiple times. The exclusion value is the same format as for --include. The barclamps / proposals specified are excluded from the build or export operation.

**--timeout <seconds>**

Change the timeout for Crowbar API calls.

As Chef's run lists grow, some of the later OpenStack barclamp proposals (for example Nova, Horizon, or Heat) can take over 5 or even 10 minutes to apply. Therefore you may need to increase this timeout to 900 seconds in some circumstances.



## J Recovering Clusters to a Healthy State

If one node in your cluster refuses to rejoin the cluster, it is most likely that the node has not been shut down cleanly. This can either happen because of manual intervention or because the node has been fenced (shut down) by the STONITH mechanism of the cluster. Fencing is used to protect the integrity of data in case of a split-brain scenario.

The following sections refer to problems with the Control Nodes cluster and show how to recover your degraded cluster to full strength. This takes the following basic steps:

1. *Re-adding the Node to the Cluster*
2. *Recovering Crowbar and Chef*
3. In addition, you may need to reset resource failcounts to allow resources to start on the node you have re-added to the cluster. See *Section J.4, "Cleaning Up Resources"*.
4. In addition, you may need to manually remove the maintenance mode flag from a node. See *Section J.5, "Removing the Maintenance Mode Flag from a Node"*.

For a list of possible symptoms that help you to diagnose a degraded cluster, see *Section J.1, "Symptoms of a Degraded Control Node Cluster"*.

### J.1 Symptoms of a Degraded Control Node Cluster

The following incidents may occur if a Control Node in your cluster has been shut down in an unclear state:

- A VM reboots although the SUSE OpenStack Cloud administrator did not trigger this action.
- One of the Control Node in the Crowbar Web interface is in status Problem, signified by a red dot next to the node.
- The Hawk Web interface stops responding on one of the Control Nodes, while it is still responding on the others.
- The SSH connection to one of the Control Nodes freezes.
- The OpenStack components stop responding for a short while.



## J.2 Re-adding the Node to the Cluster

1. Reboot the node.
2. Connect to the node via SSH from the Administration Server.
3. If you have a 2-node cluster with the *STONITH: Do not start corosync on boot after fencing* option set to *Automatic*, remove the block file that is created on a node during start of the cluster service:

```
root # rm /var/spool/corosync/block_automatic_start
```

The block file avoids STONITH deathmatches for 2-node clusters (where each node kills the other one, resulting in both nodes rebooting all the time). When Corosync shuts down cleanly, the block file is automatically removed. Otherwise the block file is still present and prevents the cluster service from (re-)starting on that node.

Alternatively, bypass the block file by starting the cluster service on the cluster node before reconnecting the node to Crowbar in the next section (see [Section J.3, "Recovering Crowbar and Chef"](#)):

```
root # systemctl start pacemaker
```

## J.3 Recovering Crowbar and Chef

Making the Pacemaker node rejoin the cluster is not enough. All nodes in the cloud (including the Administration Server) need to be aware that this node is back online. This requires the following steps for Crowbar and Chef:

1. Log in to the node you have re-added to the cluster.
2. Re-register the node with Crowbar by executing:

```
root # systemctl start crowbar_join
```

3. Log in to each of the *other* Control Nodes.



4. Trigger a Chef run:

```
root # chef-client
```

## J.4 Cleaning Up Resources

A resource will be automatically restarted if it fails, but each failure increases the resource's failcount. If a `migration-threshold` has been set for the resource, the node will no longer run the resource when the number of failures reaches the migration threshold. To allow the resource to start again on the node, reset the resource's failcount by cleaning up the resource manually. You can clean up individual resources by using the Hawk Web interface or all in one go as described below:

1. Log in to any one of the cluster nodes which is currently online in the cluster. (You can check this via `crm_mon`.)
2. Clean-up all stopped resources with the following command:

```
root # crm_resource -o | \
  awk '/\tStopped |Timed Out/ { print $1 }' | \
  xargs -r -n1 crm resource cleanup
```

## J.5 Removing the Maintenance Mode Flag from a Node

During normal operation, chef-client sometimes needs to place a node into maintenance mode. The node is kept in maintenance mode until the chef-client run finishes. However, if the chef-client run fails, the node may be left in maintenance mode. In that case, the cluster management tools like crmsh or Hawk will show all resources on that node as `unmanaged`. To remove the maintenance flag:

1. Log in the cluster node.
2. Disable the maintenance mode with:

```
root # crm node ready
```



## J.6 Recovering From an Unresolvable DRBD Split Brain Situation

Although policies to automatically resolve a DRBD split brain situations exist, there are situations which require to be resolved manually. Such a situation is indicated by a Kernel message like:

```
kernel: block drbd0: Split-Brain detected, dropping connection!
```

To resolve the split brain you need to choose a node which data modifications will be discarded. These modifications will be replaced by the data from the “healthy” node and will not be recoverable, so make sure to choose the right node. If in doubt, make a backup of the node before starting the recovery process. Proceed as follows:

1. Put the cluster in maintenance mode:

```
root # crm configure property maintenance-mode=true
```

2. Check if the chose node is in primary role:

```
root # systemctl status drbd
```

3. If it is in primary role, stop all services using this resource and switch it to secondary role. If the node already is in secondary role, skip this step.

```
root # drbdadm secondary RESOURCE
```

4. Check if a node is in state WfConnection by looking at the output of **systemctl status drbd**.

5. If the node is in state WfConnection disconnect the resource:

```
root # drbdadm disconnect RESOURCE
```

6. Discard all modifications on the chosen node. This step is irreversible, the modifications on the chosen node will be lost!

```
root # drbdadm -- --discard-my-data connect RESOURCE
```



7. If the other (healthy) node is in state WFCConnection, synchronization to the chosen node will start automatically. If not, reconnect the healthy node to start the synchronization:

```
root # drbdadm connect RESOURCE
```

During the synchronization all data modifications on the chosen node will be overwritten with the data from the healthy node.

8. When the synchronization has finished, reset the cluster to normal mode:

```
root # crm configure property maintenance-mode=false
```



# K SUSE OpenStack Cloud Proof of Concept Deployment Guide

## K.1 Document Scope

This document will help you to prepare SUSE and prospective customers for a Proof of Concept (POC) deployment of SUSE OpenStack Cloud. This document provides specific details for a POC deployment. It serves as an addition to the SUSE OpenStack Cloud *Deployment Guide*.

## K.2 SUSE OpenStack Cloud Key Features

The latest version 7 of SUSE OpenStack Cloud supports all OpenStack Newton release components for best-in-class capabilities to deploy an open source private cloud. Here is a brief overview of SUSE OpenStack Cloud features and functionality.

- *Installation Framework* Integration with the Crowbar project speeds up and simplifies installation and administration of your physical cloud infrastructure.
- *Mixed Hypervisor Support* Enhanced virtualization management through support for multi-hypervisor environments that use KVM, Xen, Microsoft Hyper-V, VMware vSphere, and IBM z/VM.
- *High Availability* Automated deployment and configuration of control plane clusters. This ensures continuous access to business services and delivery of enterprise-grade Service Level Agreements.
- *High availability for KVM and Xen Compute Nodes and Workloads* Enhanced support for critical workloads not designed for cloud architectures.
- *Ceph* Integration with SUSE Enterprise Storage provides a streamlined deployment of a single solution for distributed block, object, and virtual machine image storage.
- *Docker Support* Gives the ability to build and run innovative containerized applications through Magnum integration.
- *Scalability* Cloud control system designed to grow with your demands.



- *Open APIs* Using the standard APIs, customers can enhance and integrate OpenStack with third-party software.
- *Block Storage Plug-Ins* A wide range of block storage plug-ins available from storage vendors like EMC, NetApp, and others.
- *Networking Plug-Ins* SUSE OpenStack Cloud natively supports open source SDN's via Open vSwitch, harnessing the power of DPDK in SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 12 SP2. For more flexibility, SUSE OpenStack Cloud provides support for third-party tools from Cisco, Midokura, Infoblox, Nuage Networks, PLUMgrid and even VLAN bridging solutions.
- *Award-Winning Support* SUSE OpenStack Cloud is backed by 24x7 worldwide-technical support.
- *Full Integration with SUSE Update Processes* Easily maintain and patch cloud deployments.
- *Non-Disruptive Upgrade Capabilities* Simplify migration to future SUSE OpenStack Cloud releases.

## K.3 Main Components

The following is a brief overview of components for setting up and managing SUSE OpenStack Cloud.

*Administration Server* provides all services needed to manage and deploy all other nodes in the cloud. Most of these services are provided by the Crowbar tool. Together with Chef, Crowbar automates all the required installation and configuration tasks. The services provided by the server include DHCP, DNS, NTP, PXE, TFTP.

The Administration Server also hosts the software repositories for SUSE Linux Enterprise Server and SUSE OpenStack Cloud. These repositories are required for node deployment. If no other sources for the software repositories are available, the Administration Server can also host the Subscription Management Tool (SMT), providing up-to-date repositories with updates and patches for all nodes.



*Control Nodes* host all OpenStack services for orchestrating virtual machines deployed on the compute nodes. OpenStack in SUSE OpenStack Cloud uses a PostgreSQL database that is also hosted on the Control Nodes. When deployed, the following OpenStack components run on the Control Nodes:

- PostgreSQL
- Image (Glance)
- Identity (Keystone)
- Networking (Neutron)
- Block Storage (Cinder)
- Shared Storage (Manila)
- OpenStack Dashboard
- Keystone
- Pacemaker
- Nova controller
- Message broker
- Swift proxy server
- Hawk monitor
- Heat an orchestration engine
- Ceilometer server and agents
- Trove a Database-as-a-Service

A single Control Node running multiple services can become a performance bottleneck, especially in large SUSE OpenStack Cloud deployments. It is possible to distribute the services listed above on more than one Control Node. This includes scenarios where each service runs on its own node.

*Compute Nodes* are a pool of machines for running instances. These machines require an adequate number of CPUs and enough RAM to start several instances. They also need to provide sufficient storage. A Control Node distributes instances within the pool of compute nodes and provides the



necessary network resources. The OpenStack service Compute (Nova) runs on Compute Nodes and provides means for setting up, starting, and stopping virtual machines. SUSE OpenStack Cloud supports several hypervisors such as KVM, VMware vSphere, and Xen. Each image that can be started with an instance is bound to one hypervisor. Each Compute Node can only run one hypervisor at a time. For a POC deployment, SUSE recommends to leverage KVM as hypervisor of choice.

*Optional Storage Nodes* Storage Node is a pool of machines that provide object or block storage. Object storage supports several back-ends.

## K.4 Proof of Concept Deployment Objectives and Preparations

Although each customer has a specific set of requirements, it is important to have 3-5 clearly-defined objectives. This objectives should be provable, measurable and have a specific time scale in which proof is required. The objectives can be adjusted and amended, provided that both parties are agreed on the changes. For a full record of the performed and completed work, it is recommended to use this document for making amendments to the proof requirements.

Before deploying SUSE OpenStack Cloud, it is necessary to meet certain requirements and consider various aspects of the deployment. Some decisions need to be made *before* deploying SUSE OpenStack Cloud, since they *cannot* be changed afterward.

The following procedure covers preparatory steps for the deployment of SUSE OpenStack Cloud along with the software and hardware components required for a successful implementation.

### PROCEDURE K.1: PREPARATIONS PRIOR TO A POC DEPLOYMENT

1. Make sure that the required hardware and virtual machines are provided and configured
2. Check that PXE boot from the first NIC in BIOS is enabled (legacy BIOS mode and no UEFI)
3. Ensure that the hardware is certified for use with SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 12 SP2
4. Check that booting from ISO images works
5. Make sure that all NICs are visible
6. Install `sar/sysstat` for performance troubleshooting



7. Ensure that all needed subscription records are available. Depending on the size of the cloud to be implemented, this includes the following:
  - SUSE OpenStack Cloud subscriptions
  - SUSE Linux Enterprise Server subscriptions
  - SLES High Availability Extensions (HAE) subscriptions
  - Optional SUSE Enterprise Storage (SES) subscriptions
8. Check whether all needed channels and updates are available either locally or remotely. The following options can be used to provide the repositories and channels:
  - SMT server on the administration server (optional step)
  - Existing SMT server
  - Existing SUSE Manager
9. Make sure that networking is planned and wired according to the specified layout or topology
10. If SUSE Enterprise Storage is a part of the POC deployment, all nodes must be installed, configured, and optimized before installing SUSE OpenStack Cloud. Storage services (Nova, Cinder, Glance, Cluster Stonith,) required by SUSE OpenStack Cloud 6 must be available and accessible.
11. Check whether `network.json` is configured according to the specific requirements. This step must be discussed and completed in advance (see [Section K.6.1, “The network.json Network Control File”](#) and [https://www.suse.com/documentation/suse-openstack-cloud-6/book\\_cloud\\_deploy/data/book\\_cloud\\_deploy.html](https://www.suse.com/documentation/suse-openstack-cloud-6/book_cloud_deploy/data/book_cloud_deploy.html) ↗)

## K.5 Hardware and Software Matrix

The hardware and software matrix below has the following requirements:

- All machines must run SLES 12 SP1 Server Operating System
- KVM or Xen Hypervisors must be running on bare metal
- The Admin Node can be deployed on a KVM or VMWare virtual machine



The sizing recommendation includes an Admin Node (bare metal or VM), Controller Nodes, Compute Nodes to host all your OpenStack services, and the optional SES Nodes. The matrix also provides information on the necessary network equipment and bandwidth requirements.



### Note: About Recommendations

These recommendations are based on real-world use cases and experience gathered by SUSE in the last three years. However, these recommendations are meant to serve as guidelines and not as requirements. The final sizing decision depends on the actual customer workloads and architecture, which must be discussed in depth. The type and number of hardware components such as hard disks, CPU, and RAM also serve as starting points for further discussion and evaluation depending on workloads.

**TABLE K.1: BOM/SUSE OPENSTACK CLOUD SERVICES**

Number of Units	Function	Configuration	OpenStack Component
3	Compute nodes	2 hard disks 2 Quad Core Intel or AMD processors 256GB RAM 2 or 4 10Gb Ethernet NICs	Nova-multi-compute ML2 Agent OVS Agent
1	Admin Node or VM	2 hard disks 1 Quad Core Intel or AMD processor 8GB RAM 2 or 4 10Gb Ethernet NICs	Crowbar, tftboot, PXE
2	Control node	2 hard disks 2 Quad Core Intel or AMD processors 2x64GB RAM	Horizon Rabbit MQ Nova multi-controller Cinder



Number of Units	Function	Configuration	OpenStack Component
		2 or 4 10Gb Ethernet NICs	Glance Heat Ceilometer Neutron-Server ML2 Agent Keystone PostgreSQL DB Neutron ML2 Plugin L2/L3 Agents DHCP Agent
	CloudFoundry	48 vCPUs 256GB RAM Min 2TB Storage	Pivotal CloudFoundry
4	Storage Server – SUSE Enterprise Storage	2 hard disks 2 Quad Core Intel or AMD processors 64GB RAM 2 or 4 10Gb Ethernet NICs	Admin – Server MON - Server OSD - Server
1	Switch min. 10 GbE ports		All VLANs/Tagged or Untagged
OS: SLES12 SP1			
DHCP, DNS	Isolated within administrator network		
HA	2 Control Nodes		



## K.6 Network Topology

Configuring and managing your network are *two of the most challenging tasks of deploying a SUSE OpenStack Cloud*. Therefore they need to be planned carefully. Just as OpenStack provides flexibility and agility for compute and storage, SDN in OpenStack gives cloud administrators more control over their networks. However, building and manually configuring the virtual network infrastructure for OpenStack is difficult and error-prone. SUSE OpenStack Cloud solve this by delivering a structured installation process for OpenStack which could be customized to adapt the given environment.

### K.6.1 The network.json Network Control File

The deployment of the network configuration is done while setting up an Administrator Node. As a requirement for the deployment, the entire network configuration needs to be specified in the network.json file.

The Crowbar network barclamp provides two functions for the system:

- Initialization of network interfaces on the Crowbar managed systems
- Address pool management. While the addresses can be managed with the YaST Crowbar module, complex network setups require to manually edit the network barclamp template file /etc/crowbar/network.json. For more detailed explanation and description see [https://www.suse.com/documentation/suse-openstack-cloud-6/pdfdoc/book\\_cloud\\_deploy/book\\_cloud\\_deploy.pdf#page=240&zoom=auto,63.779,788.031](https://www.suse.com/documentation/suse-openstack-cloud-6/pdfdoc/book_cloud_deploy/book_cloud_deploy.pdf#page=240&zoom=auto,63.779,788.031) ↗

The network definitions contain IP address assignments, the bridge and VLAN setup, and settings for the router preference. Each network is also assigned to a logical interface. These VLAN IDs and networks can be modified according to the customer's environment.



## K.6.2 The Network Mode

SUSE OpenStack Cloud supports three network modes: single, dual and teaming. As of SUSE OpenStack Cloud 6, the network mode is applied to all nodes and the Administration Server. That means that all machines need to meet the hardware requirements for the chosen mode. The following network modes are available:

- *Single Network Mode* In single mode one Ethernet card is used for all the traffic.
- *Dual Network Mode* Dual mode needs two Ethernet cards (on all nodes but Administration Server). This allows to completely separate traffic to and from the administrator network and to and from the public network.
- *Teaming Network Mode* The teaming mode is almost identical to single mode, except it combines several Ethernet cards to a so-called bond (network device bonding). Teaming mode requires two or more Ethernet cards.



### Note: Teaming Network Mode for HA

In an HA configuration, make sure that SUSE OpenStack Cloud is deployed with the teaming network mode.

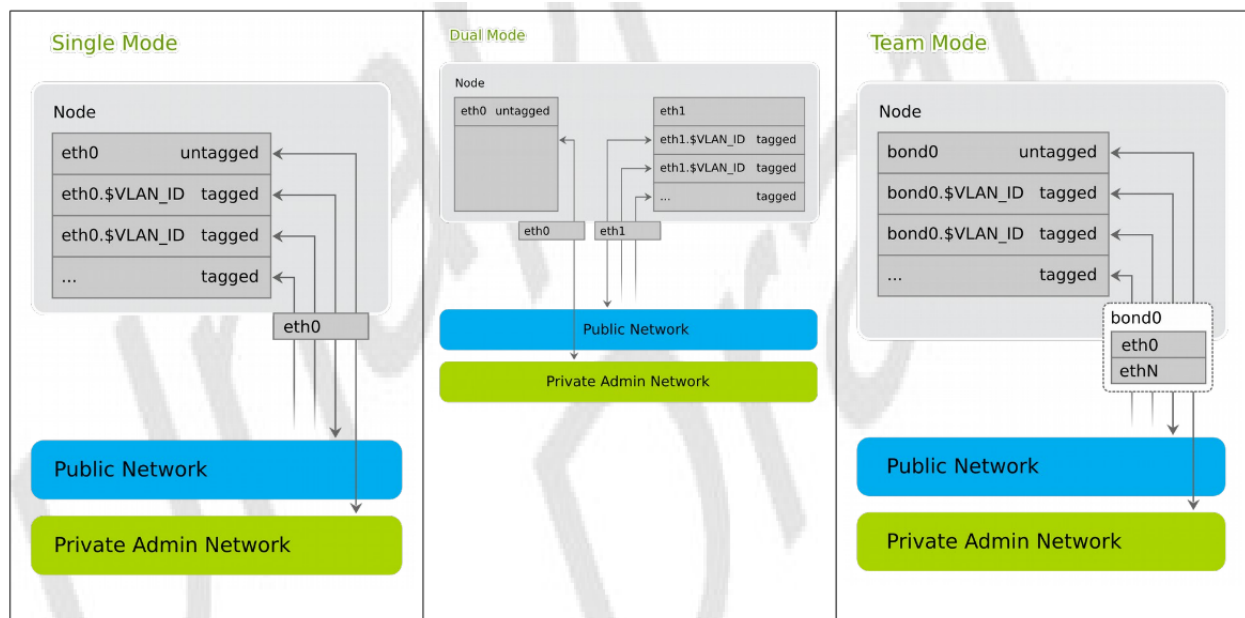


FIGURE K.1: NETWORK MODES



## K.6.3 Default Layout

The following networks are pre-defined for use with SUSE OpenStack Cloud.

**TABLE K.2: ADMINISTRATOR NETWORK LAYOUT**

Network Name	VLAN	IP Range
Router	No - untagged	192.168.124.1
Admin	No - untagged	192.168.124.10 – 192.168.124.11
DHCP	No - untagged	192.168.124.21 – 192.168.124.80
Host	No - untagged	192.168.124.81 – 192.168.124.160
BMC VLAN Host	100	192.168.124.61
BMC Host	No - untagged	192.168.124.162 – 192.168.124.240
Switch	No - untagged	192.168.124.241 – 192.168.124.250

**TABLE K.3: PRIVATE NETWORK LAYOUT**

Network Name	VLAN	IP Range
Router	500	192.168.123.1 – 192.168.123.49
DHCP	500	192.168.123.50 – 192.168.123.254

**TABLE K.4: PUBLIC/NOVA FLOATING NETWORK LAYOUT/EXTERNALLY PROVIDED**

Network Name	VLAN	IP Range
Public Host	300	192.168.126.2 – 192.168.126.49



Network Name	VLAN	IP Range
Public DHCP	300	192.168.126.50 – 192.168.126.127
Floating Host	300	192.168.126.129 – 192.168.126.191

TABLE K.5: STORAGE NETWORK LAYOUT

Network Name	VLAN	IP Range
Host	200	192.168.125.2 – 192.168.125.254

The default IP addresses can be changed using YaST Crowbar module or by editing the appropriate JSON file. It is also possible to customize the network setup for your environment. This can be done by editing the network barclamp template.

## K.7 Network Overall Architecture

SUSE OpenStack Cloud requires a complex network setup consisting of several networks configured during installation. These networks are reserved for cloud usage. Access to these networks from an existing network requires a router.



### Important: Network Configuration with Crowbar

The network configuration on the nodes in the SUSE OpenStack Cloud network is controlled by Crowbar. Any network configuration changes done outside Crowbar will be automatically overwritten. After the cloud is deployed, network settings cannot be changed without reinstalling the cloud.

*Controller Node* serves as the front-end for API calls to the compute, image, volume, network, and orchestration services. In addition to that, the node hosts multiple Neutron plug-ins and agents. The node also aggregates all route traffic within tenant and between tenant network and outside world.



*Compute Node* creates on-demand virtual machines using chosen hypervisor for customer application.

*Administrator Node* automates the installation processes via Crowbar using pre-defined cookbooks for configuring and deploying a Control Node and Compute and Network Nodes.



#### Note: DHCP/PXE Environment for Administrator Node

The Administrator Node requires a dedicated local and isolated DHCP/PXE environment controlled by Crowbar.

*Optional storage access.* Cinder is used for block storage access exposed through iSCSI or NFS (FC connection is not supported in the current release of OpenStack). This could also be a dedicated Storage Node.



#### Note: High-Performance Network for Ceph

Implementation of Ceph as a cloud storage requires a high-performance network. The Storage Net in the following network topology is a placeholder for upcoming Ceph implementation (for use with an established 40GbE network). It is recommended to run a Ceph Storage Cluster with two networks: a public network and a cluster network. To support two networks, each Ceph node must have more than one NIC.

*Network mode.* What mode to choose for a POC deployment depends on the High Availability (HA) requirements. The teaming network mode is required for an HA setup of SUSE OpenStack Cloud.

## K.7.1 Network Architecture: Pre-Defined VLANs

VLAN support for the administrator network must be handled at the switch level. The following networks are predefined when setting up SUSE OpenStack Cloud. The listed default IP addresses can be changed using the YaST Crowbar module. It is also possible to customize the network setup.





## Note: Limitations of the Default Network Proposal

The default network proposal described below allows maximum 80 Compute Nodes, 61 floating IP addresses, and 204 addresses in the nova\_fixed network. To overcome these limitations, you need to reconfigure the network setup by using appropriate address ranges manually.

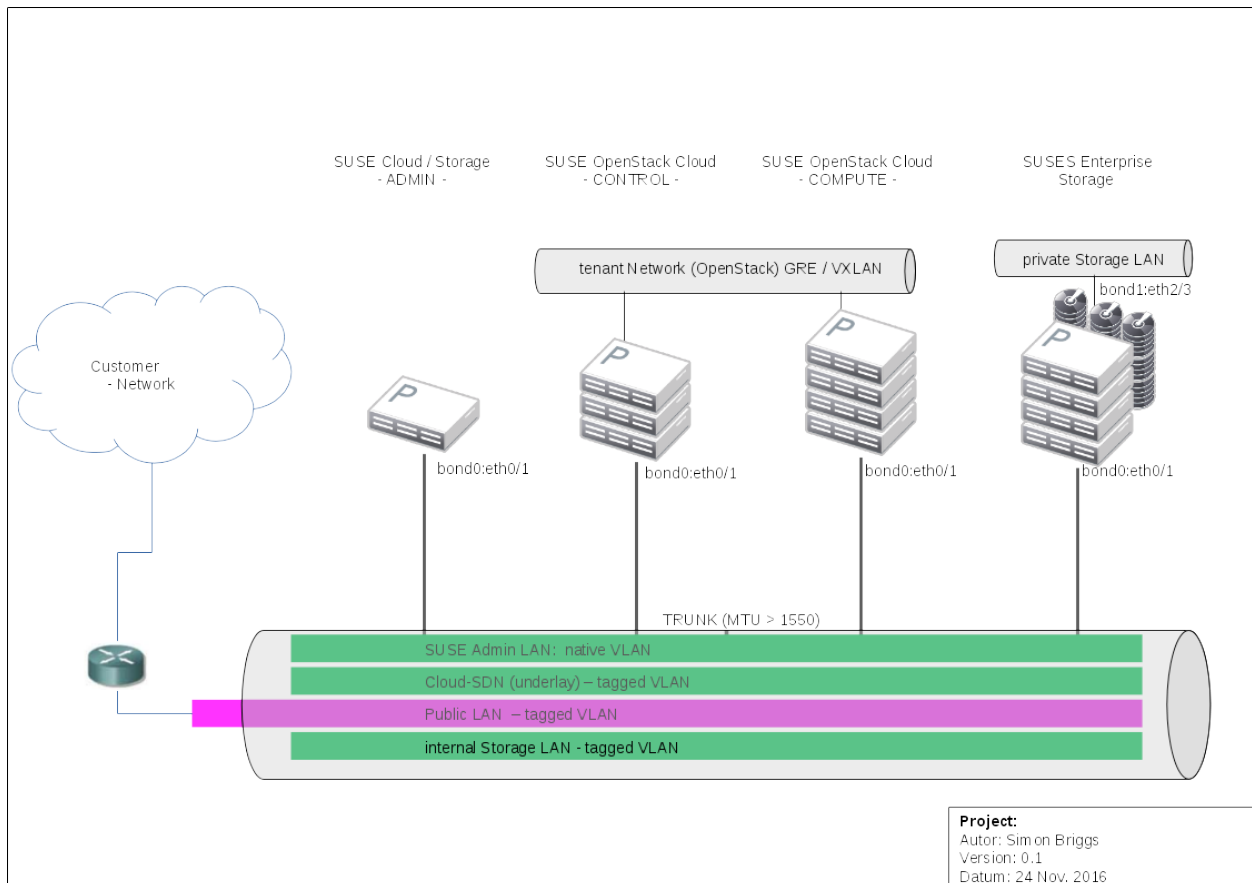


FIGURE K.2: NETWORK ARCHITECTURE

### Administrator Network (192.168.124/24)

A private network to access the Administration Server and all nodes for administration purposes. The default setup lets you also access the Baseboard Management Controller (BMC) data via Intelligent Platform Management Interface (IPMI) from this network. If required, BMC access can be swapped to a separate network.



You have the following options for controlling access to this network:

- Do not allow access from the outside and keep the administrator network completely separated
- Allow access to the administration server from a single network (for example, your company's administration network) via the “bastion network” option configured on an additional network card with a fixed IP address
- Allow access from one or more networks via a gateway

#### Storage Network (192.168.125/24)

Private SUSE OpenStack Cloud internal virtual network. This network is used by Ceph and Swift only. It should not be accessed by users.

#### Private Network (nova-fixed, 192.168.123/24)

Private SUSE OpenStack Cloud internal virtual network. This network is used for communication between instances and provides them with access to the outside world. SUSE OpenStack Cloud automatically provides the required gateway.

#### Public Network (nova-floating, public, 192.168.126/24)

The only public network provided by SUSE OpenStack Cloud. On this network, you can access the Nova Dashboard and all instances (provided they are equipped with a floating IP). This network can only be accessed via a gateway that needs to be provided externally. All SUSE OpenStack Cloud users and administrators need to be able to access the public network.

#### Software Defined Network (os\_sdn, 192.168.130/24)

Private SUSE OpenStack Cloud internal virtual network. This network is used when Neutron is configured to use openvswitch with GRE tunneling for the virtual networks. It should not be accessed by users.

SUSE OpenStack Cloud supports different network modes: single, dual, and teaming. Starting with SUSE OpenStack Cloud 6, the networking mode is applied to all nodes and the Administration Server. This means that all machines need to meet the hardware requirements for the chosen mode. The network mode can be configured using the YaST Crowbar module (see [https://www.suse.com/documentation/suse-openstack-cloud-6/book\\_cloud\\_deploy/data/sec\\_depl\\_adm\\_inst\\_crowbar.html](https://www.suse.com/documentation/suse-openstack-cloud-6/book_cloud_deploy/data/sec_depl_adm_inst_crowbar.html)). The network mode cannot be changed after the cloud is deployed.



More flexible network mode setups can be configured by editing the Crowbar network configuration files (see [https://www.suse.com/documentation/suse-openstack-cloud-6/book\\_cloud\\_deploy/data/app\\_deploy\\_network\\_json.html](https://www.suse.com/documentation/suse-openstack-cloud-6/book_cloud_deploy/data/app_deploy_network_json.html) for more information). SUSE or a partner can assist you in creating a custom setup within the scope of a consulting services agreement. For more information on SUSE consulting, visit <http://www.suse.com/consulting/>.



### Important: Teaming Network Mode Is Required for HA

Teaming network mode is required for an HA setup of SUSE OpenStack Cloud. If you are planning to move your cloud to an HA setup later, deploy SUSE OpenStack Cloud with teaming network mode right from the beginning. Migration to an HA setup is not supported.

## K.8 Services Architecture

SUSE OpenStack Cloud is based on SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 12 SP2, OpenStack, Crowbar and Chef. SUSE Linux Enterprise Server is used as the underlying operating system for all infrastructure nodes. Crowbar and Chef are used to automatically deploy and manage the OpenStack nodes from a central Administration Server.



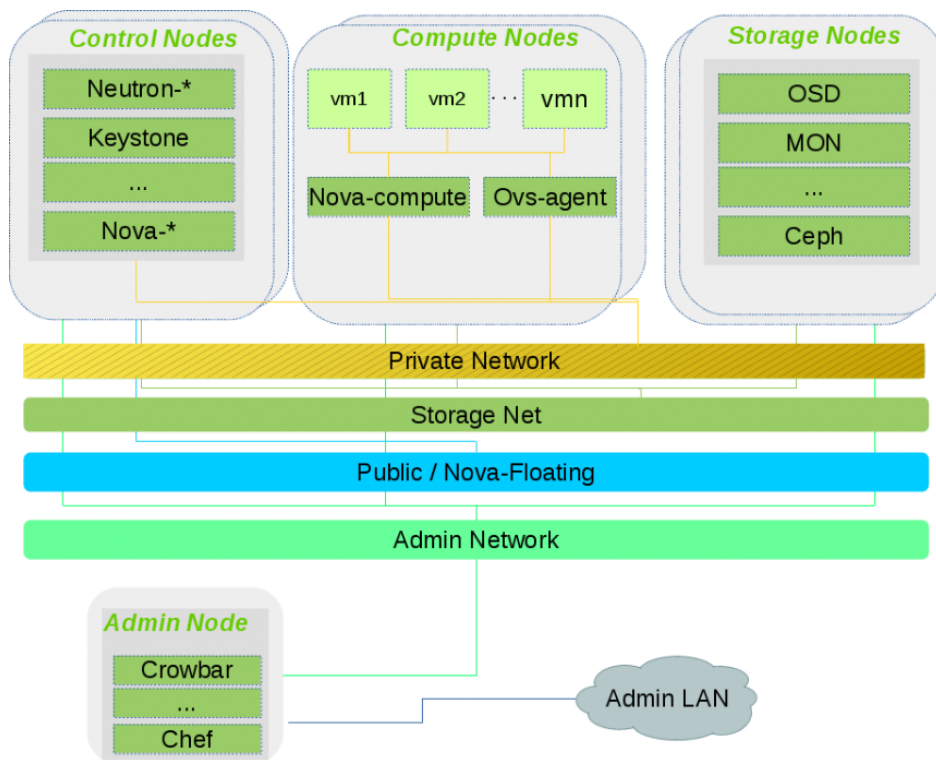


FIGURE K.3: SERVICES ARCHITECTURE

## K.9 Proof of Concept Test Cases

After you have successfully deployed OpenStack, you need to test the environment by using either the Dashboard or the command line interface. This document provides the most important procedures and steps to perform functional tests agreed upon. A detailed list of test case should be provided with this document.



### Note: About Test Cases

All test cases are work in progress and by no means complete. Test cases have to be formulated by the entire team according to the requirements and type of workloads.

### K.9.1 Basic Test Cases

Add your own test cases here.



## K.9.2 Advanced Test Cases

Add your own test cases here.



# L Documentation Updates

This chapter lists content changes for this document since the release of SUSE® OpenStack Cloud 2.0.

This manual was updated on the following dates:

- *Section L.1, "February 2017 (Initial Release SUSE OpenStack Cloud 7)"*
- *Section L.2, "February 2017 (Maintenance Release SUSE OpenStack Cloud 6)"*
- *Section L.3, "March, 2016 (Initial Release SUSE OpenStack Cloud 6)"*
- *Section L.4, "February, 2015 (Initial Release SUSE Cloud 5)"*
- *Section L.5, "August, 2014 (Initial Release SUSE Cloud 4)"*
- *Section L.6, "April 21, 2014 (Maintenance Release SUSE Cloud 3)"*
- *Section L.7, "February 17, 2014 (Initial Release SUSE Cloud 3)"*
- *Section L.8, "September 25, 2013 (Maintenance Release SUSE Cloud 2.0)"*
- *Section L.9, "September 11, 2013 (Initial Release SUSE Cloud 2.0)"*

## L.1 February 2017 (Initial Release SUSE OpenStack Cloud 7)

### General Changes to this Guide

- All nodes including the Administration Server are now based on SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 12 SP2. Block Storage now supports SUSE Enterprise Storage 4. The documentation has been updated accordingly.
- Removed all references to Nova-docker and Hyper-V ([https://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=1016296](https://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=1016296) ↗).
- Numerous small fixes and additions to the documentation, based on technical feedback.



- All screenshots have been updated to reflect UI changes.
- The e-mail address for documentation feedback has changed to [doc-team@suse.com](mailto:doc-team@suse.com).

### *Chapter 2, Considerations and Requirements*

- Adjusted the RAM requirements for all nodes managed by Crowbar ([https://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=971597](https://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=971597)).

### *Chapter 7, Crowbar Setup*

- The SUSE OpenStack Cloud Crowbar installation can only be started via the Web interface—using **install-suse-cloud** is deprecated ([https://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=1009320](https://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=1009320)).

### *Chapter 8, The Crowbar Web Interface*

- Added *Tip: Crowbar API Documentation* ([https://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=989372](https://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=989372)).

### *Chapter 10, Deploying the OpenStack Services*


- Updated *Section 10.4, “Deploying Keystone”* ([https://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=1015139](https://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=1015139)).
- Added more information to *Section 10.5, “Deploying Ceph (optional)”* about the **ceph-mds** role ([https://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=1005099](https://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=1005099)).
- Added *Important: Glance API Versions* to *Section 10.7, “Deploying Glance”* ([https://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=1022280](https://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=1022280)).
- Added *Note: Custom Vendor Data for Instances* to *Section 10.10, “Deploying Nova”* ([https://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=988351](https://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=988351)).
- Added *Note: Limitations for CephFS Backend* to *Section 10.14, “Deploying Manila”* ([https://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=1008546](https://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=1008546)).
- Added *Section 10.17, “Deploying Magnum (Optional)”* ([https://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=999859](https://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=999859)).
- Added *Section 10.19, “Deploying Sahara”* ([https://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=1000139](https://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=1000139)).



## Chapter 12, Troubleshooting and Support

Added *Q: How to change the Keystone credentials after the Keystone barclamp has been deployed?* ([https://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=992076](https://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=992076) 

## Appendices







- Added *Appendix F, Configuration Files for OpenStack Services* ([https://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=1016425](https://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=1016425) 

# L.2 February 2017 (Maintenance Release SUSE OpenStack Cloud 6)

## General Changes to this Guide

- Moved *Section 8.3, “Deploying Barclamp Proposals”* from *Chapter 10, Deploying the OpenStack Services* to *Chapter 8, The Crowbar Web Interface*. Restructured the section.

## Chapter 2, Considerations and Requirements

- A virtualized Administration Server is supported ([https://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=979851](https://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=979851) 
- Clarified wording regarding the network requirements for High Availability ([https://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=987664](https://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=987664) , [https://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=960523](https://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=960523) 
- Added software defined networks (SDN) to network graphics in *Section 2.1, “Network”* ([https://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=861532](https://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=861532) 
- In *Section 2.1, “Network”*, added *Table 2.1, “Minimum Number of IP Addresses for Network Ranges”* ([https://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=972237](https://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=972237) 
- In *Section 2.5, “Software Requirements”*, updated information on licenses and subscriptions ([https://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=1018971](https://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=1018971) 



## Chapter 4, Installing and Setting Up an SMT Server on the Administration Server (Optional)

- Added note to clarify the use of an SMT server on the Administration Server ([https://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=1013625](https://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=1013625)).
- In *Section 2.4.4, "Storage Node"*, added more specific hardware requirements in case Ceph is used as storage.

## Chapter 7, Crowbar Setup

- Integrated more information on network bonding mode into *Section 7.3, "Network Mode"* ([https://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=993428](https://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=993428)).

## Chapter 9, Installing the OpenStack Nodes

- Updated *Section 9.4.2, "Configuring Node Updates with the SUSE Manager Client Barclamp"* ([https://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=987021](https://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=987021)).
- In *Section 9.4.4.2, "Making Ceph Available on the SUSE OpenStack Cloud Nodes"*, warned about automatic changes to the cluster ([https://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=975943](https://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=975943)).
- Corrected the command for reinstalling the SUSE Manager barclamp in *Section 9.4.2, "Configuring Node Updates with the SUSE Manager Client Barclamp"* ([https://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=977539](https://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=977539)).

## Chapter 10, Deploying the OpenStack Services

- In *Section 10.1, "Deploying Pacemaker (Optional, HA Setup Only)"*, rephrased note on proposal names and added link to *Section 2.3, "SSL Encryption"* ([https://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=1015973](https://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=1015973)).
- In *Section 10.1, "Deploying Pacemaker (Optional, HA Setup Only)"*, added how to find and specify the watchdog kernel module. It is needed for using SBD as a fencing mechanism for shared storage ([https://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=971787](https://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=971787)).
- The Keystone algorithm default changed from PKI to UUID for security reasons. The changes have been applied to *Section 10.4, "Deploying Keystone"* ([https://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=973750](https://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=973750)).
- In *Section 10.4, "Deploying Keystone"*, updated LDAP for Keystone ([https://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=1017327](https://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=1017327)).



- Fixed the driver values for the identify and assignment settings of Keystone in *Section 10.4.1, “LDAP Authentication with Keystone”* ([https://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=974464](https://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=974464)).
- Added a general tip on multiple RADOS Gateway nodes setup in *Section 10.5, “Deploying Ceph (optional)”* ([https://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=920428](https://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=920428)).
- In *Section 10.5, “Deploying Ceph (optional)”*, recommended dedicated nodes for each Ceph component and allowed for self-signed SSL certificates for RADOS Gateway.
- Added *Section 10.9.1, “Using Infoblox IPAM Plug-in”* ([https://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=1009072](https://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=1009072)).
- Added a tip about shared storage in *Section 10.10.1, “HA Setup for Nova”* ([https://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=985662](https://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=985662)).
- In *Section 10.11, “Deploying Horizon (OpenStack Dashboard)”*, added a note on how to set large Horizon timeouts to ([https://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=941537](https://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=941537)).
- Added *Section 10.12.1, “Enabling Identity Trusts Authorization (Optional)”* ([https://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=974937](https://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=974937)).
- Added *Section 10.18, “Deploying Barbican (Optional)”* ([https://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=1011674](https://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=1011674)).

## Chapter 11, SUSE OpenStack Cloud Maintenance

- In *Section 11.2, “Service Order on SUSE OpenStack Cloud Start-up or Shutdown”*, added in which order to start and stop storage-related nodes and services ([https://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=1002833](https://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=1002833)).
- Added an explanation for the blue dot status indicator (state upgrade) to *Section 11.3, “Upgrading from SUSE OpenStack Cloud 6 to SUSE OpenStack Cloud 7”* ([https://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=971920](https://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=971920)).
- In *Section 11.3.1, “Requirements”*, added another requirement for the upgrade process ([https://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=982561](https://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=982561)).



## Appendices

- Fixed syntax of `/etc/crowbar/network.json` examples in *Appendix D, The Network Barclamp Template File* and added the TX/RX offloading options ([https://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=1021352](https://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=1021352)).
- Correction for *Section D.4, “Network Conduits”*: Bonding supports more than two interfaces ([https://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=1003614](https://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=1003614)).
- Rewrote the interface identifier part in *Section D.4, “Network Conduits”* for more clarity ([https://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=993518](https://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=993518)).
- Corrected the clean-up command in *Appendix J, Recovering Clusters to a Healthy State* ([https://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=975005](https://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=975005)).
- Added *Appendix K, SUSE OpenStack Cloud Proof of Concept Deployment Guide* ([https://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=991741](https://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=991741)).

## Bugfixes

- Hawk uses HTTPS rather than HTTP. Fixed URL accordingly in *Section 10.1, “Deploying Pacemaker (Optional, HA Setup Only)”* ([https://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=1021111](https://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=1021111)).
- Fixed a self-referencing link in *Section 2.1.3, “Accessing the Administration Server via a Bastion Network”* ([https://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=1017764](https://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=1017764)).
- Corrected the description of the status indicators on the node dashboard in *Section 8.2.1, “Nodes”* ([https://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=981900](https://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=981900)).

## L.3 March, 2016 (Initial Release SUSE OpenStack Cloud 6)

### General

- Renamed SUSE Cloud to SUSE OpenStack Cloud.
- Reorganized the manual by introducing parts and splitting long chapters to improve readability.



- All nodes including the Administration Server are now based on SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 12 SP2. The documentation has been updated accordingly.
- Rewrote large parts of *Chapter 5, Software Repository Setup* because repository handling in SUSE OpenStack Cloud has been made easier. Furthermore, repositories are no longer provided by the Novell Customer Center, but rather by the SUSE Customer Center.
- Added *Chapter 8, The Crowbar Web Interface*.
- Added documentation for the new Web interface-based installation of the Administration Server.
- A new backup procedure has been added to SUSE OpenStack Cloud (*Section 11.5, "Backing Up and Restoring the Administration Server"*).
- *Section 11.3, "Upgrading from SUSE OpenStack Cloud 6 to SUSE OpenStack Cloud 7"* is now done via a Web interface.
- Added *Section 11.2, "Service Order on SUSE OpenStack Cloud Start-up or Shutdown"*.
- Added *Appendix J, Recovering Clusters to a Healthy State*.
- SUSE OpenStack Cloud 6 supports Manila a Shared File System Service (*Section 10.14, "Deploying Manila"*).
- Added *Appendix E, Configuring Role Based Access Control (RBAC)*.
















## Bugfixes

- Added how to change the Crowbar password in *Procedure 8.2, "Changing the Password for the Crowbar Web Interface"* ([https://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=950482](https://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=950482)).
- Updated repository links and paths in *Chapter 5, Software Repository Setup* ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=862056](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=862056), [http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=956681](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=956681), and [https://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=956686](https://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=956686)).
- Provided a full list of OpenStack roles and services in *Appendix C, Roles and Services in SUSE OpenStack Cloud* ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=875149](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=875149)).
- SUSE OpenStack Cloud does not support High Availability for the LBaaS service plugin ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=881510](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=881510)).



- Provided instructions on how to change keymap on Compute Nodes ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=906846](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=906846) ↗).
- Added a link to the SUSE Enterprise Storage documentation to *Section 2.6.4.2, “Ceph —Avoiding Points of Failure”* ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=917344](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=917344) ↗).
- An HA setup for Trove is not supported ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=919471](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=919471) ↗).
- Added the new section *Section 11.2, “Service Order on SUSE OpenStack Cloud Start-up or Shutdown”*. ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=919476](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=919476) ↗).
- Repositories are distributed by the SUSE Customer Center ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=919844](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=919844) ↗).
- Updates on adding an external Ceph cluster at *Section 9.4.4.2, “Making Ceph Available on the SUSE OpenStack Cloud Nodes”* ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=923117](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=923117) ↗ and [http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=924001](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=924001) ↗).
- Added documentation for VXLAN support at *Section 10.9, “Deploying Neutron”* ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=923218](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=923218) ↗).
- HA cluster nodes need to be put into maintenance mode prior to updating packages ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=923962](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=923962) ↗).
- Added an explanation on Distributed Virtual Routers (DVR) to *Section 10.9, “Deploying Neutron”* ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=925438](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=925438) ↗).
- New technology preview feature: Docker support ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=926224](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=926224) ↗).
- Added instructions on how to disable PXE and DNS services on the Administration Server to allow custom provisioning at *Q & A 12.1.2, “OpenStack Node Deployment”* ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=929081](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=929081) ↗ and [https://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=920826](https://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=920826) ↗).
- Added instructions on how to enable jumbo frames at *Section 7.5, “Custom Network Configuration”* ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=930744](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=930744) ↗).
- Added the new appendix *Appendix E, Configuring Role Based Access Control (RBAC)* ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=931856](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=931856) ↗).
- Ceilometer is also supported on HyperV Compute Nodes ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=932314](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=932314) ↗).



- Added instructions on how to install additional packages to *Q & A 12.1.1, “Admin Node Deployment”* ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=936244](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=936244) )
- Public and floating networks can be split using different VLANs ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=936984](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=936984) )
- Calamari needs to be deployed on a dedicated node ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=940189](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=940189) )
- Setting `REPOS_SKIP_CHECKS` is no longer needed on SUSE OpenStack Cloud 6 ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=940941](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=940941) )
- Provided better examples for `/etc/crowbar/network.json` in *Appendix D, The Network Barclamp Template File* ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=944074](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=944074) )
- Added a solution for fixing nodes in state `Problem` at *Q & A 12.1.2, “OpenStack Node Deployment”* ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=945436](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=945436) )
- The openvswitch with VLAN configuration for neutron-l3 no longer requires a 4 NIC configuration ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=946874](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=946874) )
- The Web interface now contains a *Repositories* screen showing an overview of the repositories of SUSE OpenStack Cloud ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=952643](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=952643) )
- Added documentation for the Cisco USC support at *Section 8.2.3, “Utilities”* ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=953982](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=953982) )
- Added the FAQ *Q*: ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=954413](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=954413) )
- SUSE OpenStack Cloud 6 supports Manila a Shared File System Service ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=956234](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=956234) )
- Errors in *Section 8.3.3, “Deleting a Proposal That Already Has Been Deployed”* have been fixed ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=956244](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=956244) )
- Renamed SUSE Cloud to SUSE OpenStack Cloud ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=956431](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=956431) )
- Updates for the Swift barclamp ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=956659](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=956659) )
- Updates for the Glance barclamp ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=956664](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=956664) )



- Updates for the Cinder barclamp ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=956666](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=956666) ↗).
- Updates for the Neutron barclamp ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=956669](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=956669) ↗).
- Updates for the Nova barclamp ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=956900](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=956900) ↗).
- OpenAIS has been replaced by Corosync ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=956670](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=956670) ↗).
- Updates for the list of services at *Section 2.3, "SSL Encryption"* ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=956675](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=956675) ↗).
- Updates for the Ceilometer barclamp ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=956676](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=956676) ↗).
- Updates for *Section 2.5, "Software Requirements"* ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=956679](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=956679) ↗).
- Updated *Chapter 4, Installing and Setting Up an SMT Server on the Administration Server (Optional)* ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=956680](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=956680) ↗).
- Minor changes in *Section 12.1, "FAQ"* ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=956682](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=956682) ↗).
- Services on SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 12 SP2 are started via the **systemctl** command ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=956683](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=956683) ↗).
- New attributes for the *Appendix D, The Network Barclamp Template File* ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=956684](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=956684) ↗).
- Added documentation for the new Web interface-based installation of the Administration Server ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=956869](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=956869) ↗).
- Document the possibility to set the node file system at *Section 9.2, "Node Installation"* ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=956874](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=956874) ↗).
- Horizon SSL options do not match ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=959335](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=959335) ↗).
- The new backup procedure has been documented at *Section 11.5, "Backing Up and Restoring the Administration Server"*. ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=962576](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=962576) ↗).



- Added documentation about deploying HA for Compute Nodes ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=964205](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=964205) ↗).
- Apache needs to be restarted before starting the installation from the Web interface ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=966158](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=966158) ↗).
- Added *Appendix J, Recovering Clusters to a Healthy State* ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=966158](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=966158) ↗).
- Added *Section J.6, “Recovering From an Unresolvable DRBD Split Brain Situation”* ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=970244](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=970244) ↗).
- Provided additional information on bonding modes at *Section 7.3, “Network Mode”* (Doc Comment 29562).
- An HA setup of Ceilometer needs to be installed on a cluster with an odd number of nodes (Doc Comment 26861).

## L.4 February, 2015 (Initial Release SUSE Cloud 5)

### *Chapter 2, Considerations and Requirements*

- Completely rewrote *Section 2.5, “Software Requirements”*. Added information about subscriptions, optional features, media layout and repositories.

### *Chapter 3, Installing the Administration Server*

- Split the chapter into two separate parts.
- Transferred the optional SMT installation to the appendix (*Chapter 4, Installing and Setting Up an SMT Server on the Administration Server (Optional)*) to improve the readability.

### **Chapter 4, Admin Node Configuration**

- Added information about SLES 12 and SUSE Enterprise Storage repositories and adjusted the repository paths to the new structure.
- Removed information about linking to local SMT repositories— this is now done automatically by the installation script.
- Completely rewrote *Chapter 5, Software Repository Setup* to make it easier to read.



## Chapter 10, Deploying the OpenStack Services

- Updated screenshots where necessary.
- Added *Section 10.4.1.2, "Using Hybrid Authentication"*.
- Updated *Section 10.5, "Deploying Ceph (optional)"* because of new configuration options, roles and the fact that Ceph needs SLES 12 nodes.
- Updated *Section 10.8, "Deploying Cinder"* by adding instructions on how to deploy multiple back-ends. Also added descriptions for additional back-ends Fujitsu ETERNUS DX and VMware.
- Updated *Section 10.9, "Deploying Neutron"* because of changes in the barclamp.
- Added *Section 10.15, "Deploying Trove (Optional)"*.




## Chapter 12, Troubleshooting and Support

- Added *Q & A 12.1.3, "Miscellaneous"*.
- Added *How to change the default keymap for instances?*.














## Appendices

- Added VMware Compute Node system requirements to *Section G.1, "Requirements"*.
- Added *Section G.4, "Making the Nova Compute VMware Node Highly Available"*.
- Added *Appendix I, Crowbar Batch*.

## Bugfixes

- Added a warning about old database files on shared storage to *Section 10.2.1, "HA Setup for the Database"* ([https://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=875696](https://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=875696) .
- Added information about log files written during the upgrade procedure to *Section 11.3, "Upgrading from SUSE OpenStack Cloud 6 to SUSE OpenStack Cloud 7"* and *Appendix A, Log Files* ([https://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=892497](https://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=892497) .
- Added *Section 10.15, "Deploying Trove (Optional)"* ([https://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=893876](https://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=893876) .



- Fixed deployment order of barclamps ([https://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=894063](https://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=894063) )
- Fixed wrong group names and file names in *Section 9.4.4, "Using an Externally Managed Ceph Cluster"* ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=894231](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=894231) )
- Added *Section 10.4.1.2, "Using Hybrid Authentication"* ([https://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=894572](https://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=894572) )
- Fixed various minor issues in chapters *Chapter 2, Considerations and Requirements* and *Chapter 3, Installing the Administration Server* ([https://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=895593](https://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=895593) )
- Updated *Section 10.8, "Deploying Cinder"* by adding instructions on how to deploy multiple back-ends. Also added descriptions for additional back-ends Fujitsu EXTERNUS DX and VMware ([https://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=889729](https://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=889729) )
- Added a pointer to `man mount(8)` to *Section 10.2.1, "HA Setup for the Database"* ([https://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=898538](https://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=898538) )
- Documented the *Region Name* at *Section 10.4, "Deploying Keystone"* ([https://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=900090](https://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=900090) )
- Added VMware Compute Node system requirements to *Section G.1, "Requirements"* ([https://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=903676](https://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=903676) )
- **crowbar-backup** (*Section 11.5, "Backing Up and Restoring the Administration Server"*) is now officially supported by SUSE ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=904374](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=904374) )
- The YaST Crowbar module now supports adding custom repositories, which no longer makes it necessary to manually edit `/etc/crowbar/provisioner.js` ([https://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=906267](https://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=906267)  >).
- Added *How to change the default keymap for instances?* ([https://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=906846](https://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=906846) )
- Corrected the number of nodes required for deploying `Ceph-mon` ([https://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=907329](https://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=907329) )
- Added installation details for an HA database setup using a shared NFS directory to *Section 10.2.1, "HA Setup for the Database"* ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=910061](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=910061) )



- Added a link to the *CinderSupportMatrix* in *Section 2.2.1, “Cloud Storage Services”* ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=910843](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=910843) )
- Added *Q & A 12.1.3, “Miscellaneous”* ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=911336](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=911336) )
- Updated *Section 10.5, “Deploying Ceph (optional)”* ([https://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=912609](https://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=912609) )
- Updated *Appendix A, Log Files* ([https://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=912699](https://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=912699) )
- Documented changes in *Section 10.8, “Deploying Cinder”* regarding the NetApp back-end ([https://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=914711](https://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=914711) )
- Added *Section G.4, “Making the Nova Compute VMware Node Highly Available”* ([https://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=914730](https://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=914730) )
- Added *Appendix I, Crowbar Batch* ([https://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=915697](https://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=915697) )
- Updated *Section 10.9, “Deploying Neutron”* because of changes in the barclamp ([https://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=916036](https://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=916036) )
- Corrected the SBD setup description in *Section 10.1, “Deploying Pacemaker (Optional, HA Setup Only)”* ([https://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=916351](https://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=916351) )
- Added information on Ceph Calamari to *Section 10.5, “Deploying Ceph (optional)”* ([https://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=916616](https://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=916616) )
- Added information about Ceph requiring SLES 12 nodes ([https://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=916585](https://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=916585) , [https://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=916907](https://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=916907)  and [https://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=916918](https://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=916918) )
- Added a warning about not to set up shared storage in a productive SUSE OpenStack Cloud ([https://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=917334](https://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=917334) )



## L.5 August, 2014 (Initial Release SUSE Cloud 4)

### Admin Node Installation

- Added the section *Section 7.5.1, "Providing Access to External Networks"* ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=882795](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=882795)).



### Node OpenStack Service Deployment

- Updated the barclamp descriptions where necessary.
- Updated screenshots where necessary.
- Added the section *Section 8.3.4, "Queuing/Dequeuing Proposals"* ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=882825](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=882825)).

### Bugfixes

- Added an explanation for the new option *Policy when cluster does not have quorum* to *Section 10.1, "Deploying Pacemaker (Optional, HA Setup Only)"* ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=875776](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=875776)).
- Added a list of Neutron plugins which can be used with VMware ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=880128](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=880128)).
- Added the section *Section 7.5.1, "Providing Access to External Networks"* ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=882795](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=882795)).
- Added an annotation to *Section 5.1, "Copying the Product Media Repositories"* explaining why not to use symbolic links for the SUSE Linux Enterprise Server product repository ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=886196](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=886196)).
- Added an explanation explaining the need to use a sub-domain in *Section 2.1.4, "DNS and Host Names"* ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=886563](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=886563)).
- Added the section *Section 8.3.4, "Queuing/Dequeuing Proposals"* ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=882825](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=882825)).
- Cleaned up network ranges in *Section 2.1.1, "Network Address Allocation"* ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=885807](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=885807)).
- Corrected annotation on VLAN settings ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=885814](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=885814)).



- Fixed an error about using openvswitch with Windows server integration in *Section 10.9, “Deploying Neutron”* ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=889602](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=889602) )
- Updated the upgrade procedure in *Section 11.3, “Upgrading from SUSE OpenStack Cloud 6 to SUSE OpenStack Cloud 7”* ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=889663](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=889663) )

## L.6 April 21, 2014 (Maintenance Release SUSE Cloud 3)

Included information on how to make SUSE Cloud highly available.

The following new sections have been added:

- *Section 1.5, “HA Setup”.*
- *Section 2.6, “High Availability”.*
- *Section 10.1, “Deploying Pacemaker (Optional, HA Setup Only)”*
- *Section 11.4, “Upgrading to an HA Setup”*
- *Section 11.5, “Backing Up and Restoring the Administration Server”*
- *Appendix C, Roles and Services in SUSE OpenStack Cloud*

Various smaller additions and changes throughout the document. New terms have been added to *Terminology*.



## L.7 February 17, 2014 (Initial Release SUSE Cloud 3)

### Admin Node Installation

- Re-wrote *Chapter 7, Crowbar Setup* because YaST now supports Crowbar user management, setting up a bastion network and configuring external repository URLs.

### Node Installation

- Added the section *Section 9.4.4, "Using an Externally Managed Ceph Cluster"*.
- Added the section *Section 9.3, "Converting Existing SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 12 SP2 Machines Into SUSE OpenStack Cloud Nodes"*.
- Added the FAQ *How to change the default disk used for operating system installation?* to *Section 12.1, "FAQ"*.

### OpenStack Service Deployment

- Updated *Appendix G, VMware vSphere Installation Instructions*.
- Lots of minor changes in *Chapter 10, Deploying the OpenStack Services* because of changes in the Web interface.
- Added *Section 10.12, "Deploying Heat (Optional)"*.
- Added *Section 10.13, "Deploying Ceilometer (Optional)"*.
- Added instructions on how to use the Cisco Nexus plugin with Neutron (*Appendix H, Using Cisco Nexus Switches with Neutron*).
- Added instructions on how to configure NetApp for Cinder to *Section 10.8, "Deploying Cinder"*.
- Updated all screenshots because of an updated Web interface theme.



## Maintenance

- Added the section *Section 11.3, "Upgrading from SUSE OpenStack Cloud 6 to SUSE OpenStack Cloud 7"*.

## General

- Added *Chapter 11, SUSE OpenStack Cloud Maintenance*.
- Added definition of user roles to *About This Guide*.

## Bugfixes

- Added instruction on adjusting the CD-ROM drive letter for deploying Windows Compute Nodes when the Administration Server has got multiple hard disks to *Providing a Hyper-V Netboot Environment* ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=863978](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=863978) )
- Added a notes on the VLAN configuration at various places ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=863829](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=863829) ) and [http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=861523](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=861523) )
- Adjusted the memory recommendations for the Control Node(s) at *Section 2.4.2, "Control Node"* ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=862312](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=862312) )
- Add bind mount instructions for the Hyper-V Server deployment to *Providing a Hyper-V Netboot Environment* ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=861462](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=861462) )
- Updated *Appendix G, VMware vSphere Installation Instructions* ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=859173](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=859173) )
- Added *Section 12.2.1, "Applying PTFs (Program Temporary Fixes) Provided by the SUSE L3 Support"* ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=855387](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=855387) )
- Corrections in *Section 10.5, "Deploying Ceph (optional)"* ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=850477](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=850477) )
- Corrected network name in the *SUSE Cloud Network Overview* image in *Section 2.1, "Network"* ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=846877](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=846877) )
- Added instructions on how to disable route verification to *Section 12.1, "FAQ"* ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=841214](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=841214) )



## L.8 September 25, 2013 (Maintenance Release SUSE Cloud 2.0)

### OpenStack Service Deployment

- Added instructions on how to set up support for Microsoft Hyper-V (*Setting up a Netboot Environment for Microsoft\* Windows*).
- Screenshots for node allocation and for all barclamps have been added to *Chapter 9, Installing the OpenStack Nodes* and *Chapter 10, Deploying the OpenStack Services*.

### Bugfixes

- Added the FAQ *What to do when install-suse-cloud fails on deploying the IPMI/BMC network?* to *Section 12.1, "FAQ"* ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=782337](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=782337) ↗).
- Completely restructured the FAQ section in *Chapter 12, Troubleshooting and Support* ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=794534](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=794534) ↗).
- Added a note about VLANs on the admin network to *Section 2.1, "Network"* ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=835065](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=835065) ↗).

## L.9 September 11, 2013 (Initial Release SUSE Cloud 2.0)

### Admin Node Installation

- Re-wrote *Setting Up a Bastion Network*.
- Completely re-wrote the repositories chapter. It now also contains information on how to use an external SMT or SUSE Manager server.
- Renamed the commands `smt repos` and `smt mirror` to `smt-repos` and `smt-mmirror` because of a conflict with the `smt` command from the `star` package (*Chapter 4, Installing and Setting Up an SMT Server on the Administration Server (Optional)*).



## Networking

- Added a chapter on how to adjust the SUSE OpenStack Cloud network settings (*Appendix D, The Network Barclamp Template File*).
- Added a snippet on the `os_sdn` network, that was introduced in SUSE Cloud 2.0 (*Section 2.1, “Network”*).



## Node Installation

- Added *Section 9.4.3, “Mounting NFS Shares on a Node”*.
- Added *Section 9.4.2, “Configuring Node Updates with the SUSE Manager Client Barclamp”*.
- Added *Section 9.4.1, “Deploying Node Updates with the Updater Barclamp”*.
- Re-wrote *Section 9.4.6, “Enabling SSL”*.
- Added information on the new *Public Name* and *Target Platform* attributes on the *Node Dashboard* to *Section 9.2, “Node Installation”*.

## OpenStack Service Deployment

- Added *Section 10.4.1, “LDAP Authentication with Keystone”*.
- Added instructions on how to deploy Neutron (*Section 10.9, “Deploying Neutron”*).
- Added instructions on how to set up support for VMware ESX (*Appendix G, VMware vSphere Installation Instructions*).
- Added instructions on how to deploy Cinder in *Section 10.8, “Deploying Cinder”*.
- barclamp descriptions have been updated—almost all configurable attributes are now described in *Chapter 10, Deploying the OpenStack Services*.

## Bugfixes

- Added a note on debugging and adding additional repositories the update repositories chapter ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=838096](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=838096) .
- Fixed an error in *Section 2.1.2.2, “Dual Network Mode”* that claimed two NICs are required on the Administration Server ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=838412](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=838412) .



- Clarified in *Section 10.8, “Deploying Cinder”* that *cinder-volume* can be deployed on several block storage nodes ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=835921](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=835921) ↗).
- Added the role name for the Administration Server to *Example D.3, “Network Modes for Certain Roles”* ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=838354](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=838354) ↗).
- Added information on how to access nodes from the outside by using the Administration Server as a jump host via the bastion network in *Section 2.1.3, “Accessing the Administration Server via a Bastion Network”* ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=838341](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=838341) ↗).
- Added a short description on how to change the host name during the installation in the section *Chapter 6, Service Configuration: Administration Server Network Configuration* ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=826163](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=826163) ↗).
- Dropped snippets about how to activate the bastion network ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=832952](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=832952) ↗).
- Fixed a syntax error in a program listing at *Chapter 4, Installing and Setting Up an SMT Server on the Administration Server (Optional)* ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=826833](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=826833) ↗).
- Added the FAQ *I have installed a new hard disk on a node that was already deployed. Why is it ignored by Crowbar?* to *Section 12.1, “FAQ”* ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=779733](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=779733) ↗).
- Added the FAQ *What to do if a node hangs during hardware discovery after the very first boot using PXE into the SLEShammer image?* to *Section 12.1, “FAQ”* ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=788156](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=788156) ↗).
- Corrected the IP address in *Chapter 6, Service Configuration: Administration Server Network Configuration* ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=817957](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=817957) ↗).
- Made various improvements throughout the document ([http://bugzilla.suse.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=806698](http://bugzilla.suse.com/show_bug.cgi?id=806698) ↗)



# Terminology

## Active/Active

A concept of how services are running on nodes in a High Availability cluster. In an active/active setup, both the main and redundant systems are managed concurrently. If a failure of services occurs, the redundant system is already online, and can take over until the main system is fixed and brought back online.

## Active/Passive

A concept of how services are running on nodes in a High Availability cluster. In an active/passive setup, one or more services are running on an active cluster node, whereas the passive node stands by. Only in case of the active node failing, the services are transferred to the passive node.

## Administration Server

Also called Crowbar Administration Node. Manages all other nodes. It assigns IP addresses to them, boots them using PXE, configures them, and provides them the necessary software for their roles. To provide these services, the Administration Server runs Crowbar, Chef, DHCP, TFTP, NTP, and other services.

## AMI (Amazon Machine Image)

A virtual machine that can be created and customized by a user. AMIs can be identified by an ID prefixed with ami-.

## Availability Zone

An OpenStack method of partitioning clouds. It enables you to arrange OpenStack Compute hosts into logical groups. The groups typically have physical isolation and redundancy from other availability zones, for example, by using separate power supply or network equipment for each zone. When users provision resources, they can specify from which availability zone their instance should be created. This allows cloud consumers to ensure that their application resources are spread across disparate machines to achieve high availability if the hardware fails. Since the Grizzly release, availability zones are implemented via host aggregates.

## AWS (Amazon Web Services)

A collection of remote computing services (including Amazon EC2, Amazon S3, and others) that together make up Amazon's cloud computing platform.



## Barclamp

A set of Chef cookbooks, templates, and other logic. Used to apply a particular Chef role to individual nodes or a set of nodes.

## Ceilometer

Code name for *Telemetry*.

## Cell

Cells provide a new way to scale Compute deployments. This includes the ability to have compute clusters (cells) in different geographic locations all under the same Compute API. This allows for a single API server being used to control access to multiple cloud installations. Cells provide logical partitioning of Compute resources in a child/parent relationship.

## Ceph

A massively scalable, open source, distributed storage system. It consists of an object store, a block store, and a POSIX-compliant distributed file system.

## Chef

An automated configuration management platform for deployment of your entire cloud infrastructure. The Chef server manages many of the software packages and allows the easy changing of nodes.

## Cinder

Code name for *OpenStack Block Storage*.

## cloud-init

A package commonly installed in virtual machine images. It uses the SSH public key to initialize an instance after boot.

## Cluster

A set of connected computers that work together. In many respects (and from the outside) they can be viewed as a single system. Clusters can be further categorized depending on their purpose, for example: High Availability clusters, high-performance clusters, or load-balancing clusters.

## Cluster Partition

Whenever communication fails between one or more nodes and the rest of the cluster, a cluster partition occurs: The nodes of a cluster are split into partitions but still active. They can only communicate with nodes in the same partition and are unaware of the separated



nodes. As the loss of the nodes on the other partition cannot be confirmed, a *Split Brain* scenario develops.

## Cluster Resource Manager

The main management entity in a High Availability cluster responsible for coordinating all non-local interactions. The *SUSE Linux Enterprise High Availability Extension* uses Pacemaker as CRM. Each node of the cluster has its own CRM instance. The one running on the *Designated Coordinator (DC)* is the one elected to relay decisions to the other non-local CRMs and to process their input.

## Compute Node

Node within a SUSE OpenStack Cloud. A physical server running a Hypervisor. A Compute Node is a host for guest virtual machines that are deployed in the cloud. It starts virtual machines on demand using `nova-compute`. To split virtual machine load across more than one server, a cloud should contain multiple Compute Nodes.

## Container

A container is a storage compartment for data. It can be thought of as a directory, only that it cannot be nested.

## Control Node

Node within a SUSE OpenStack Cloud. The Control Node is configured through the Administration Server and registers with the Administration Server for all required software. Hosts the OpenStack API endpoints and the OpenStack scheduler and runs the `nova` services—except for `nova-compute`, which is run on the Compute Nodes. The Control Node coordinates everything about cloud virtual machines: like a central communication center it receives all requests (for example, if a user wants to start or stop a virtual machine). It communicates with the Compute Nodes to coordinate fulfillment of the request. A cloud can contain multiple Control Nodes.

## Cookbook

A collection of Chef recipes which deploy a software stack or functionality. The unit of distribution for Chef.

## Corosync

The messaging/infrastructure layer used in a High Availability cluster that is set up with SUSE Linux Enterprise High Availability Extension. For example, the cluster communication channels are defined in `/etc/corosync/corosync.conf`.



## Crowbar

Bare-metal installer and an extension of Chef server. The primary function of Crowbar is to get new hardware into a state where it can be managed by Chef. That means: Setting up BIOS and RAID, network, installing a basic operating system, and setting up services like DNS, NTP, and DHCP. The Crowbar server manages all nodes, supplying configuration of hardware and software.

## Designated Coordinator (DC)

One *Cluster Resource Manager* in a High Availability cluster is elected as the Designated Coordinator (DC). The DC is the only entity in the cluster that can decide that a cluster-wide change needs to be performed. For example, fencing a node or moving resources around. After a membership change, the DC is elected from all nodes in the cluster.

## DRBD (Distributed Replicated Block Device)

DRBD\* is a block device designed for building high availability clusters. The whole block device is mirrored via a dedicated network and is seen as a network RAID-1.

## EBS (Amazon Elastic Block Store)

Block-level storage volumes for use with Amazon EC2 instances. Similar to OpenStack Cinder.

## EC2 (Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud)

A public cloud run by Amazon. It provides similar functionality to OpenStack Compute.

## Ephemeral Disk

Ephemeral disks offer machine local disk storage linked to the life cycle of a virtual machine instance. When a virtual machine is terminated, all data on the ephemeral disk is lost. Ephemeral disks are not included in any snapshots.

## Failover

Occurs when a resource fails on a cluster node (or the node itself fails) and the affected resources are started on another node.

## Fencing

Describes the concept of preventing access to a shared resource by isolated or failing cluster members. Should a cluster node fail, it will be shut down or reset to prevent it from causing trouble. The resources running on the cluster node will be moved away to another node. This way, resources are locked out of a node whose status is uncertain.



## Fixed IP Address

When an instance is launched, it is automatically assigned a fixed (private) IP address, which stays the same until the instance is explicitly terminated. Private IP addresses are used for communication between instances.

## Flavor

The compute, memory, and storage capacity of nova computing instances (in terms of virtual CPUs, RAM, etc.). Flavors can be thought of as “templates” for the amount of cloud resources that are assigned to an instance.

## Floating IP Address

An IP address that a Compute project can associate with a virtual machine. A pool of floating IPs is available in OpenStack Compute, as configured by the cloud operator. After a floating IP address has been assigned to an instance, the instance can be reached from outside the cloud by this public IP address. Floating IP addresses can be dynamically disassociated and associated with other instances.

## Glance

Code name for *OpenStack Image*.

## Guest Operating System

An instance of an operating system installed on a virtual machine.

## Heat

Code name for *Orchestration*.

## High Availability Cluster

High Availability clusters seek to minimize two things: system downtime and data loss. System downtime occurs when a user-facing service is unavailable beyond a specified maximum amount of time. System downtime and data loss (data is accidentally destroyed) can occur not only in case of a single failure. There are also cases of cascading failures, where a single failure deteriorates into a series of consequential failures.

## Horizon

Code name for *OpenStack Dashboard*.

## Host

A physical computer.



## Host Aggregate

An OpenStack method of grouping hosts via a common set of metadata. It enables you to tag groups of hosts with certain capabilities or characteristics. A characteristic could be related to physical location, allowing creation or further partitioning of availability zones. It could also be related to performance (for example, indicating the availability of SSD storage) or anything else that the cloud administrators deem appropriate. A host can be in more than one host aggregate.

## Hybrid Cloud

One of several deployment models for a cloud infrastructure. A composition of both public and private clouds that remain unique entities, but are bound together by standardized technology for enabling data and application portability. Integrating SUSE Studio and SUSE Manager with SUSE OpenStack Cloud delivers a platform and tools with which to enable enterprise hybrid clouds.

## Hypervisor

A piece of computer software, firmware or hardware that creates and runs virtual machines. It arbitrates and controls access of the virtual machines to the underlying hardware.

## IaaS (Infrastructure-as-a-Service)

A service model of cloud computing where processing, storage, networks, and other fundamental computing resources are rented over the Internet. It allows the customer to deploy and run arbitrary software, including operating systems and applications. The customer has control over operating systems, storage, and deployed applications but does not control the underlying cloud infrastructure. Housing and maintaining it is in the responsibility of the service provider.

## Image

A file that contains a complete Linux virtual machine.

In the SUSE OpenStack Cloud context, images are virtual disk images that represent the contents and structure of a storage medium or device (such as a hard disk), in a single file. Images are used as a template from which a virtual machine can be started. For starting a virtual machine, SUSE OpenStack Cloud always uses a copy of the image.

Images have both content and metadata; the latter are also called image properties.

## Instance

A virtual machine that runs inside the cloud.



## Instance Snapshot

A point-in-time copy of an instance. It preserves the disk state of a running instance and can be used to launch a new instance or to create a new image based upon the snapshot.

## Keypair

OpenStack Compute injects SSH keypair credentials that are injected into images when they are launched.

## Keystone

Code name for *OpenStack Identity*.

## libvirt

Virtualization API library. Used by OpenStack to interact with many of its supported hypervisors.

## Linux Bridge

A software allowing multiple virtual machines to share a single physical NIC within OpenStack Compute. It behaves like a hub: You can connect multiple (physical or virtual) network interface devices to it. Any Ethernet frames that come in from one interface attached to the bridge is transmitted to all other devices.

## Logical Volume (LV)

Acts as a virtual disk partition. After creating a *Volume Group (VG)*, logical volumes can be created in that volume group. Logical volumes can be used as raw block devices, swap devices, or for creating a (mountable) file system like disk partitions.

## Migration

The process of moving a virtual machine instance from one Compute Node to another. This process can only be executed by cloud administrators.

## Multicast

A technology used for a one-to-many communication within a network that can be used for cluster communication. Corosync supports both multicast and unicast.

## Network

In the OpenStack Networking API: An isolated L2 network segment (similar to a VLAN). It forms the basis for describing the L2 network topology in a given OpenStack Networking deployment.



## Neutron

Code name for *OpenStack Networking*.

## Node

A (physical) server that is managed by Crowbar.

## Nova

Code name for *OpenStack Compute*.

## Object

Basic storage entity in OpenStack Object Storage, representing a file that you store there. When you upload data to OpenStack Object Storage, the data is neither compressed nor encrypted, it is stored as-is.

## Open vBridge

A virtual networking device. It behaves like a virtual switch: network interface devices connect to its ports. The ports can be configured similar to a physical switch's port, including VLAN configurations.

## OpenStack

A collection of open source software to build and manage public and private clouds. Its components are designed to work together to provide Infrastructure as a Service and massively scalable cloud computing software.

At the same time, OpenStack is also a community and a project.

## OpenStack Block Storage

One of the core OpenStack components and services (code name: Cinder). It provides persistent block level storage devices for use OpenStack compute instances. The block storage system manages the creation, attaching and detaching of the block devices to servers. Prior to the OpenStack Grizzly release, the service was part of nova-volume (block service).

## OpenStack Compute

One of the core OpenStack components and services (code name: Nova). It is a cloud computing fabric controller and as such, the main part of an IaaS system. It provides virtual machines on demand.

## OpenStack Dashboard

One of the core OpenStack components or services (code name: Horizon). It provides a modular Web interface for OpenStack services and allows end users and administrators to interact with each OpenStack service through the service's API.



## OpenStack Identity

One of the core OpenStack components or services (code name: Keystone). It provides authentication and authorization for all OpenStack services.

## OpenStack Image

One of the core OpenStack components or services (code name: Glance). It provides discovery, registration, and delivery services for virtual disk images.

## OpenStack Networking

One of the core OpenStack components or services (code name: Neutron). It provides “network connectivity as a service” between interface devices (for example, vNICs) managed by other OpenStack services (for example, Compute). Allows users to create their own networks and attach interfaces to them.

## OpenStack Object Storage

One of the core OpenStack components or services (code name: Swift). Allows to store and retrieve files while providing built-in redundancy and fail-over. Can be used for backing up and archiving data, streaming data to a user's Web browser, or developing new applications with data storage integration.

## OpenStack Service

A collection of Linux services (or daemons) that work together to provide core functionality within the OpenStack project. This can be storing objects, providing virtual servers, or authentication and authorization. All services have code names, which are also used in configuration files, and command line programs.

## Orchestration

A module (code name: Heat) to orchestrate multiple composite cloud applications using file-based or Web-based templates. It contains both a user interface and an API and describes your cloud deployment in a declarative language. The module is an integrated project of OpenStack as of the Havana release.

## PaaS (Platform-as-a-Service)

A service model of cloud computing where a computing platform and cloud-based application development tools are rented over the Internet. The customer controls software deployment and configuration settings, but not the underlying cloud infrastructure including network, servers, operating systems, or storage.



## Pacemaker

An open source cluster resource manager used in SUSE Linux Enterprise High Availability Extension.

## Port

In the OpenStack Networking API: An attachment port to an L2 OpenStack Networking network.

## Private Cloud

One of several deployment models for a cloud infrastructure. The infrastructure is operated exclusively for a single organization and may exist on or off premises. The cloud is owned and managed by the organization itself, by a third party or a combination of both.

## Private IP Address

See *Fixed IP Address*.

## Project

A concept in OpenStack Identity. Used to identify a group, an organization, or a project (or more generically, an individual customer environment in the cloud). Also called tenant. The term tenant is primarily used in the OpenStack command line tools.

## Proposal

Special configuration for a barclamp. It includes barclamp-specific settings, and a list of nodes to which the proposal should be applied.

## Public Cloud

One of several deployment models for a cloud infrastructure. The cloud infrastructure is designed for use by the general public and exists on the premises of the cloud provider. Services like applications, storage, and other resources are made available to the general public for free or are offered on a pay-per-use model. The infrastructure is owned and managed by a business, academic or government organization, or some combination of these.

## Public IP Address

See *Floating IP Address*.

## qcow (QEMU Copy on Write)

A disk image format supported by the QEMU virtual machine manager. A qcow2 image helps to optimize disk space. It consumes disk space only when contents are written on it and grows as data is added.



qcow2 is a more recent version of the qcow format where a read-only base image is used, and all writes are stored to the qcow2 image.

## Quorum

In a cluster, a *Cluster Partition* is defined to have quorum (is “quorate”) if it has the majority of nodes (or votes). Quorum distinguishes exactly one partition. It is part of the algorithm to prevent several disconnected partitions or nodes from proceeding and causing data and service corruption (*Split Brain*). Quorum is a prerequisite for *Fencing*, which then ensures that quorum is indeed unique.

## Quota

Restriction of resources to prevent overconsumption within a cloud. In OpenStack, quotas are defined per project and contain multiple parameters, such as amount of RAM, number of instances, or number of floating IP addresses.

## RC File (openrc.sh)

Environment file needed for the OpenStack command line tools. The RC file is project-specific and contains the credentials used by OpenStack Compute, Image, and Identity services.

## Recipe

A group of Chef scripts and templates. Recipes are used by Chef to deploy a unit of functionality.

## Region

An OpenStack method of aggregating clouds. Regions are a robust way to share some infrastructure between OpenStack compute installations, while allowing for a high degree of failure tolerance. Regions have a separate API endpoint per installation.

## Resource

In a High Availability context: Any type of service or application that is known to the cluster resource manager. Examples include an IP address, a file system, or a database.

## Resource Agent (RA)

A script acting as a proxy to manage a resource in a High Availability cluster. For example, it can start, stop or monitor a resource.

## Role

In the Crowbar/Chef context: an instance of a *Proposal* that is active on a node.



In the *OpenStack Identity* context: concept of controlling the actions or set of operations that a user is allowed to perform. A role includes a set of rights and privileges. A user assuming that role inherits those rights and privileges.

### S3 (Amazon Simple Storage Service)

An object storage by Amazon that can be used to store and retrieve data on the Web. Similar in function to OpenStack Object Storage. It can act as a back-end store for Glance images.

### SaaS (Software-as-a-Service)

A service model of cloud computing where applications are hosted by a service provider and made available to customers remotely as a Web-based service.

### SBD (STONITH Block Device)

In an environment where all nodes of a High Availability cluster have access to shared storage, a small partition is used for disk-based fencing.

### Security Group

Concept in OpenStack Networking. A security group is a container for security group rules. Security group rules allow to specify the type of traffic and direction (ingress/egress) that is allowed to pass through a port.

### Single Point of Failure (SPOF)

An individual piece of equipment or software which will cause system downtime or data loss if it fails. To eliminate single points of failure, High Availability systems seek to provide redundancy for crucial pieces of equipment or software.

### Snapshot

See *Volume Snapshot* or *Instance Snapshot*.

### Split Brain

Also known as a “partitioned cluster” scenario. Either through a software or hardware failure, the cluster nodes are divided into two or more groups that do not know of each other. *STONITH* prevents a split brain situation from badly affecting the entire cluster.

### Stateful Service

A service where subsequent requests to the service depend on the results of the first request.

### Stateless Service

A service that provides a response after your request, and then requires no further attention.



## STONITH

The acronym for “Shoot the other node in the head”. It refers to the fencing mechanism that shuts down a misbehaving node to prevent it from causing trouble in a cluster.

## Storage Node

Node within a SUSE OpenStack Cloud. Acts as the controller for cloud-based storage. A cloud can contain multiple Storage Nodes.

## Subnet

In the OpenStack Networking API: A block of IP addresses and other network configuration (for example, a default gateway, DNS servers) that can be associated with an OpenStack Networking network. Each subnet represents an IPv4 or IPv6 address block. Multiple subnets can be associated with a network, if necessary.

## SUSE Linux Enterprise High Availability Extension

An integrated suite of open source clustering technologies that enables you to implement highly available physical and virtual Linux clusters.

## SUSE OpenStack Cloud Administrator

User role in SUSE OpenStack Cloud. Manages projects, users, images, flavors, and quotas within SUSE OpenStack Cloud.

## SUSE OpenStack Cloud Dashboard

The SUSE® OpenStack Cloud Dashboard is a Web interface that enables cloud administrators and users to manage various OpenStack services. It is based on OpenStack Dashboard (also known under its codename Horizon).

## SUSE OpenStack Cloud Operator

User role in SUSE OpenStack Cloud. Installs and deploys SUSE OpenStack Cloud.

## SUSE OpenStack Cloud User

User role in SUSE OpenStack Cloud. End user who launches and manages instances, can create snapshots, and use volumes for persistent storage within SUSE OpenStack Cloud.

## Swift

Code name for *OpenStack Object Storage*.

## TAP Device

A virtual networking device. A TAP device, such as vnet0 is how hypervisors such as KVM and Xen implement a virtual network interface card (vNIC). An Ethernet frame sent to a



TAP device is received by the guest operating system. The tap option connects the network stack of the guest operating system to a TAP network device on the host.

### Telemetry

A module (code name: Ceilometer) for metering OpenStack-based clouds. The project aims to provide a unique point of contact across all OpenStack core components for acquiring metrics. The metrics can then be consumed by other components such as customer billing. The module is an integrated project of OpenStack as of the Havana release.

### Tenant

See *Project*.

### Unicast

A technology for sending messages to a single network destination. Corosync supports both multicast and unicast. In Corosync, unicast is implemented as UDP-unicast (UDPU).

### User

In the OpenStack context, a digital representation of a person, system, or service who uses OpenStack cloud services. Users can be directly assigned to a particular project and behave as if they are contained in that project.

### Veth Pair

A virtual networking device. The acronym veth stands for virtual Ethernet interface. A veth is a pair of virtual network interfaces correctly directly together. An Ethernet frame sent to one end of a veth pair is received by the other end of a veth pair. OpenStack Networking uses veth pairs as virtual patch cables to make connections between virtual bridges.

### VLAN

A physical method for network virtualization. VLANs allow to create virtual networks across a distributed network. Disparate hosts (on independent networks) appear as if they were part of the same broadcast domain.

### VM (Virtual Machine)

An operating system instance that runs on top of a hypervisor. Multiple virtual machines can run on the same physical host at the same time.

### vNIC

Virtual network interface card.



**Volume**

Detachable block storage device. Unlike a SAN, it can only be attached to one instance at a time.

**Volume Group (VG)**

A virtual disk consisting of aggregated physical volumes. Volume groups can be logically partitioned into logical volumes.

**Volume Snapshot**

A point-in-time copy of an OpenStack storage volume. Used to back up volumes.

**vSwitch (Virtual Switch)**

A software that runs on a host or node and provides the features and functions of a hardware-based network switch.

**Zone**

A logical grouping of Compute services and virtual machine hosts.